

# THE CASE BOOK

*for Russian*

LAURA A. JANDA  
STEVEN J. CLANCY





# Contents

SUGGESTIONS ON HOW TO USE THIS BOOK .....	
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS .....	
PRELIMINARIES .....	
PRELIMINARIES 1 — THE MISSION OF THIS BOOK .....	
PRELIMINARIES 2— HOW INFORMATION IS PRESENTED IN THIS BOOK .....	
NOMINATIVE: A NAME .....	
PROLOGUE .....	
NOMINATIVE: A NAME 1 — NAMING AND CALLING .....	
NOMINATIVE: A NAME 2 — THE SUBJECT OF A SENTENCE .....	
NOMINATIVE: AN IDENTITY 1 — THE Y IN AN $X = Y$ SENTENCE .....	
NOMINATIVE: AN IDENTITY 2 — FIXED $X = Y$ EXPRESSIONS .....	
NOMINATIVE: AN IDENTITY 3— $X = Y$ REDUCED TO X, Y .....	
EPILOGUE .....	
INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS .....	18
PROLOGUE .....	19
INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS 1—A map of the mental leaps i .....	20
INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS 2—Paths through space .....	20
INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS 3—Paths through time .....	22
INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS 4—Expanses of time and space .....	23
INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS 5—Path > facilitator/instrument .....	24
INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS 6—Actions facilitated by instruments .....	26
TABLE: Expressions of moving an item associated with INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS 26	
INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS 7—Questions, adverbs, groups .....	28
INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS 8—Person or object under control .....	30
TABLE: Expressions of governance and leadership associated with INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS .....	30
INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS 9—Person or object possessed .....	31
TABLE: Expressions of possession associated with INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS .....	31
TABLE: Expressions of exchange associated with INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS .....	32
TABLE: Expressions of filling and occupying associated with INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS 32	
INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS 10—Positive/negative evaluation .....	
TABLE: Expressions of enjoyment and strong emotion associated with INSTRU- MENTAL: A MEANS .....	
INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS 11—The passive agent .....	
INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS 12—An agent with no subject .....	

INSTRUMENTAL: A LABEL 1—Being, becoming, seeming .....	36
TABLE: INSTRUMENTAL: A LABEL with words meaning 'be', 'become' .....	37
TABLE: INSTRUMENTAL: A LABEL with words meaning 'be', 'become' (continued) .....	37
TABLE: Words meaning 'apply a label to an item' associated with INSTRUMENTAL: A LABEL .....	40
INSTRUMENTAL: AN ADJUNCT 1—Accompaniment .....	40
TABLE: Expressions of engagement associated with INSTRUMENTAL: AN ADJUNCT .....	41
INSTRUMENTAL: AN ADJUNCT 2—Idioms and other uses .....	42
INSTRUMENTAL: A LANDMARK 1—перед 'in front of' .....	43
INSTRUMENTAL: A LANDMARK 2—за 'beyond, behind' .....	45
INSTRUMENTAL: A LANDMARK 3—над 'above' .....	47
INSTRUMENTAL: A LANDMARK 4—под 'under' .....	49
INSTRUMENTAL: A LANDMARK 5—между 'between' .....	50
EPILOGUE .....	51
ACCUSATIVE: A DESTI .....	52
PROLOGUE .....	53
TABLE: Distribution of prepositions among the meanings of the accusative case .....	54
ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION 1—в 'in, into' .....	54
ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION 2—на 'to, on, onto' .....	58
ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION 3—за 'beyond, behind' .....	59
ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION 4—о 'against' .....	61
ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION 5—по 'up to' .....	61
ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION 6—под 'under' .....	62
ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION 7—Destinations in time .....	62
ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION 8—The direct object .....	64
ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION 9—Objects without subjects .....	66
ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION 10—Destinations of purpose .....	67
ACCUSATIVE: A DIMENSION 1—Distance and duration .....	69
ACCUSATIVE: A DIMENSION 2—Size and capacity .....	72
ACCUSATIVE: A DIMENSION 3—Comparison .....	73
ACCUSATIVE: A DIMENSION 4—Activities in various domains .....	74
ACCUSATIVE: AN ENDPOINT 1—Space as opposed to time .....	77
ACCUSATIVE: AN ENDPOINT 2—TIME AS OPPOSED TO SPACE .....	78
TABLE: Time expressions associated with ACCUSATIVE: AN ENDPOINT .....	79
EPILOGUE .....	80
DATIVE: A RECEIVER .....	82
PROLOGUE .....	83
DATIVE: A RECEIVER 1—The indirect object .....	84
TABLE: Expressions of giving associated with DATIVE: A RECEIVER .....	85
DATIVE: A RECEIVER 2—Indirect objects without direct objects .....	87
TABLE: Expressions of communication associated with DATIVE: A RECEIVER .....	87
TABLE: Expressions of communication associated with DATIVE: A RECEIVER (continued) .....	88
TABLE: Expressions of giving money associated with DATIVE: A RECEIVER .....	89

DATIVE: A RECEIVER 3—Giving the self .....	
TABLE: Expressions of appearance and manifestation associated with DATIVE: RECEIVER	
TABLE: Expressions of appearance and manifestation associated with DATIVE: RECEIVER	
DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER 1—Benefit .....	
TABLE: Expressions of benefit associated with DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER .....	
TABLE: Expressions of benefit associated with DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER .....	
DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER 2—Harm .....	
TABLE: Expressions of harm associated with DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER .....	
TABLE: Expressions of harm associated with DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER .....	
DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER 3—Having and needing .....	
TABLE: Expressions of having and needing associated with DATIVE: EXPERIENCER .....	
TABLE: Expressions of having and needing associated with DATIVE: EXPERIENCER (continued) .....	
DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER 4—Age, environment, and emotions .....	
DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER 5—Modal meanings .....	
TABLE: Expressions of feeling like or having to associated with DATIVE: EXPERIENCER .....	100
DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER 6—Victims and beneficiaries .....	101
DATIVE: A COMPETITOR 1—Matching forces .....	101
TABLE: Expressions of equal or matching forces associated with DATIVE: A COMPETITOR .....	102
DATIVE: A COMPETITOR 2—Submission to a greater force .....	103
TABLE: Expressions of submission associated with DATIVE: A COMPETITOR	103
DATIVE: A COMPETITOR 3—к 'to, toward'	104
DATIVE: A COMPETITOR 4—по 'along'	107
EPILOGUE .....	109
GENITIVE: A SOURCE .....	110
PROLOGUE .....	111
GENITIVE: A SOURCE 1—Going to > coming from .....	112
GENITIVE: A SOURCE 2—из 'from' .....	113
GENITIVE: A SOURCE 3—с 'from'	115
GENITIVE: A SOURCE 4—от 'from'	116
GENITIVE: A SOURCE 5—Withdrawal .....	118
TABLE: Expressions of fear and avoidance associated with GENITIVE: A SOURCE	118
GENITIVE: A GOAL 1—до 'to'	118
GENITIVE: A GOAL 2—'For' and 'against'	121
GENITIVE: A GOAL 3—Actual approach .....	122
TABLE: Words meaning 'get', 'approach', 'desire' associated with GENITIVE: A GOAL	122
TABLE: Words meaning 'get', 'approach', 'desire' associated with GENITIVE: A GOAL	122
GENITIVE: A GOAL 4—Hypothetical approach	123
TABLE: Words that can govern GENITIVE: A GOAL OF ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION	124
TABLE: Comparison of GENITIVE: A GOAL and ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION .....	124



GENITIVE: A WHOLE 1—'Of', possession, and color .....	125
GENITIVE: A WHOLE 2—Events, idioms, and chains .....	126
GENITIVE: A WHOLE 3—Prepositions and prepositional phrases .....	128
TABLE: Prepositional phrases meaning 'of' associated with GENITIVE: A WHOLE	128
TABLE: Prepositional phrases meaning 'of' associated with GENITIVE: A WHOLE	
(continued) .....	129
GENITIVE: A WHOLE 4—Numerals and quantifiers .....	129
GENITIVE: A WHOLE 5—'Some' .....	130
TABLE: Words expressing quantities associated with GENITIVE: .....	131
GENITIVE: A REFERENCE 1—Dates and other reference points .....	132
TABLE: Prepositions associated with GENITIVE: A REFERENCE .....	133
GENITIVE: A REFERENCE 2—y 'by' .....	134
GENITIVE: A REFERENCE 3—Lack .....	135
TABLE: Expressions of lacking associated with GENITIVE: A REFERENCE .....	136
GENITIVE: A REFERENCE 4—Comparison .....	136
EPILOGUE .....	137
LOCATIVE: A PLACE .....	138
PROLOGUE .....	139
LOCATIVE: A PLACE 1—в 'in' .....	139
LOCATIVE: A PLACE 2—Words that trigger в; the 2nd locative .....	142
TABLE: Words that can trigger в + LOCATIVE: A PLACE .....	142
LOCATIVE: A PLACE 3—на 'on' .....	144
TABLE: A categorization of common "на words" .....	145
TABLE: Words that can use both на and в + LOCATIVE: A PLACE .....	145
TABLE: на + LOCATIVE: A PLACE in time expressions .....	146
LOCATIVE: A PLACE 4—Words that trigger на; the 2nd locative .....	147
TABLE: Words that can trigger на + LOCATIVE: A PLACE .....	147
TABLE: на + LOCATIVE: A PLACE in idiomatic expressions .....	148
LOCATIVE: A PLACE 5—при 'at' .....	149
LOCATIVE: A PLACE 6—о 'about' .....	150
LOCATIVE: A PLACE 7—после 'after' .....	151
TABLE: после + LOCATIVE: A PLACE in the domain of time .....	151
EPILOGUE .....	152
APPENDIX .....	153
Russian Spelling Rules .....	153
Declension of Nouns .....	154
Feminine Declension Nouns .....	156
Masculine Declension Nouns .....	156
Neuter Declension Nouns .....	158
Adjectives .....	159
Pronouns .....	160
Numerals .....	161
Prepositions .....	162

Names .....	
FURTHER READING .....	
SOURCES .....	
EXERCISES .....	169
NOTES ON THE EXERCISES .....	169
LEVEL I EXERCISES .....	170
Nominative Exercise 1, Level I .....	171
Nominative Exercise 2, Level I .....	172
Nominative Exercise 3, Level I .....	173
Instrumental Exercise 1, Level I .....	174
Instrumental Exercise 2, Level I .....	175
Instrumental Exercise 3, Level I .....	176
Accusative Exercise 1, Level I .....	178
Accusative Exercise 2, Level I .....	179
Accusative Exercise 3, Level I .....	180
Dative Exercise 1, Level I .....	181
Dative Exercise 2, Level I .....	182
Dative Exercise 3, Level I .....	183
Genitive Exercise 1, Level I .....	184
Genitive Exercise 2, Level I .....	185
Genitive Exercise 3, Level I .....	186
Locative Exercise 1, Level I .....	188
Locative Exercise 2, Level I .....	189
Locative Exercise 3, Level I .....	190
Mixed Case Exercise 1, Level I .....	191
Mixed Case Exercise 2, Level I .....	192
Mixed Case Exercise 3, Level I .....	193
Mixed Case Exercise 4, Level I .....	194
Multi-Case Preposition Exercise 1, Level I .....	194
Multi-Case Preposition Exercise 2, Level I .....	196
Multi-Case Preposition Exercise 3, Level I .....	197
LEVEL II EXERCISES .....	199
Nominative Exercise 1, Level II .....	200
Nominative Exercise 2, Level II .....	201
Nominative Exercise 3, Level II .....	202
Instrumental Exercise 1, Level II .....	204
Instrumental Exercise 2, Level II .....	205
Instrumental Exercise 3, Level II .....	206
Accusative Exercise 1, Level II .....	208
Accusative Exercise 2, Level II .....	209
Accusative Exercise 3, Level II .....	210

Dative Exercise 1, Level II .....	
Dative Exercise 2, Level II .....	
Dative Exercise 3, Level II .....	
Genitive Exercise 1, Level II .....	
Genitive Exercise 2, Level II .....	
Genitive Exercise 3, Level II .....	
Locative Exercise 1, Level II .....	
Locative Exercise 2, Level II .....	
Locative Exercise 3, Level II .....	
Mixed Case Exercise 1, Level I .....	
Mixed Case Exercise 2, Level I .....	
Mixed Case Exercise 3, Level I .....	
Mixed Case Exercise 4, Level I .....	
Mixed Case Exercise 5, Level I .....	
Mixed Case Exercise 6, Level I .....	
Mixed Case Exercise 7, Level I .....	
Multi-Case Preposition Exercise 1, Level I .....	
Multi-Case Preposition Exercise 2, Level I .....	
Multi-Case Preposition Exercise 3, Level I .....	
Multi-Case Preposition Exercise 4, Level I .....	
<b>LEVEL III EXERCISES .....</b>	<b>236</b>
Nominative Exercise 1, Level III .....	237
Nominative Exercise 2, Level III .....	238
Nominative Exercise 3, Level III .....	240
Instrumental Exercise 1, Level III .....	242
Instrumental Exercise 2, Level III .....	243
Instrumental Exercise 3, Level III .....	245
Accusative Exercise 1, Level III .....	247
Accusative Exercise 2, Level III .....	248
Accusative Exercise 3, Level III .....	250
Dative Exercise 1, Level III .....	252
Dative Exercise 2, Level III .....	253
Dative Exercise 3, Level III .....	255
Genitive Exercise 1, Level III .....	257
Genitive Exercise 2, Level III .....	259
Genitive Exercise 3, Level III .....	260
Locative Exercise 1, Level III .....	262
Locative Exercise 2, Level III .....	264
Locative Exercise 3, Level III .....	266
Mixed Case Exercise 1, Level I .....	268
Mixed Case Exercise 2, Level I .....	269
Mixed Case Exercise 3, Level I .....	271
Mixed Case Exercise 4, Level I .....	272
Mixed Case Exercise 5, Level I .....	274



Mixed Case Exercise 6, Level I .....	275
Mixed Case Exercise 7, Level I .....	277
Mixed Case Exercise 8, Level I .....	278
Mixed Case Exercise 9, Level I .....	278
Mixed Case Exercise 10, Level I .....	279
Mixed Case Exercise 11, Level I .....	280
Mixed Case Exercise 12, Level I .....	281
Mixed Case Exercise 13, Level I .....	282
Multi-Case Preposition Exercise 1, Level I .....	283
Multi-Case Preposition Exercise 2, Level I .....	284
Multi-Case Preposition Exercise 3, Level I .....	286
ENGLISH INDEX .....	
RUSSIAN INDEX .....	

## SUGGESTIONS ON HOW TO USE THIS BOOK

*The Case Book for Russian* is unusual because it focuses on a single important issue confronting learners of Russian: the use of grammatical cases. Rather than targeting a specific audience (for example, second-year students) and giving a smattering of information on a variety of topics, this book is a thorough, comprehensive analysis of a single, but absolutely essential feature of Russian grammar, empowering learners to achieve complete mastery of case usage. *The Case Book for Russian* departs from standard textbook approaches in other ways as well. It demonstrates that proficiency-based materials can be successfully implemented while actually enhancing rather than compromising the acquisition of grammar. This book and its analysis draw upon a large database of naturally-occurring Russian sentences, presenting the reader with real native Russian rather than stripped-down textbook examples. Just as *The Case Book for Russian* refuses to feed its users unnaturally simplified samples of Russian, it also avoids offering sterile rules. This book focuses instead on explaining coherent groupings of motives that drive case use, on the understanding that Russian uses its six cases to produce a potentially infinite number of sentences, and learners will need to recognize novel as well as commonplace uses. Because *The Case Book for Russian* is so unlike most textbooks, a guide for its use might be of value to readers. The following suggestions for integrating this book into Russian language programs are offered in the confidence that readers will make their own more specific (and possibly more creative!) adjustments.

### NO SPECIAL KNOWLEDGE IS ASSUMED FOR TEACHERS OR STUDENTS

Aside from the names of the cases (nominative, instrumental, etc.), there is virtually no linguistic terminology used in *The Case Book for Russian*, and no knowledge of linguistics or semantics is assumed. Users are not expected to master any special formalism or to memorize new terms, and students who have used this book report that it is written in an accessible style. Most instructors with a good working knowledge of Russian will recognize the value of this book and feel comfortable with the explanations it contains.

### FOR USE AT A VARIETY OF LEVELS IN A VARIETY OF SETTINGS

The material presented here is most valuable to students who have already been exposed to the Russian case system, and now need to cement what they have learned about the case endings to a thorough understanding of how they are used. This point will be reached by learners at different times, depending upon their strengths and the structure of the program they are in. It is perhaps most likely that *The Case Book for Russian* will be used in second- or third-year Russian courses, although it is certainly not limited to any given time slot or environment. *The Case Book for Russian* is designed to be sufficiently self-explanatory to be used for self-study, while maintaining enough rigor to be useful also in highly structured learning situations such as military and foreign service language instruction. One could alternatively envision integrating this book into a course on the structure of Russian; all of

the talented graduate students who worked on this project reported learning facts about Russian case usage that were valuable to their work as teaching assistants in our Russian courses.

## FOR USE BY ITSELF OR WITH ANY OTHER TEXTBOOKS OR READINGS

*The Case Book for Russian* is entirely self-contained and can be used alone or in combination with any other materials. Most college-level Russian courses will develop conversation, reading, writing, and grammar skills simultaneously, and the use of this book can support all of these endeavors, regardless of what other materials and approaches are used. At one extreme, an instructor could simply assign *The Case Book for Russian*, and require students to work through it on their own (a process that can be monitored by collecting periodic homework assignments or asking students to hand in printed logs of their progress from the electronic version of this book). At the other extreme, this book could be the primary focus of a course that could include intensive analysis of case usage in various media (texts, audio, video, etc.). It is more likely, however, that *The Case Book for Russian* will be used in conjunction with other grammar and reading materials, and that part of one class per week will be devoted to discussing this book and applying its explanations to other materials covered in the course (i.e., intensive analysis only of excerpts that students find hard to understand). Since the meaning of every sentence in Russian is partially a function of case usage, virtually any source of Russian language material provides ample opportunities to enlarge upon what students will learn from this book.

## CHAPTERS MAY BE USED IN ANY ORDER

Each chapter in *The Case Book for Russian* is a separate, stand-alone modulc, designed to be used in any order. There is no need to follow the order presented in the book. The table gives four plans for using *The Case Book for Russian*, depending upon whether the goal is to complete it in one semester or over a whole year, and upon whether the user chooses to follow the order of the book (nominative, instrumental, accusative, dative, genitive, locative) or another order (this model presents the cases in an alternative order of nominative, accusative, genitive, dative, instrumental, locative, although absolutely any order can be accommodated). The table presumes standard semesters of 14-15 weeks, but of course this plan can be contracted or expanded to meet the needs of users on trimester or quarter systems or on more extended schedules such as at the Defense Language Institute. *The Case Book for Russian* contains several other features that contribute to its overall flexibility and ease of navigation. The appendix is a comprehensive review of all the case endings for nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and numerals, and all the endings relevant to a given case appear in a table at the beginning of that chapter. The Table of Contents is highly detailed. There are both Russian and English indices, as well as margin notes on every page to enable users to find the exact section of the book they seek. It is hoped that even after users have worked through all the text and exercises, they will continue to find *The Case Book for Russian* a handy reference book, to be consulted for all their case needs.



## THE SEMESTER PLAN

*The Case Book for Russian* in one semester (14 weeks; if you have a 15-week semester, you can add a second week of review with exercises)

	АССУТИВНОЕ ПРОЛОГ (ACCUSATIVE PROLOGUE)	ГЕНИТИВНОЕ ПРОЛОГ (GENITIVE PROLOGUE)
Week 1	Preliminaries; Nominative case and exercises	Preliminaries; Nominative case and exercises
Week 2	Instrumental Prologue Instrumental: a means	Accusative Prologue Accusative: a destination
Week 3	Instrumental: a label Instrumental: an adjunct Instrumental: a landmark	Accusative: a dimension Accusative: an endpoint
Week 4	Instrumental Epilogue Instrumental exercises	Accusative Epilogue Accusative exercises
Week 5	Accusative Prologue Accusative: a destination	Genitive Prologue Genitive: a source Genitive: a goal
Week 6	Accusative: a dimension Accusative: an endpoint	Genitive: a whole Genitive: a reference
Week 7	Accusative Epilogue Accusative exercises	Genitive Epilogue Genitive exercises
Week 8	Dative Prologue Dative: a receiver Dative: an experient	Dative Prologue Dative: a receiver Dative: an experient
Week 9	Dative: a competitor Dative Epilogue Dative exercises	Dative: a competitor Dative Epilogue Dative exercises
Week 10	Genitive Prologue Genitive: a source Genitive: a goal	Instrumental Prologue Instrumental: a means
Week 11	Genitive: a whole Genitive: a reference	Instrumental: a label Instrumental: an adjunct Instrumental: a landmark
Week 12	Genitive Epilogue Genitive exercises	Instrumental Epilogue Instrumental exercises
Week 13	Locative: a place Locative exercises	Locative: a place Locative exercises
Week 14	Multiple case review and exercises	Multiple case review and exercises

**THE YEAR PLAN**
*The Case Book for Russian* in two semesters (14 weeks each)

Week 1	Preliminaries	Dative Prologue Dative: receiver	Preliminaries	Dative Prologue Dative: receiver
Week 2	Nominative: name Nominative: identity Nominative exercises	Dative: experiencer	Nominative: name Nominative: identity Nominative exercises	Dative: experiencer
Week 3	Instrumental Prologue Instrumental: means 1-6	Dative: competitor	Accusative Prologue Accusative: destination 1-5	Dative: competitor
Week 4	Instrumental: means 7-12	Dative Epilogue Dative exercises	Accusative: destination 6-10	Dative Epilogue Dative exercises
Week 5	Instrumental: label Instrumental: adjunct	Genitive Prologue Genitive: source	Genitive: dimension	Instrumental Prologue Instrumental: means 1-6
Week 6	Instrumental: landmark	Genitive: goal	Accusative: endpoint	Instrumental: means 7-12
Week 7	Instrumental Epilogue Instrumental exercises I	Genitive: whole	Accusative Epilogue Accusative exercises I	Instrumental: label Instrumental: adjunct
Week 8	Instrumental exercises II	Genitive: reference	Accusative exercises II	Instrumental: landmark
Week 9	Accusative Prologue Accusative: destination 1-5	Genitive Epilogue Genitive exercises I	Genitive Prologue Genitive: source	Instrumental Epilogue Instrumental exercises I
Week 10	Accusative: destination 6-10	Genitive exercises II	Genitive: goal	Instrumental exercises II
Week 11	Genitive: dimension	Locative Prologue Locative: place	Genitive: dimension	Locative Prologue Locative: place
Week 12	Accusative: endpoint	Locative Epilogue Locative exercises	Genitive: dimension	Locative Epilogue Locative exercises
Week 13	Accusative Epilogue Accusative exercises I	Multiple case review exercises	Genitive Epilogue Genitive exercises I	Multiple case review exercises
Week 14	Accusative exercises II	Multiple case review exercises	Genitive exercises II	Multiple case review exercises

---

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

This book derives from over a decade of work on case semantics, and we are grateful to many people and grant funds that have made it possible for us to complete this work. First there are the people who helped to administer funds for the project: Meredith Clason and Glenda Thompson. There were a number of graduate students who worked on collection of data and discussions of how they would be presented: Mi-hi Lee, George Stackpole, and Maria Stalnaker. Sebastian Kempgen created a beautiful font custom-designed for the project. We are especially thankful to Eleonora Magomedova who helped us edit the Russian examples and lent us her fabulous voice for the audio recordings. A number of colleagues have made comments and suggestions that have enhanced the project, including: Edna Andrews, Larry Feinberg, Ron Feldstein, George Fowler, Robert Greenberg, Tore Nettet, George Rubinstein, Charles Townsend, and Nadia Zilper. In the summer of 1999, we tested an earlier version of these materials with two brave undergraduate volunteers at UNC, who gave us valuable feedback from the perspective of student users, they are: Ramona Carey and Claire Horn. Grants from a number of sources have helped to keep the case book fires burning over the years, including: a Fulbright award to conduct the original research on cases in 1987, an American Council of Learned Societies/Social Science Research Council grant in 1992 and 1994 to work on a book on the role of analogy in Slavic historical linguistics (which gave us a good perspective on certain aspects of the Russian case system that are presented in this book, such as the second genitive and locative, the distribution of genitive plural endings, and the development of animacy), a Chancellor's Instructional Technology grant in 1997-1998 to launch the actual case book project, a University Research Council grant in 1998-1999 to fund further work on audio recordings and digitization of the project, course development money from a Title VI National Resource Center grant to prepare the text for implementation in courses, and funds from a Title VI Language Resource Center grant helped complete the project. An IREX short-term travel grant in 1999 made it possible to compare notes with our Russian colleagues.

Finally, we are grateful to all the students in many language courses who appreciated presentations on case meaning in various Slavic languages and encouraged us to undertake this project. We are also thankful to all of our colleagues who have listened to papers and presentations on the subject of case semantics at conferences for so many years.



*Mrs. Glass went over to the medicine cabinet. It was stationed above the washbowl, against the wall. She opened its mirror-faced door and surveyed the congested shelves with the eye — or, rather, the masterly squint — of a dedicated medicine-cabinet gardener. Before her, in overly luxuriant rows, was a host, so to speak, of golden pharmaceuticals, plus a few technically less indigenous whatnots. The shelves bore iodine, Mercurochrome, vitamin capsules, dental floss, aspirin, Anacin, Bufferin, Argylol, Musterole, Ex-Lax, Milk of Magnesia, Sal Hepatica, Aspergum, two Gillette razors, one Schick Injector razor, two tubes of shaving cream, a bent and somewhat torn snapshot of a fat black-and-white cat asleep on a porch railing, three combs, two hairbrushes, a bottle of Wildroot hair ointment, a bottle of Fitch Dandruff Remover, a small, unlabeled box of glycerin suppositories, Vicks Nose Drops, Vicks Vapo Rub, six bars of castile soap, the stubs of three tickets to a 1946 musical comedy ("Call Me Mister"), a tube of depilatory cream, a box of Kleenex, two sea-shells, an assortment of used-looking emery boards, two jars of cleansing cream, three pairs of scissors, a nail file, an unclouded blue marble (known to marble-shooters, at least in the twenties, as a "purey"), a cream for contracting enlarged pores, a pair of tweezers, the strapless chassis of a girl's or woman's gold wristwatch, a box of bicarbonate of soda, a girl's boarding-school class ring with a chipped onyx stone, a bottle of Stopette — and, inconceivably or no, quite a good deal more.*

—from *Franny and Zooey*, J. D. Salinger

Open a Russian-English dictionary and you will find the meanings of every kind of word. Many dictionaries will even list translations for prefixes. But you won't find meanings for cases in your trusty dictionary. If you are lucky, you might have a reference grammar with an entry for each case, but chances are these entries will look rather like the contents of Mrs. Glass' medicine cabinet, and be just as appealing. Take the dative case, for example. Your reference grammar might tell you that the dative is used in the following contexts: for the indirect object; with the prepositions *к* 'toward' and *по* 'along'; with certain verbs such as *отвечать* 'answer', *аплодировать* 'applaud', *платить* 'pay', *подражать* 'imitate', *помогать* 'help', *принадлежать* 'belong to', *верить* 'believe', *мстить* 'avenge', *угодать* 'please', *завидовать* 'envy'; in impersonal expressions of age and comfort such as *мне двадцать лет/холодно* [me-DAT twenty-NOM years-GEN/cold] 'I am twenty years old/cold'. There's no obvious pattern in such an explanation, and it doesn't prepare you to predict what other words might be associated with the dative, or to interpret a sentence like *Она наступила ему на портфель* [She-NOM stepped him-DAT on briefcase-ACC] 'She stepped on his briefcase'. The incoherent assortments of case usage offered up in this fashion are incomplete and suggest no logical motive. There is also no logical motive for the student to try to learn them, since they don't make sense. The only choice seems to be to memorize lists of case uses, and this proves to be a formidable if not impossible task, since it is exceedingly difficult to assimilate information if it looks to you like just so much nonsense.

The goal of this text and accompanying exercises is to show you that there are patterns to case usage that make sense and can be learned fairly easily. This book can be used by students at any level of study, from beginner through advanced. Ideally a student could read through the basic text in the first year of study and then work through the examples and exercises in the second or third year. The margin notes and extensive indexing make it possible to access and use the text in any order, and for a variety of purposes, from general orientation to troubleshooting specific case meanings.

The meanings of the grammatical cases are probably the biggest obstacle faced by English-speaking students trying to learn Russian. Even advanced learners will often run into sentences they can't interpret. Students often know plenty of vocabulary and how to find unfamiliar words in the dictionary, and maybe they can even figure out what cases all the nouns, pronouns, and adjectives are in, but if they cannot figure out what the cases mean, the meaning of the sentence remains a mystery.

The meaning of a sentence is a product of two interdependent forces: the words it contains, and the relationships those words have to each other. In English these relationships are usually expressed by means of word order and prepositions, but in Russian this job is done by case. The words are fairly self-contained and concrete, since they can exist by themselves, outside of any sentence. The relationships that hold between words are relatively abstract and largely dependent upon context. The relationships themselves can be likened to a bare conceptual structure that is fleshed out by the actual words chosen. You can compare this to the concept *sandwich*, which indicates a set of relationships between bread, spreads, and fillings. By itself, *sandwich* is abstract, and if somebody asked you to

“make a sandwich,” you would probably ask for more information. If instead the request sounded something like “give me an open-faced turkey sandwich on rye with lettuce, tomato, and mustard, hold the mayo,” you would find that more satisfactory, because you would know both the relationship (sandwich) and the specific items in that relationship (one slice of rye, mustard [not mayonnaise] for spread, filling of turkey, lettuce, and tomato).

Our culture has some abstract relationships that can't be expressed in a single word, or even in a common expression. Take for example the various types of games that involve two teams of people, each of which tries to control the movement of a round object into a space belonging to another team. Variations in the type of object, parts of body or implements used to move it, playing environments, rules, etc. yield specific games such as basketball, football, soccer, volleyball, field hockey, ice hockey, lacrosse, rugby, water-polo, tennis, and ping-pong. The abstract relationship that holds between all the players, objects, playing environments, and rules is so familiar that it is transparent to us. We don't even think about it, and we apply it effortlessly even when we encounter a new game we haven't seen before. Now, imagine that there are some people who live in a radically different culture, where there are no such sports. If you led them onto a lacrosse field and handed them some sticks and a ball, they would be utterly clueless. Without any extra help, it's extremely unlikely that these people would start playing anything remotely like lacrosse. The sticks might seem handy for gathering apples from some nearby trees, and maybe the ball could serve as the head of a child's doll or ritual effigy. Goodness knows what they would make of the goals.

Nobody ever explained to you the principle relationship behind lacrosse or all the other games that work the same way. They didn't have to. You saw plenty of examples all around you and internalized the principle without even thinking about it. In order to gain the kind of understanding you have for such games, newcomers who have never been exposed to such an idea will need an explanation, not just of the principle itself, but of how it functions in various actual games. The situation of a student learning Russian is very similar to the culture-shock of these outsiders. Until you get acculturated to the games Russians play with their cases, it is impossible for you to interpret and manipulate Russian sentences the way that Russians do. The objective is to make you into effective players of the case game. There are challenges to face, as in any game, but they are part of the sport, and the rewards of really mastering the language far outweigh the difficulties.

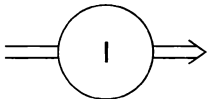
If a Russian asked you to explain the meaning of the English preposition *for*, you might be surprised and frustrated by the difficulty of this task. Even if you couldn't give your Russian friend a satisfactory answer, that wouldn't mean that *for* doesn't mean anything or that there are lots of different *fors* that are not related to each other in any systematic way. Intuitively you sense that *for* does mean something and that all uses of *for* relate to that meaning. The same goes for Russians and cases: they may not be able to tell you why all those different verbs take the dative case, but they have an intuitive sense that the dative case does mean something and the contexts in which the dative appears has to do with that meaning.



## PRELIMINARIES 2—How information is presented in this book

This book will present to you the basic meaning of each case, and it will also show you all the specific uses and how they relate to the basic meaning. To help you focus on the cases and their meanings, all examples are presented with both a word-by-word gloss and a smooth translation. The cases will be marked with abbreviated tags in the word-by-word gloss: NOM for nominative, INST for instrumental, ACC for accusative, DAT for dative, GEN for genitive, and LOC for locative (also known in some textbooks as “prepositional”). Each case will further be associated with two labels, one of which is a word and the other a diagram. For example, the instrumental will look like this:

INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS



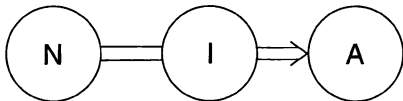
A force (arrow) passes through INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS (circle labeled I)

Both the word and the diagram are meant to suggest the basic meaning of the case, to give you a handle to grip your memory to. They are not definitions, nor do they imply that Russians have such labels or think in pictograms or anything of that sort. They are merely reference points for the process of working through the meanings. Both the word and the diagram focus only on the meaning of the case itself, which is usually embedded in a sentence that uses several cases. For example, a sentence like the following could be represented by a larger diagram in which INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS would be only a component:

Режисёр протёр очки́ платко́м.

[Director-NOM wiped glasses-ACC handkerchief-INST.]

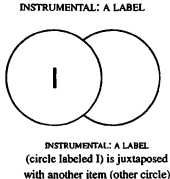
The director wiped his glasses *with a handkerchief*.



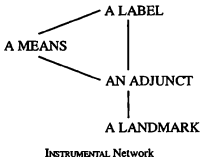
A force from a NOMINATIVE: A NAME (circle labeled N)  
passes through an INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS (circle labeled I) and  
arrives at an ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION (circle labeled A)

However, such diagrams would quickly become clumsy and distracting. We will focus on only one case at a time instead of diagramming entire sentences this way.

Most cases have submeanings related to the basic meaning:



When there are submeanings, they will be arranged in a network to show how they are related like this:



The object of this text is not to teach you the case endings for nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and numerals. Working through these materials will certainly reinforce your knowledge of what these paradigms look like, but there are many other books and materials for achieving that goal. Drilling the endings would distract you from concentrating on the meanings. However, if you want to review the case endings at any time, there are tables in the appendix giving complete declensions for your reference, and shortened tables specific to each given case are at the beginning of each chapter.

In addition to basic meanings and submeanings, metaphor plays an important role in case meaning. Case meaning takes as its point of departure the relationships that hold between physical objects placed or moving in space. These relationships can be metaphorically transferred to other domains such as time or social interaction, just as we see in English:

*on* in space: I already have dinner *on* the table.

*on* in time: I have a doctor's appointment *on* Monday.

*toward* in space: The troops are advancing *toward* the border.

*toward* in social interaction: That director is favorably inclined *toward* English actresses.

In these examples, time and social interaction are treated as if they were physical spaces. For the most part, Russians use these metaphors in ways very similar to those familiar from English, though some uses might surprise you. Throughout the text mention is made of meanings that are extended to domains other than space. These metaphorical extensions, in conjunction with items specific to certain contexts, such as negation, numerals, certain verbs and prepositions, are responsible for the more specific meanings that you will find nested under the basic meanings and submeanings.

There are also relations that hold between the cases. It is not essential for you to memorize or appreciate these relations at this point, but since these relations motivate the order in which the cases are presented and to some extent the descriptions they are given, a brief overview is in order. This overview is purely for purposes of general orientation; the statements it makes are abstract and will probably make more sense to you after you have completed all the text and exercises.

	<i>no direction</i>	<i>direction</i>	<i>section</i>
	NOMINATIVE: A NAME	ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION	GENITIVE: A SOURCE
<i>periphery</i>	INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS	DATIVE: A RECEIVER	LOCATIVE: A PLACE

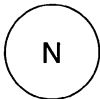
The nominative basically names an item, and has no particular designation. The instrumental is relatively peripheral to the nominative, and names an item through which something happens; it is a mere conduit, envelope, or accompaniment for something else. Both the accusative and the dative signal direction; the accusative is the destination for some item or activity, and the dative, relatively more peripheral, is a receiver or experiencer of some item or activity, usually capable of producing some further action in response. The sectioning of a part from its source is expressed by the genitive; more abstractly such sectioning can involve background elements of the setting, expressed by the locative.

You will notice that the examples in both the text and exercises are very different from the examples you have seen in other textbooks. That is because these are not textbook examples; not a single one of them was cooked up for this book. Most of the examples in here have been taken from literature or periodicals printed in the past decade. Trying to learn Russian cases from traditional textbook examples is a little like trying to learn about the water cycle by studying the steam in your bathroom. It leads to the syndrome described at the beginning of this chapter, where you know all the words and endings, but still can't make sense of the sentence. Many people hit this plateau in their third year of study, but if you're a fast learner, you risk getting stuck there even sooner. Rather than being contrived and antiseptic, the examples in this book and exercises will expose you to the cases as they really are, raw and unadulterated. This means that the examples will be somewhat messier than the ones you are used to seeing. But hopefully this guided tour of case realia will help to make your transition from language study to language use a confident, seamless stride rather than a desperate leap into a void.

**NOMINATIVE Forms**

hard type: singular кóмната	plural кóмнаты	soft type: 'week' singular недeля	plural недeли
-ь: 'talent' singular спóсoбнoсть	plural спóсoбнoсти		
hard type: 'courtyard' singular двóр	plural двóры	soft type: 'nail' singular гвóздь	plural гвóзди
hard type: 'body' singular тeлo	plural тeлá	soft type: 'schedule' singular расписáние	plural расписáния
hard type: 'first' feminine пeрвая	masculine пeрвый -ой if stressed	neuter пeрвое	plural пeрвые
soft type: 'last' feminine пocлeдняя	masculine пocлeдний	neuter пocлeднее	plural пocлeдние
'I' я	'we' мы	'you' informal ты	'you' вы
'she' oнá	'he' oн		'they' oни
'who' кто	'what' что		
'this' feminine этá	masculine этoт	neuter этo	plural эти
'all, every' feminine всá	masculine вeсь	neuter всe	plural вce
feminine 'my' мoя	masculine	neuter мoё	plural мoи
'our' нáшá	нáш	нáше	нáши
'one' feminine oднá	masculine oднi	neuter oднo	plural oдни
'two' двe (fem) двa (masc/neut)	'three' трe	'four' чeтырe	'five' пять

NOMINATIVE:



A NAME

The nominative network:

A NAME ——— AN IDENTITY

## PROLOGUE

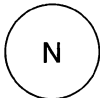
As you probably suspect, the nominative case is relatively simple and straightforward. It is the logical starting point both for our survey of the cases and for many sentences. In addition to its basic meaning, NOMINATIVE: A NAME, this case has just one submeaning, NOMINATIVE: AN IDENTITY. Whereas NOMINATIVE: A NAME has a very broad naming function, NOMINATIVE: AN IDENTITY has a more narrow function, targeting a characteristic of something that has already been named. You can think of NOMINATIVE: AN IDENTITY as being a specialized version of NOMINATIVE: A NAME, used when we want to convey more information.

case.

## NOMINATIVE: A NAME 1—Naming and calling

Because it does not have any other more specific meaning, the nominative is ideal even for use outside of a sentence, such as: pointing to an object and naming it; signs, tags, labels, titles, and similar naming devices. The fact that dictionaries cite nouns in the nominative case is a symptom of the nominative's function as the primary name for an item or idea; the other case forms are all variations on the nominative, secondary and derived. There are two ways in which Russian uses this naming function just like a sign: either by setting it off with a comma, or by using a comma and *как* 'like'. In both situations the nominative item is set apart from the rest of the sentence; it is merely a parenthetical piece of commentary:

The naming  
function of  
INATIVE:  
NAME.



INATIVE: A NAME  
le labeled N)

Ты не в Мордóвии, *чучело!*  
[You-NOM not in Mordovia-LOC, scarecrow-NOM!]  
You're not in Mordovia, *you scarecrow!*

Не трожь Росси́ю, *иностранец!*  
[Not touch Russia-ACC, foreigner-NOM!]  
Don't touch Russia, *you foreigner!*

NOMINATIVE: A  
NAME used to call  
someone a name  
to get their  
attention.

Только скажу — *молодые*, не губите себя, не пробуйте.

[Only say — young people-NOM, not destroy self-ACC, not try.]

I have only one thing to say — *young people*, don't destroy yourselves, don't try it.

In the first two examples above, the naming function is being used to call someone a name. As the third example shows (a plea for young people not to use drugs), you can similarly use the nominative case to call out to someone to get their attention. Some languages have a separate vocative case with its own endings where Russian uses NOMINATIVE: A NAME. Russian does have some special vocative case forms with people's names and names of family members. If a name (usually a diminutive form) ends in -а or -я it is not uncommon to hear Russians drop the last vowel when calling to a friend or relative. Thus you might hear *Оль!* as well as *Оля!*, *Алёш!* as well as *Алёша!*, and *мама!* as well as *ма́ма!* Here's an example of this truncated use of the NOMINATIVE: A NAME with the name *Дима*:

*Дим, как ты думаешь, любовь между мужем и женой может быть вечной?*

[Dima-NOM, how you-NOM think, love-NOM between husband-INST and wife-INST can be eternal-INST?]

*Dima*, what do you think, can the love between a husband and a wife last forever?

There are two special naming forms (historical leftovers from a vocative case long ago lost in Russian) that can be used to appeal for divine assistance: *Бо́же!* 'O God!' (from *Бог* 'God') and *Господи* 'O Lord' (from *Господь* 'Lord').

As mentioned above, NOMINATIVE: A NAME can be introduced by the word *как* 'like'. Here are two examples of the parenthetical use of *как* with the NOMINATIVE: A NAME:

Оказалось, что и танцевать не умела и сидела тихо, как *мышь*.

[Turned-out, that even dance not knew and sat quietly, like mouse-NOM.]

It turned out that she didn't even know how to dance, and she sat quietly, li *mouse*.

И я, как *андерсеновский король*, из всех сил старался разглядеть эту облачность и прозрачность, эту музыку без слов.

[And I-NOM, like Andersen's king-NOM, from all strengths-GEN tried to see-through this cloudiness-ACC and transparency-ACC, this music-ACC without words-GEN.]

And I, like *Andersen's king* (in the tale "The Emperor's New Clothes"), tried with all my strength to see through this cloudiness and transparency, this music without words.

## NOMINATIVE: A NAME 2—The subject of a sentence

In the expression of any more complex thought, the nominative names the subject, the active head of most sentences. Because words are marked with cases, there is no need for a nominative subject to be the first item in a sentence, as in English. The thing that identifies the subject is its nominative case, not its position; no matter where it is, it can be identified

as nominative and therefore subject. As we will see, the same goes for the other cases as well: since each item in a sentence is flagged with a case ending indicating its role, the order of words doesn't matter as much. The word order we are familiar with from English is probably the most common one used in Russian, but there are many other possibilities, thanks to the fact that speakers of Russian can read the case flags no matter where they are waving. Here are some examples of nominative subjects, both at the beginnings of sentences and elsewhere:

*Никакóе друго́е и́мя в ру́сской про́зе послéднегò десятилétия не звучит так гóлко и вня́тно и, глáвное, — привлекáтельно.*

[No other name-NOM in Russian prose-LOC last decade-GEN not sound as loudly and distinctly and, mainly, — appealingly.]

*No other name* in Russian prose of the last decade sounds as loud and distinct and, most importantly, — as appealing.

Осòбенно скорбít *áвтор* по приснопáмятным времена́м СССР тридцáтых - пятидеся́тых гóдов.

[Especially laments author-NOM along memorable times-DAT USSR-GEN thirties-GEN - fifties years-GEN.]

*The author* particularly laments the memorable times of the USSR of the 1930's - 1950's.

Чем обернётся для Росси́и *потéря* стратегическòгò сéверногò форпòста.

[What-INST turn-into for Russia-GEN loss-NOM strategic northern outpost-GEN.]

What *the loss* of a strategic northern outpost will mean for Russia.

Вя́дно, на пòчте чтó-то перепúтали. Нет, на пакéте тóчно знáчился *мой áдрес*.

[Clearly, at post-office-LOC something-ACC mixed-up. No, on package-LOC precisely appeared my address-NOM.]

Clearly they had made a mistake at the post office. No, it was precisely *my address* that appeared on the package.

Во мнé, естéственно, наkáпливался *протéст* протів их “пράвды”.

[In me-LOC, naturally, welled-up protest-NOM against their “truth-GEN”.]

A feeling of *protest* against their “truth” naturally welled up in me.

Пòтому-то и *развитóй социализм* рúхнул не тóлько из-за тогò, что егò возглавля́ли *дрáжлые стáрцы*, котóрых приводили на заседáние *коллèги* пòд руку...

[For that reason even mature socialism-NOM collapsed not just because that-GEN, that it-ACC headed decrepit elders-NOM, whom-ACC led at meeting-ACC colleagues-NOM under hand-ACC...]

That's why even *mature socialism* collapsed, not just because it was headed by *decrepit elders* whom *colleagues* led by the hand to the meeting...

The first example has the NOMINATIVE: A NAME subject at the beginning, the second example places it after the verb. The third example (the title of a newspaper article) shows the NOMINATIVE: A NAME subject deeply embedded in the sentence, and the same goes for the last three examples. Notice that the last example here has three clauses, all with nominative subjects; the second one is actually active ('decrepit elders headed it'), but we used the passive voice in the smooth translation because English word order is not as flexible as Russian. The active phrase 'decrepit elders headed it' would have put 'decrepit elders' too far away from 'whom'. You will often encounter Russian sentences that cannot be said in the same way in English, and this will be reflected in our translations.

The subject of a sentence need not engage in any real action in order to serve as the source of energy for a verb; it can merely exist. Here is an example of NOMINATIVE: A NAME serving as the subject for the verb БЫТЬ 'be':

В центре переговоров — вопросы ирано-русского сотрудничества.

[In center-LOC negotiations-GEN — questions-NOM Iranian-Russian collaboration-GEN.]

Questions about Iranian-Russian collaboration are at the center of the negotiations.

This example follows the pattern of "at a location [*center of negotiations*] there is an item (subject/questions)". Russian uses a specialized version of this construction to express 'have', employing *y* 'by' + GEN to describe the location. Thus *у меня (есть) книга* [by me-GEN (is) book-NOM], literally 'by me there is a book', is the most usual way of saying 'I have a book'. The following example contains a metaphorical assertion of having familial attachments (roots being ancestors and shoots being offspring), followed by an assertion of existence (expressed by an archaic form of the verb БЫТЬ 'be'):

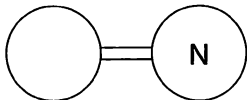
У меня есть корни и есть ростки. Значит, я есть.

[By me-GEN are roots-NOM and are shoots-NOM. Means, I-NOM am.]

I have roots and I have shoots. Therefore, I exist.

## NOMINATIVE: AN IDENTITY 1—The Y in an X = Y sentence

Even when you have already given something a name, you might want to give more information about the item, to tell us that it is big or unusual or whatever. The basis of this submeaning is a simple equation of the type  $x = y$ , where *y* is NOMINATIVE: AN IDENTITY. The bond between *x* and *y* is typically the verb БЫТЬ 'be' (which usually has a zero form in the present tense). The other item, *x*, is typically NOMINATIVE: A NAME (just like the examples with БЫТЬ 'be' immediately above). This use of NOMINATIVE: AN IDENTITY is traditionally known as the "predicate nominative".



NOMINATIVE: AN IDENTITY (circle labeled N) is associated with another item (other circle)

NOMINATIVE: A NAME AS THE SUBJECT OF БЫТЬ 'be'

NOMINATIVE: A NAME AS SUBJECT OF БЫТЬ 'be' WHEN USED TO EXPRESS 'HAVE'

NOMINATIVE: AN IDENTITY WITH THE VERB 'BE'



Наймэн — интеллектуальный ковбой.  
[Naiman-NOM — intellectual cowboy-NOM.]  
Naiman is *an intellectual cowboy*.

Вообщё, русский Сёвер — ещё неразгаданная тайна Россйи.  
[In-general, Russian North-NOM — still unsolved mystery-NOM Russia-GEN.]  
In general, the Russian North is Russia's as yet *unsolved mystery*.

Должен признаться, что я не совсем журналист.  
[Must admit, that I-NOM not completely journalist-NOM.]  
I must admit that I am not exactly *a journalist*.

Надо имёт в виду, что она человек глубоко верующий.  
[Necessary have in view-LOC, that she-NOM person-NOM deeply faithful-NOM.]  
One has to keep in mind the fact that she is *a person of profound faith*.

Since both terms in the equation refer to the same thing, the item marked as NOMINATIVE: AN IDENTITY can be just an adjective, adding extra information, as in:

Ковригин страшно ранимый и болезненно чуткий.  
[Kovrigin-NOM terribly woundable-NOM and painfully sensitive-NOM.]  
Kovrigin is terribly *easy to wound* and painfully *sensitive*.

NOMINATIVE: AN IDENTITY in sentences with the  $x = y$  structure also marks the place where short-form adjectives appear in Russian; indeed when you have only an adjective in this position, it is usually short-form, and short-form adjectives can only appear in the nominative case. Here are some examples:

Победа Довлатова несомненна.  
[Victory-NOM Dovlatov-GEN indisputable-NOM.]  
Dovlatov's victory is *indisputable*.

Убийцы нашего вождя пока не найдены.  
[Murderers-NOM our leader-GEN as-yet not found-NOM.]  
The people who murdered our leader have not yet been *found*.

Известно, юность доверчива и любопытна, а потому и бесстрашна.  
[Known, youth-NOM trusting-NOM and curious-NOM, and for-that-reason also fearless-NOM.]  
It is well known that youth is *trusting* and *curious* and for that reason also *fearless*.

In reality there are two kinds of  $x = y$  expressions, the relatively simple identity described here, and a different one that involves labeling  $x$  as a member of category  $y$ , in which case  $y$  is marked as INSTRUMENTAL: A LABEL. Here is one example for comparison:

Я был одновременно хищником и жертвой.  
[I-NOM was simultaneously predator-INST and victim-INST.]  
I was simultaneously a *predator* and a *victim*.

The use of INSTRUMENTAL: A LABEL will become clearer in the discussion of the instrumental case in the following chapter. For now it is enough to note that although both the nominative and the instrumental cases can be used to describe an item, NOMINATIVE: AN IDENTITY tends to describe inherent, unchanging properties, whereas INSTRUMENTAL: A LABEL tends to describe temporary, changing properties. Remember that an identity is something that is permanent, whereas a label can be taken off and exchanged.

Word order can be rearranged for this use of the nominative as well, as in this example:

Наивные мы всё же люди!  
[Naive-NOM we-NOM after all people-NOM]  
We are after all *naive people*!

The normal word order, corresponding to the other examples we have seen, would of course be мы всё же *наивные люди*, but the word *наивные* has been moved to the beginning for emphasis.

## NOMINATIVE: AN IDENTITY 2—Fixed X = Y expressions

There are a couple of fixed expressions that use NOMINATIVE: AN IDENTITY. One is the phrase что такое + NOM ‘what is Y?’, which asks the hearer to identify the meaning of a word that the speaker does not know. Here is an example of how this simple question can be embedded in a sentence for rhetorical effect:

Здесь, когда стряслось у меня большое горе, я узнала и что такое *настоящие друзья*.  
[Here, when shook-off by me-GEN big grief-NOM, I-NOM found-out also what-NOM such-NOM real friends-NOM.]  
Here, when I shook off the burden of grief, I also found out what *true friends* really are.

The use of NOMINATIVE: AN IDENTITY with the preposition за ‘behind’ to mean ‘what kind of Y is that?’ is not uncommon in spoken Russian:

Ты мне лучше объясни, что это за люди!  
[You-NOM me-DAT better explain, what-NOM that-NOM for people-NOM!]  
Then you explain to me what kind of *people* those are!

Это ещё что за новости?  
[That-NOM still what-NOM for news-NOM?]  
What kind of *news* is that now?

Что за оппозиционная партия — было ещё не совсем ясно.  
[What-NOM for opposition party-NOM — was still not entirely clear.]  
What kind of *opposition party* — that was still not entirely clear.

## NOMINATIVE: AN IDENTITY 3—X = Y reduced to X, Y

The construction associated with NOMINATIVE: AN IDENTITY can appear in an abbreviated form, without any verb to connect the two entities (perhaps not such a big loss, since the most common verb is ‘to be’, which is usually not expressed in the present tense, as shown in most of the examples in the preceding two sections). In this construction we see a word that refers to a generic category (like ‘state’ or ‘novel’) followed by the specific name or title of something in that category (like ‘Nevada’ or ‘The White Guard’), as in these two examples:

1992 г. — в штате Невада произведён последний ядерный взрыв.  
[1992 year-NOM — in state-LOC Nevada-NOM produced-NOM last nuclear explosion-NOM.]  
The year 1992 — in the state of *Nevada* the last nuclear explosion is produced.

Если в “Мастере и Маргарите” ирреальное и фантастическое определено замыслом, то от романа “Белая гвардия” никто не ожидал мистических приключений.


[If in “Master-LOC and Margarita-LOC” unreal-NOM and fantastic-NOM determined-NOM design-INST, then from novel-GEN “White Guard-NOM” no-one-NOM not expected mystical adventures-GEN.]

Whereas in *The Master and Margarita* unreal and fantastic elements were determined by design, no one expected mystical adventures from the novel *The White Guard*.

Notice that the word for the generic category can be in any case (in these examples, штате ‘state’ is in the locative, and романа ‘novel’ is in the genitive), but the actual name (commonly known as an appositive) is in the nominative. The second example provides us with an opportunity to compare the effect of this use of the NOMINATIVE: AN IDENTITY with its absence. When the generic category is not stated, the title of the first book mentioned (*The Master and Margarita*) is declined, but when the generic term meaning ‘novel’ is used, the title (*The White Guard*) appears in the nominative case.

## EPILOGUE

To recap: the nominative case can be used to call someone or something by name, to name the subject of a sentence, and also to indicate the identity of an item. The nominative is all about naming, and it should not surprise you that the very term “nominative” is related to our English word *name*. Though not all Russian sentences have nominative subjects, the vast majority do, and your strategy should be to look first for a nominative subject and its



verb; once you find these two items, the rest of the sentence becomes easier to unpack. The remaining chapters of this book will reveal the meanings of the other cases and demonstrate their functions. Russian operates on an austere and powerful little system, using only six cases to describe all the possible relationships that human beings encounter in their lives. As the pieces fall into place, you will gradually become acculturated to the logic of Russian sentences and you will find that each case takes on a life of its own.



## INSTRUMENTAL Forms

Feminine  
declension  
nouns

hard type: 'room' singular комнатой	plural комнатами	soft type: 'week' singular неделей	plural неделями
-y: 'talent' singular способностью	plural способностями		

Masculine  
declension  
nouns

hard type: 'courtyard' singular двором	plural дворами	soft type: 'nail' singular гвоздем	plural гвоздями
--	-------------------	--	--------------------

Neuter  
declension  
nouns

hard type: 'body' singular телом	plural телами	soft type: 'schedule' singular расписанием	plural расписаниями
--	------------------	--	------------------------

## Adjectives

hard type: 'first' feminine первой	masculine первым	neuter первым	plural первыми
soft type: 'last' feminine последней	masculine последним	neuter последним	plural последними

## Pronouns

'I' яной	'we' нами	'you' informal тобой	'you' вами
'she' (я)ей	'he' (я)им	'it' (я)им	'they' (я)ими
'who' кем	'what' чем	'oneself' собой	
'this' feminine этой	masculine этим	neuter этим	plural этими
'all, every' feminine всей	masculine всем	neuter всем	plural всеми

## Possessives

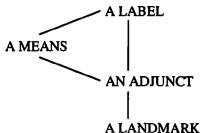
feminine 'my' моей	masculine моим	neuter моим	plural моими
'our' нашей	нашим	нашим	нашими

## Numerals

'one' feminine одной	masculine одним	neuter одним	plural одними
'two' двумя	'three' тремя	'four' четырьмя	'five' пятью

INSTRUMENTAL:  A MEANS

The instrumental network:



## PROLOGUE

The instrumental is one of the most complex Russian cases, but the idea behind it is fairly simple. You can think of it as an accessory for something else. Rather than serving as a source for energy (which is the primary task of **NOMINATIVE: A NAME**), the instrumental is a peripheral attachment for something else. The peripheral accessory named by the instrumental can be associated either with an activity or with an item. When an item in the instrumental case is associated with an activity, we have **INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS**, and the instrumental item is a conduit for the activity. When an item in the instrumental case is attached to another item, it serves as an address for that item; this can be done by tagging it in some way, in which case we have **INSTRUMENTAL: A LABEL**, by identifying something to which it is joined, in which case we have **INSTRUMENTAL: AN ADJUNCT** (here we use the Russian preposition *с* 'with'), or by locating it in reference to a landmark, in which case we have **INSTRUMENTAL: A LANDMARK** (used with the prepositions *над* 'above', *под* 'under', *перед* 'in front of', *за* 'behind', and *между* 'between').

Your first task when confronted with an item in the instrumental case will be to figure out which part of the network it is using. If any of the prepositions (*с*, *над*, *под*, *перед*, *за*, *между*) are present, you can put this task behind you, since you will have **INSTRUMENTAL: AN ADJUNCT** with the preposition *с*, and **INSTRUMENTAL: A LANDMARK** with the remaining prepositions. If not, you will need to think about whether the instrumental is being used to augment a description of an activity (**INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS**) or a thing (**INSTRUMENTAL: A LABEL**). The explanations and examples below should help you get used to looking for this difference.

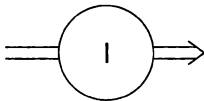
## INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS 1—A map of the mental leaps involved

Though INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS always designates a conduit for action, there is an intricate web of specific uses, and it is worth mapping them out ahead of time before diving right into them. INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS can be divided into two smaller groups: one takes the concept of a path as its point of departure (sections 2-9), and the other focuses on the agents of actions (sections 10-11). The following diagram might help you to think about how the ideas in the first group (the path group) are organized:

```

path >
  facilitator/instrument/means >
    person/object under control >
      person/object possessed >
        person/object evaluated posi
  
```

A path, because it facilitates movement, can also be conceived of as a facilitator for action, an instrument, or a means (think of our English expression of *a way to do things*, where we also understand means and instruments in terms of a path by using the word *way*). The fact that instruments are objects under our control motivates the use of the instrumental with verbs expressing domination, facilitating a mental leap from instrument to person or object under control. Since having control is a special kind of having, some verbs of possession also have instrumental objects, and this brings us to person or object possessed. Finally, an item under control can be variously evaluated and as a result we use the instrumental with certain verbs meaning 'enjoy' and 'despise'. The next eight sections will take you through all these mental leaps, with enough examples and explanations to ensure a safe landing for every jump.



A force (arrow) passes through  
INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS  
(circle labeled I)

## INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS 2—Paths through space

When an instrumental item is associated with a verb, its purpose is to tell us something about the means by which the verbal activity takes place. It can be thought of as a channel for realizing the activity of the verb. The instrumental item thus serves as a conduit for the flow of energy named by the verb. This can involve simply passing through a space or following a path, as in:

Мы свернули к набережной и прошли дощатым трапом над колеблющейся водой.

[We-NOM turned toward embankment-DAT and walked planked ladder-INST above quavering water-INST.]

We turned toward the embankment and walked *along the planked ladder* above the quavering water.



Он резко свернул в сторону и пошёл *суходолом* наискось.  
[He-NOM sharply turned to side-ACC and went riverbed-INST diagonally.]  
He turned sharply to the side and walked diagonally *across the riverbed*.

Пегий пёс, бегущий *краём* моря  
[Skewbald dog-NOM, running-NOM edge-INST sea-GEN]  
A skewbald dog, running *along the edge* of the sea

In the above examples, the planked ladder, the riverbed, and the edge of the sea are all paths for movement.

A path can of course be conceived of abstractly, giving us examples like this one:

Мы все обожаем Довлатова за то, как он жил, но мы-то пойдём *другим* путём.  
[We all-NOM adore Dovlatov-ACC for that-ACC, how he-NOM lived, but we-NOM will-go another way-INST.]  
We all adore Dovlatov for how he lived, but      ill go *another way*.

In both English and Russian we think of life as a journey along a path; this makes it possible for us to talk of *the path of life* and *life's obstacles*. Because life is a path, a Russian can substitute *life for path* to get:

Я жил *той же жизнью*, что и все, и волновало меня то же, что и всех.  
[I-NOM lived same life-INST, that and everyone-NOM, and upset me-ACC that-NOM, that and everyone-ACC.]  
I lived *the same life* as everyone and got upset by the same things as everyone.

In this example, life is the path along which living is realized. Living goes down the path life.

If the verb describes a state rather than a movement, the space marked in the instrumental is a container for the state. You can think of this as a stationary path. The connection of paths of movement with stationary routes is one that is very well motivated, since repeated motion along a given route carves stationary paths through meadows and forests, and nowadays we often ensure the stability of these stationary paths with layers of asphalt. Here is an example of a stationary path along another kind of terrain, namely a woman's face:

Она была бледна *лицом*.  
[She-NOM was pale-NOM face-INST.]  
She was pale *in the face*.

Paleness extends along the face just as movement extends along a path. A common example of this meaning is found in the idiom *вверх ногами* [up legs-INST] 'upside-down': the legs are the place where "up" is happening. The same principle is at work, albeit more abstractly, with the instrumental item naming a domain that can be measured, in the following example:

Однѣн из слонѡв — трѣхлѣтнѣй Раджѣ *вѣсом* в 850 килограммов — воспѡльзовался прогѡлкой, чтѡбы заглянуть в посѡдную лѡвку.  
 [One-NOM of elephants-GEN — three-year-old Rajah-NOM weight-INST in 850-ACC kilograms-GEN — took-advantage outing-INST, to peek to china shop-ACC.]  
 One of the elephants — three-year-old Rajah, *weighing* 850 kilograms — took advantage of the outing to take a peek into a china shop.

Thus, in the case of Rajah the elephant, the parameter of weight is the instrumental container for a measurement of 850 kilograms.

## INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS 3—Paths through time

As we saw in Preliminaries, time can often behave in a way similar to space, or at least we think of it as behaving similarly and talk about it as if it did. Stretches of time can also serve as paths for activity. Duration is essential, since a point that is instantaneous does not have enough dimension to be conceived of as a path. You are probably already familiar with the use of the instrumental case with the names of seasons of the year and parts of the day; here is a list of them:

seasons of the year		parts of the day	
<i>весной</i>	<i>in the spring</i>	<i>утром</i>	<i>in the morning</i>
<i>лѣтом</i>	<i>in the summer</i>	<i>днѣм</i>	<i>in the afternoon</i>
<i>осенью</i>	<i>in the fall</i>	<i>вѣчером</i>	<i>in the evening</i>
<i>зимой</i>	<i>in the winter</i>	<i>ночьѡ</i>	<i>at night</i>

The use of INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS with these words is so well entrenched in Russian that dictionaries commonly list them as adverbs. These words can, however, be modified, as in:

*Нынѣшней зимой* ко всем бѣдам Владивостѡка добавится ещѣ и отсутствѣе водѣи.

[Current winter-INST to all misfortunes-DAT Vladivostok-GEN is-added still and absence-NOM water-GEN.]

*This winter*, in addition to all of Vladivostok's misfortunes, there is also a water shortage.

*Августовской ночьюѡ* мы мѣдленно шли по тротуѡру, изредка обмѣниваясь словѡми.

[August night-INST we-NOM slowly walked along sidewalk-DAT, rarely exchanging words-INST.]

*In that August night* we walked slowly down the sidewalk, rarely exchanging words.

And other words for durations of time can also be used:

*Великим постом меня заставили говеть.*  
[Great Lent-INST me-ACC forced fast.]  
*During Great Lent they forced me to fast.*

*Памятным парижским маем шестьдесят восьмого, когда в Латинском квартале возводились баррикады бунтующих студентов, аристократический шестнадцатый квартал наслаждался покоем и тишиной.*  
[Memorable Paris May-INST sixty eighth-GEN, when in Latin quarter-LOC were-raised barricades-NOM rioting students-GEN, aristocratic sixteenth quarter-NOM enjoyed peace-INST and quiet-INST.]  
*During that memorable May in Paris in 1968, when the rioting students' barricades were going up in the Latin quarter, the aristocratic sixteenth quarter was enjoying peace and quiet.*

The previous four examples prove that the use of INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS for durations of time is a productive phenomenon in Russian.

## INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS 4—Expanses of time and space

Expanses of both time and space can appear in the plural, creating either continuous (as in *веками, часами* below) or discontinuous (as in *ночами, местами*) locations for objects and events. This use of the instrumental builds on the notion of a stationary path through space or time (the latter interpreted as duration, as we saw in section 3), but multiplies these stationary paths. If the paths connect neatly end-to-end, we simply have a very long stretch of time, as in the first two examples below. If the paths do not connect, then the activity is distributed along a patchwork of stationary paths, as in the second two examples.

*Это — традиционное приветствие, знакомое человечеству веками.*  
[It-NOM — traditional greeting-NOM, known-NOM humankind-DAT centuries-INST.]  
It is a traditional greeting, known to humankind *for centuries*.

*Неизменно выпивший, он часами бродил по коридору.*  
[Invariably drunk-NOM, he-NOM hours-INST wandered along corridor-DAT.]  
Invariably drunk, he wandered *for hours* along the corridor.

*Она поджидала мужа ночами.*  
[She-NOM waited-up husband-ACC nights-INST.]  
She waited up for her husband *during the nights*.

*В лесу местами ещё лежал снег.*  
[In forest-LOC places-INST still lay snow.]  
In the forest there was still snow lying *in places*.

## INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS 5—Path &gt; facilitator/instrument

INSTRUMENTAL:  
MEANS AS A  
facilitator,  
instrument, or  
means.

Let's go back again to that idea of a path. In an abstract sense, a path is something that facilitates movement; the existence of a way to go makes it possible for you to go. We can get more mileage out of the concept of facilitation by doing some substitutions. Instead of looking only at movement, we can expand our view to include any activity named by a verb. And instead of looking only at paths as facilitators, we can look at anything that makes activity possible. By taking the original concept of *path for movement* and extending it to *facilitator for activity* we open up a wide horizon of ideas. All other uses of INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS take advantage of this horizon, empowering the instrumental case to signify a wide variety of instruments and agents of actions.

INSTRUMENTAL:  
MEANS WITH  
physical  
instruments.

We will start with instruments facilitating action. Examples of concrete physical instruments are fairly common:

Помню его молодого, огромного, в мятой серой шинели, перепоясанной ремнём с медной бляхой.

[Remember him young, huge-ACC, in wrinkled grey overcoat-LOC, girded-LOC belt-INST with brass buckle-INST.]

I remember him young, huge, in a wrinkled grey overcoat, girded *with a belt* with a brass buckle.

И как раз в этот момент с лестницы стали нашу комнату открывать ключом.

[And like once in that moment-ACC from stairway-GEN began our room-ACC open key-INST.]

And right at that moment they started to open our room from the stairway *with a key*.

Смех углубляет дыхание, обогащает кислородом кровь и вентилирует лёгкие.

[Laughter-NOM deepens breathing-ACC, enriches oxygen-INST blood-ACC and ventilates lungs-ACC.]

Laughter deepens the breathing, enriches the blood *with oxygen*, and ventilates the lungs.

These next three examples are fairly typical metaphorical extensions of the idea of a physical instrument:

INSTRUMENTAL: A  
MEANS WITH  
metaphorical  
instruments.

Я мог лететь домой ближайшим рейсом.

[I-NOM could fly home next flight-INST.]

I could fly home *on the next flight*.

Она грозила ему разводом.

[She-NOM threatened him-DAT divorce-INST.]

She threatened him *with divorce*.

Победы Суворова и поражения Кuroпаткина определялись не только *их личными талантами*, но и *историческим контекстом* их войн и походов.  
[Victories-NOM Suvorov-GEN and defeats-NOM Kuropatkin-GEN were-determined not only their personal talents-INST, but also historical context-INST their wars-GEN and campaigns-GEN.]

Suvorov's victories and Kuropatkin's defeats were determined not only *by their personal talents*, but also *by the historical context* of their wars and campaigns.

The next flight is a way to realize a trip home, a divorce is wielded as a threat, and talents and context serve to determine military successes and failures. In the next example the speaker declares that he was ready to pay any price as an instrument to dispel his depressing thoughts:

*Любой ценой я захотёл избавиться от этих тяжких мыслей.*

[Any price-INST I-NOM wanted get-rid from these grave thoughts-GEN.]

I wanted to get rid of these grave thoughts *at any price*.

Now let's try something a bit more challenging:

*Помню блистающий, особенно людьми, ресторан Крыша.*

[Remember shining-ACC, especially people-INST, restaurant-ACC Krysha.]

I remember the Krysha restaurant, shining especially *by means of the people* there.

The restaurant shines in the memory of the speaker, and the reason it shines is because it was filled with brilliant people. The people caused the brilliance that made the restaurant shine. Or to follow the logic of the example, the restaurant shone *by means of the people*. This use of the instrumental is very much parallel to English *with* in phrases like the air was buzzing *with bees*, the yard was crawling *with ants*, the sky was glittering *with stars*. Here's a more typical Russian example:

*После поездки к матери и до вечерней работы в ресторане она успела убрать в квартире, и теперь кухня сияла чистотой.*

[After trip-GEN to mother-DAT and before evening work-GEN in restaurant-LOC she-NOM managed clean-up in apartment-LOC, and now kitchen-NOM shone cleanliness-INST.]

After visiting her mother and before her evening shift in the restaurant she managed to clean up the apartment, and now the kitchen shone *with cleanliness*.

You'll also need some imagination to tackle an example li

*Я тут проездом.*

[I-NOM here trip-INST.]

I'm here *on a trip* / I'm just *stopping through* here.

The journey has facilitated the fact that the speaker is here; it has brought about his presence. The verbal activity in this example is “being”, and it is still valid even when the present tense forms of the verb *быть* are omitted.

The instrument used can be very close to home, including a part of one’s own person:

Будучи американцем, он *всей душой* мечтал разбогатеть.  
 [Being American-INST, he-NOM all soul-INST dreamed get-rich.]  
 Being an American, he dreamed of getting rich *with all his soul*.

In this case the soul serves to facilitate dreams of riches.

## INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS 6—Actions facilitated by instruments

Expressions using INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS of the type ‘produce an action by means of X’ are quite common. Here is an example:

Вон! — крикнула фрау неожиданно звонким голосом.  
 [Out! — shouted frau-NOM unexpectedly sonorous voice-INST.]  
 Out! — shouted the frau unexpectedly *in a sonorous voice*.

Often the instrumental item represents something necessary to the performance of the action. The following combinations are standard fare:

### Examples of moving an item associated with INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS

каменьями	‘throw stones’	пожать плечами	‘shrug one’s shoulders’
инуть рукой/ногой	‘move one’s hand/foot’	показывать/показать пальцем	‘point one’s finger’
крутить рулём	‘turn a steering wheel’	покрыть стол скатертью	‘cover a table with a tablecloth’
тахать рукой	‘wave one’s hand’	хлопнуть дверью	‘slam a door’

These collocations, many of which involve body parts, function to some extent as fixed phrases in Russian. Here are a few of them presented in context:

Они машут *руками*: да ладно тебе!  
 [They-NOM wave hands-INST: well all-right you-DAT!]  
 They wave *their hands*: that’s enough!

Он стоял как паралитик, не мог двинуть ни *рукой* ни *ногой*.  
 [He-NOM stood like paralytic-NOM, not was-able move neither arm-INST neither leg-INST.]  
 He stood like a paralytic, unable to move either *an arm* or *a leg*.

Она показала *пальцем* на взлётную площадку, от которой, *крутя пропеллером*, отделился вертолёт.

[She-NOM showed finger-INST on take-off pad-ACC, from which-GEN, spinning propeller-INST, separated helicopter-NOM.]

She pointed *her finger* at the helipad, from which the helicopter, spinning *its propeller*, was taking off.

The last example above contains two instances of this type of instrumental, one a fixed collocation (показала *пальцем* 'pointed *her finger*'), and one a relatively novel use (крутя *пропеллером* 'spinning *its propeller*'). Whether in a fixed collocation or in a more novel use of INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS to identify an item necessary to an action, the instrumental marks the object through which the action is realized. Slamming takes place *by means of a door*, turning is actualized *on the steering wheel*, waving is done *with the hand*, etc. Here are a few more examples to demonstrate the versatility of this meaning of the instrumental case:

Они иногда выходят во двор и садятся на лавочку подышать *свежим воздухом*.

[They-NOM sometimes go-out in yard-ACC and sit on bench-ACC breathe fresh air-INST.]

They sometimes go out in the yard and sit on the bench to breathe *the fresh air*.

Девочка бегала в коротенькой юбочке, трясла *смешными косичками*, качала куклу.

[Girl-NOM ran in short skirt-LOC, shook cute braids-INST, rocked doll-ACC.]

The girl ran in a short little skirt, shook *her cute little braids*, and rocked her doll.

Она сжимает *зубами* сигарету, щёлкает *зажигалкой* и затягивается.

[She-NOM presses teeth-INST cigarette-ACC, flicks lighter-INST and takes-drag.]

She grips the cigarette *with her teeth*, flicks *the lighter*, and takes a drag.

In this next example, the nose indicates a direction for action in such a vivid way that no verb (hold, point, move?) is needed:

Следующие пять дней дядя Коля лежит безмолвный, *носом* в потолок.

[Following five-ACC days-GEN uncle Kolya-NOM lies silent-NOM, nose-INST in ceiling-ACC.]

For the next five days uncle Kolya lies silently, *wit* ceiling.

When Russians play chess, they of course move by means of the playing pieces, so it is normal to use an expression like идти *ферзём* [walk queen-INST] 'move *the queen*'. Here is an example of this type of INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS in sentences describing a woman applying cosmetics:

Она провела *розовой кисточкой* около глаз.  
 [She-NOM drew pink brush-INST around eyes-GEN.]  
 She drew a *pink brush* around her eyes.

An item can also use its own self as an instrument to realize an action:

Это представляет *собой* исключение.  
 [That-NOM represents self-INST exception-ACC.]  
 That *in itself* represents an exception.

## INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS 7—Questions, adverbs, groups

Often an activity is not facilitated by an instrument, but it is brought about more abstractly by some means. Here's a simple, very common example; you can think of it as meaning 'By *what means* can I help you?' There is no actual instrument involved, but there is something that should serve as a catalyst for action:

Чем я могу вам помочь?  
 [What-INST I-NOM can you-DAT help?]  
 How can I help you?

Note that in this and many of the examples of INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS, it is possible to apply the question *How?* Similar to the adverbs of time and *кружым* listed above, the use of the instrumental to describe how an action is performed has become so conventional that for some words the instrumental case form is considered an adverb of manner; here are some examples:

<i>украдкой</i>	<i>stealthily</i>
<i>бегом</i>	<i>at a run</i>
<i>шагом</i>	<i>at a walk</i>
<i>пешком</i>	<i>on foot</i>
<i>ползком</i>	<i>at a crawl</i>
<i>верхом</i>	<i>on horseback</i>
<i>разом</i>	<i>at once</i>
<i>тайком</i>	<i>secretly</i>
<i>кружым</i>	<i>around</i>

In this example, the adverb *бегом* 'at a run' depicts motion so vividly that the speaker doesn't even bother using a verb to describe her movements:

*Бегом* до комнаты, хватаю сумку и *бегом* же до раздевалки.  
 [Run-INST to room-GEN, grab purse-ACC and run-INST also to cloak-room-GEN.]  
 I *run* to the room, grab my purse, and *run* again to the cloak-room.



It is worth noting that this meaning of manner also motivates the use of *чем* [what-INST] 'how, by what means; than' and *тем* [that-INST] 'by that means' with adverbs and comparative forms, as we see in the following common phrases:

INSTRUMENTAL:  
MEANS with  
comparatives.

Лучше поздно, чем никогда.  
[Better late, what-INST never.]  
Better late *than* never.

Чем больше, тем лучше.  
[What-INST more/bigger, that-INST better.]  
The more/bigger, the better.

One way of describing *how* something is done is by measuring the quantities involved; a number or unit of measurement gives us this use of the instrumental, which is similar to the English use of *by* with numerals:

INSTRUMENTAL:  
MEANS with  
quantity

Уже не десятками, как прежде, сотнями за незаконный переход границы задерживают нарушителей пограничники.  
[Alrcady not tens-INST, like before, hundreds-INST for illegal crossing-ACC border-GEN detain violators-ACC border-guards-NOM.]  
Border guards are not detaining violators for illegal border crossing *by the tens* any more like they used to, but *by the hundreds*.

This use of the instrumental is common in the metaphorical domain of mathematics, where one multiplies one number *by* another, as in (note unusual stress):

Шестью пять — тридцать.  
[Six-INST five-NOM — thirty-NOM.]  
*Six times* five is thirty.

The same quantification of participants in an action can be expressed with words naming groups marked by INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS. A common phrase based on this idea is *делать что-то всей семьёй* [do something-ACC all family-INST] 'do something *all together, as a family*'. Here's an example to demonstrate this usage:

Он не переносил ездить в лифте *компанией*, оставаться в замкнутом пространстве с незнакомым человеком.  
[He-NOM not endure ride in elevator-LOC group-INST, stay in closed space-LOC with unfamiliar person-INST.]  
He couldn't stand riding in an elevator *with other people (as part of a group)*, staying in a closed space with an unfamiliar person.

## INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS 8—Person or object under control

INSTRUMENTAL  
MEANS with  
words meaning  
domination

Textbooks often give lists of verbs that govern the instrumental case, like *командовать* 'command' and *руководить* 'lead, direct'. Now it should be easy for you to see why verbs with these meanings have instrumental objects. Just as the chess pieces are instruments of players, so too can human beings serve as pawns to their leaders. Indeed government and leadership cannot happen without there being someone to govern. The underlings are the conduit for domination, which is realized through them. The very fact that we can use the words *pawns*, *conduit*, *through* in the sentences above should prove to you that the concept is not impossibly foreign. Russian has taken this fairly natural concept of power requiring a relationship to the powerless and made it a convention. This covers verbs with meanings such as 'manipulate' as well. Here are more words you should expect to see with INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS:

### Expressions of governance and leadership associated with INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS

'lead' верховодить	'conduct (a musical group)' дирижировать дирижирование 'conducting'	'manage' распоряжаться/распорядиться распоряжение 'managing, management'
'manage' заведовать заведование 'managing, management' заведующий 'manager'	'use' пользоваться/воспользоваться пользование 'use'	'lead, direct' руководить руководство 'leadership, guidance'
'abuse' злоупотреблять/злоупотребить злоупотребление 'abuse'	'govern' править правление 'governing, government'	'govern, administer, manage' управлять управление 'governing, government'
'command' командовать командование 'commanding'	'lead' предводительствовать предводительствование 'leading'	

The concept of governing and having control works for both people and things. Here are a couple of sentences so that you can see these words in action:

Армии бывают разные; всё зависит от того, кто *ими* командует.

[Armies-NOM are various-NOM; everything-NOM depends from that-GEN, who-NOM them-INST commands.]

There are different kinds of armies; everything depends on who commands *them*.

Ваше финансовое положение упрочится, если научитесь лучше управлять *вашим* бюджетом.

[Your financial situation-NOM becomes-stronger, if learn better manage your budget-INST.]

Your financial situation will become stronger if you learn how to manage *your budget* better.

## INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS 9—Person or object possessed

If items governed are the instruments of their governors, then it does not take a large mental leap to view them as possessions. The connection between “having” and “having control over” is a natural one. And indeed, there are a number of Russian words that express possession and require the use of the instrumental case for the object possessed. Here are some examples:

### Expressions of possession associated with INSTRUMENTAL, A MEANS

'possess' владеть владение 'possession'	'possess' обладать обладание 'possession'	'have at one's d располагать
'have control of' вorbчать вorbчание 'cont'	'take possession of' овладевать/овладеть овладевание 'taking possession of'	

Of course not all words meaning ‘possess’ have instrumental objects. The verb *иметь* ‘have’ uses the accusative, and the most normal way to say ‘have’ in Russian is by using the *y + GEN есть + NOM* construction, which literally means ‘by someone there is’. However, all of the words that use the instrumental imply a possession that involves more than just “having”; they actually equate “having” with “having control over”. Here are some examples so that you can see how these words are used in the context of sentences:

Мы не располагаем такими средствами.

[We-NOM not have-at-disposal such means-INST.]

We don't have *the means* at our disposal. / We don't have *that kind of money*.

Он обладал красивым низким баритоном удивительного тембра.

[He-NOM possessed a beautiful deep baritone-INST surprising timbre-GEN.]

He possessed *a beautiful deep baritone* of surprising timbre.

И вот Марусей овладело чувство тревоги.

[And then Marusya-INST took-possession feeling-NOM alarm-GEN.]

And then a feeling of alarm took possession of *Marusya*.

Sharing is a special kind of possession, and certainly involves power and control. The Russian word *делиться/поделиться* ‘share’ also uses the instrumental case, as we see in this example:

Все мы по очереди делились новой информацией.

[All we-NOM along line-DAT shared new information-INST.]

We all in turn shared *new information*.

There are a few other words involving the manipulation of possessions which you should expect to see with the instrumental, among them:

Expressions of exchange associated with INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS

'trade' торговать торговец 'merchant, trader' торговля 'trade, commerce'	'sacrifice, give up' жертвовать/пожертвовать жертвование/пожертвование 'sacrificing/sacrifice'	'supply, provide' снабжать/снабдить снабжение 'supply, supplying'
	'waive, forgo' поступаться/поступиться	'exchange' меняться

Filling and occupying are also a kind of manipulation, and can involve the body and the mind as well:

Expressions of filling and occupying associated with INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS

'be/get sick with' болеть/заболеть болел 'sick'	'be occupied with, study' заниматься занятие 'occupation, studies'	'get filled up with' наполняться/наполниться
	'be filled with' исполняться/исполниться полон 'full of'	'suffer from' страдать

## INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS 10—Positive/negative evaluation

We will need to make one more mental leap in order to finish out our tour of the *conduit* meaning of INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS, and we can rely on what we know about English to help us once again. Remember that in English we can use the word *enjoy* as a synonym for *have* (*at one's disposal*). So we can say things like *Judy Garland enjoyed tremendous popularity* or *I hope to enjoy good health for many years to come* or *Bill Gates enjoys both fame and fortune*. In a certain sense, one has to have something in order to appreciate it. However, this evaluation can be both positive or negative, and Russian takes advantage of both of these options. Here are some words that use the instrumental in this meaning:

Expressions of enjoyment and strong emotion associated with INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS

'be indignant at' возмущаться/возмутиться возмущен 'indignant at' возмущение 'indignation at'	'be delighted with' восторгаться	'abhor, disdain' гнушаться/погнушаться
	'be carried away by, admire' восхищаться/восхититься восхищение 'delight, admiration'	'be proud of' гордиться горд 'proud of'

'be satisfied with'  
довольствоваться/  
удовольствоваться  
доволен 'satisfied with'  
довольство 'satisfaction wi  
'value'  
дорожить  
'be interested'  
интересоваться

'enjoy'  
наслаждаться  
наслаждение 'enjoyment'  
'be fascinated by'  
пленяться  
'despise'  
презирать

'be mad about, get carried :  
увлекаться/увлечься  
увлечение 'passion for, e  
for'  
'boast of'  
хвалиться/похвалиться

These examples will give you an idea of how these words are used:

*Жизнью своей я в общем-то доволен.*  
[Life own-INST I-NOM in general-LOC satisfied-NOM.]  
In general I am satisfied *with my life*.

*Пишущие не очень дорожат своей работой.*  
[Writing-NOM not very value own work-INST.]  
People who write do not really value *their work*.

*Он увлёкся выращиванием грибов.*  
[He-NOM became-mad-about cultivating-INST mushrooms-GEN.]  
He became mad about *cultivating* mushrooms.

## INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS 11—The passive agent

The examples we have seen of the *conduit* meaning of INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS are based on this model: a nominative subject + an active verb form + an instrumental *conduit* + whatever else is in the sentence. The crucial item here is the active verb; this doesn't necessarily mean that any real activity is going on, it just means that the verb is not passive. You can think of active as being the default mode for most verbs, where the nominative subject serves as the energy source for the verb. When you have a passive verb, the nominative subject is not the energy source for the verb. Active is about doing something. Passive is about something being done, by someone or something else, the *passive agent*. Given what we already know about the instrumental case, it is no surprise that Russians use it to mark the passive agent, since it is the someone or something by means of which the verbal action takes place. The construction that we are going to be looking at now contains the following elements: a nominative subject + a passive verb form + an instrumental *passive agent* + whatever else is in the sentence.

-ся/-сь some-  
times indica-  
passive, passive  
participle  
always indicate  
passive.

Comparison of  
essive and  
active.

Russian has two ways to express passive verbal action: either by adding *-ся/-сь* to the verb or by using passive participles (past passive participles are the most common and are formed from verbs by adding *-н* or *-т* and act like adjectives; here are some examples: *сделанный* 'done', *купленный* 'bought', *открытый* 'opened'). Unfortunately *-ся/-сь* is not a reliable indicator of passive verb forms, but it can alert you to the possibility that you might be looking at a passive verb. When you have a past passive participle, on the other hand, you can be certain that you have a passive verb form. In general, *-ся/-сь* will be used with imperfective verbs, whereas the past passive participle will be used with perfective verbs.

Sometimes there is an obvious correspondence between the active and passive voices. For example, we can talk about students reading books in a variety of ways: *Студенты читают эти книги* [Students-NOM read these books-ACC] 'Students read these books', or *Эти книги читаются студентами* [These books-NOM are-read students-INST] 'These books are read by students', or *Эти книги были прочитаны студентами* [These books-NOM were read students-INST] 'These books were read by students', or even *Эти книги, читаемые студентами* [These books-NOM, read students-INST] 'These books, read by students'. In examples like this it is clear that the instrumental passive agent plays the same role as the nominative subject in the corresponding active sentence. This correspondence will not always be so clear, but it is the conceptual motive for the use of the instrumental with passive verb forms. Here are some typical examples employing passive verb forms:

И дальше всё это воспринималось нами лишь издевательски.  
[And further all this-NOM was-perceived us-INST only scoffingly.]  
And what's more, all this was perceived by us only scoffingly.

Эти декларации не подтверждались какими-либо фактами.  
[These declarations-NOM not were-confirmed any facts-INST.]  
These declarations were not confirmed by any facts whatsoever.

А телевизор у нас есть — старый <<КВН-49>>, брошенный тётей Сонеёй.  
[But television-NOM by us-GEN is — old KVN-49-NOM, thrown-NOM aunt Sonya-INST.]  
But we do have a television — an old KVN-49 thrown out by aunt

Впервые "озоновая дыра" над Антарктикой была обнаружена специалистами в 1981 году.  
[First "ozone hole"-NOM above Antarctica-INST was discovered-NOM specialists-INST in 1981 year-LOC.]  
The "ozone hole" above Antarctica was first discovered by specialists in 1981.

Рубенс рисовал безумных своего времени, Мунк сам был одержим маниакальной депрессией.  
[Rubens-NOM drew madmen-ACC own time-GEN, Munch himself-NOM was afflicted-NOM manic depression-INST.]  
Rubens drew the madmen of his time, and Munch was himself afflicted by manic depression.

There are a few ways in which the *conduit* and *passive agent* type of instrumental overlap. On the one hand, it is fairly common for adjectives to be used to express being in a certain state, and this is something that they share with past passive participles (which are, after all, adjectives derived from verbs) and many -ся/-сь verbs. Take an example like:

Пётр симпатичен своей искренностью.  
[Pyotr-NOM likeable-NOM own sincerity-INST.]  
Pyotr is likeable *for his sincerity*.

Is Pyotr using his sincerity as a tool to make himself likeable, or is sincerity the agent in bringing about his state of likeableness? It probably doesn't matter. On the other hand, sometimes even when you have a passive verb form, an instrumental item can identify either an instrument or an agent, and sometimes you can't tell for sure.

На скамье сидит женщина, укутанная чёрной шалью.  
[On bench-LOC sits woman-NOM, wrapped-NOM black shawl-INST.]  
On the bench sits a woman wrapped in *a black shawl*.

Here the shawl is almost certainly not the agent, but an instrument, the *conduit* for an act of wrapping carried out by the woman herself or someone else. But what about this example:

Они объединены общим горем.  
[They-NOM united-NOM shared grief-INST.]  
They are united *by shared grief*.

Have they (or someone else) performed the uniting by using shared grief (as a *conduit*), or is shared grief the *agent* that has united them? Once again, it doesn't really matter. One of the beauties of language is that there is room for ambiguity and overlap.

## INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS 12—An agent with no subject

You may have noticed that Russian can form sentences without subjects. With the *raw force* use of INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS, you get sentences based on the model of “something happened *by means of X*”, where X is the instrumental item, but there is no agent in sight. The effect is rather similar to the *conduit* reading of the example with *shared grief* just above, but *raw force* uses active instead of passive verb forms, and the verb forms are neuter singular, the “default mode” for verbs that have no subject. *Raw force* is typically used to express the production of smells, movements of air, and other agentless (and frequently disastrous) acts of God. The most common verb to use the instrumental this way is пахнуть ‘smell’, as in:

Пахло горячим хлебом из тостера.  
[Smelled hot bread-INST from toaster-GEN.]  
There was a smell *of hot bread* from the toaster.

The verbs *вонять* and *отдавать* can both mean 'reek, stink' and work the same way; so one could say *от неё несёт/отдаёт вонькой* [from her-GEN reeks/stinks vodka-INST] 'she reeks/stinks of vodka'. This construction also works for drafts of air, as in: *от реки потянуло прохладой* [from river-GEN wafted chill-INST] 'a chill came off the river' and can be used metaphorically as in the common expression *вѣет весной* [blows spring-INST] 'spring is in the air'.

Perhaps the most peculiar use of the *raw force* meaning is the one that expresses the "acts of God" referred to above. These subjectless sentences can have an accusative object, and are usually translated into English with passive forms. Here are some examples:

Мальчика задавило электричкой.  
[Boy-ACC ran-over commuter-train-INST.]  
The boy was run over by a commuter train.

Хотите знать, что чувствует человек, когда его пережигает шаровой молнией?  
[Want know, what-ACC feels person-NOM, when him-ACC burns ball lightning-INST?]  
Do you want to know what a person feels when he is burned by ball lightning?

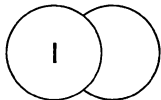
Лодку перевернуло волной.  
[Boat-ACC overturned wave-INST.]  
The boat was overturned by a wave.

## INSTRUMENTAL: A LABEL 1—Being, becoming, seeming

INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS is devoted to empowering Russians to express how an item can cause or facilitate the action of a verb. The remaining uses of the instrumental, INSTRUMENTAL: A LABEL, INSTRUMENTAL: AN ADJUNCT, and INSTRUMENTAL: A LANDMARK, relate the instrumental item not to a verb, but to another item. The type of relationship, however, remains the same. The instrumental is something peripheral in relation to something else: an accessory, a companion, or a backgrounded landmark.

Although a label can be permanent, it doesn't have to be, and is often associated with a certain period of time for which it is valid. A label tells you how to categorize something, what set of things it belongs to. Very often INSTRUMENTAL: A LABEL is used with verbs meaning 'be' or 'become' to describe labels with a varying degree of impermanence:

Не сомневаюсь в том, что тот роман был пародией.  
[Not doubt in that-LOC, that that novel-NOM was parody-INST.]  
I do not doubt that that novel was a parody.



INSTRUMENTAL: A LABEL (circle labeled I) is juxtaposed with another item (other circle)

Acts of God as raw forces expressed by INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS.

Relation INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS to the other uses of the instrumental.

INSTRUMENTAL: A LABEL with non-permanent labels.



Будучи революционером, он мечтал добиться справедливости.  
[Being revolutionary-INST, he-NOM dreamed achieve justice-GEN.]  
Being a *revolutionary*, he dreamed of achieving justice.

Бедá в том, что хорóший писáтель, решив стать великим, перестаёт быть хорóшим.  
[Trouble-NOM in that-LOC, that good writer-NOM, having-decided become great-INST, stops be good-INST.]  
The trouble is that a good writer, once he has decided to become *great*, stops being *good*.

Он стал фанáтиком пунктуáциии.  
[He-NOM became fanatic-INST punctuation-GEN.]  
He became a punctuation *fanatic*.

Note that even *oneself* can behave like a label. In English we can say things like *Just be yourself* or *He's not acting like himself this morning*, and Russians also use this concept of a self that can be viewed from various perspectives:

He мóжет человекó одновременно быть собóй и находиться рядом.  
[Not can person-NOM simultaneously be self-INST and be-located besi  
A person cannot simultaneously be *himself* and be outside of himself.

We also have the sense that when something is true to its label (rather than using it as a disguise), then it is a genuine article. The Russian saying дружба дружкой, а служба службой [friendship-NOM friendship-INST, but service-NOM service-INST] 'friendship is *friendship*, but work is *work*' captures the idea that friendship is all about friendship, just as work is all about work; the two items are pure and cannot be mixed together. Perhaps the closest English equivalent would be *Let's not mix business with pleasure*.

There are many words that serve more or less as synonyms of 'be' and 'become' and share this construction of NOMINATIVE: A NAME + verb + INSTRUMENTAL: A LABEL, and all roughly mean 'X is a Y', where X is a specific item, and Y is the category used to label it. Here are some of these words:

#### Expressions of being and becoming associated with INSTRUMENTAL: A LABEL

'behave oneself as' вести себя	'appear, be mentioned as' значиться	'turn into' оборачиваться/оберн
'look like' выглядеть	'seem, appear' казаться/показаться	
'grow up to be' вырасти	'be named' называться/назваться	'stay, remain, continue' оставаться/остаться

	'proclaim, report oneself ( )' сказать	'get a job (as)' устраиваться/устроиться
' ься/представиться	'serve (as)' служить	'be listed (as)' числиться
' я/притворить	'be known (as), pass for' слыть/прослыть	'feel (like)' чувствовать/почувствовать себя
	'be' состоять	'be' являться
	'be considered' считаться	

Here are a few examples of these verbs being used to apply the INSTRUMENTAL: A LABEL:

За сутки состояние больного незначительно меняется то в лучшую, то худшую сторону, но общая картина остаётся неизменно *тяжёлой*.  
[Beyond day-ACC condition-NOM patient-GEN imperceptibly changes that in better-ACC, that in worse side-ACC, but general picture-NOM remains invariably serious-INST.]

In the course of a day the patient's condition changes imperceptibly alternately for the better and for the worse, but the general picture remains invariably *serious*.

Почему я с таким вот лицом не родилась *мужчиной*?  
[Why I-NOM with such-INST here face-INST not born man-INST?]  
With a face like this, why wasn't I born *a man*?

Байрон погиб сравнительно молодым человеком.  
[Byron-NOM died relatively young person-INST.]  
Byron died *a relatively young man*.

When a label is applied metaphorically, INSTRUMENTAL: A LABEL has the power to invoke a comparison, stating that 'X is like a Y', in cases where we know that X cannot literally be a Y. The next two examples were inspired by a visit to the zoo, where the author found that the animals reminded him of various people:

Тигр был *приукрашенной копией* Сталина.  
[Tiger-NOM was made-over copy-INST Stalin-GEN.]  
The tiger was *a made-over copy* of Stalin.

Орангутанг выглядел *старёющим актёром*, за плеча́ми у кото́рого бу́рная жизнь.

[Orangutang-NOM looked-like aging actor-INST, behind shoulders-INST by whom-GEN stormy life-NOM.]

The orangutang looked like *an aging actor* with a stormy life behind him.

INSTRUMENTAL: A LABEL can be applied even when there is no triggering word. Note its use in the following two examples, where it has a meaning similar to English 'like' or 'as':

Вокруг него́ *зыбким голубым туманом* плывёт дым.

[Around him-GEN quivering blue cloud-INST floats smoke-NOM.]

Smoke floats around him *in the form of a quivering blue cloud*.

Односельча́не нашли́ его́ *мёртвым*.

[Fellow-villagers-NOM found him-ACC dead-INST.]

His fellow villagers found him *dead*.

Consistent with the construction in the last example above, it is common for verbs with meanings like 'consider', 'choose', 'make' to apply the INSTRUMENTAL: A LABEL to the items marked as their accusative direct objects. Here are a few examples to show you how this works:

Мо́жет быть он возьме́т тебя́ на рабо́ту *корре́ктором*.

[May be he-NOM will-take you-ACC on work-ACC proof-reader-INST.]

Maybe he will give you a job as *a proof-reader*.

Телеви́дение де́лает ми́р *плоским* и *примитивным*.

[Television-NOM makes world-ACC flat-INST and primitive-INST.]

Television makes the world *flat* and *primitive*.

Врач назва́л *чудо́м* то, что се́мидесятишестиле́тний челове́к, пере́нёсший 40-мину́тную клини́ческую сме́рть, живёт уже́ две неде́ли.

[Doctor-NOM named miracle-INST that-ACC, that seventy-six-year-old man-NOM, experienced-NOM 40-minute clinical death-ACC, lives already two weeks-ACC.]

The doctor called it *a miracle* that a seventy-six-year-old man who had been clinically dead for 40 minutes, has survived for two weeks thus far.

Случа́й э́тот специа́листы до сих пор счита́ют *небыва́лым*.

[Case this-ACC specialists-NOM to this time-GENT consider unprecedented-INST.]

Specialists consider this case *to be unprecedented*.

Among the words that use this structure of [NOMINATIVE: A NAME + verb + ACCUSATIVE: DIRECTION + INSTRUMENTAL: A LABEL], you will find the following:

'elect (as)'  
избирáть/избрáть

'declare, announce'  
объявля́ть/объявля́ть

'depict, portray, represent ( )'  
изобража́ть/изобрази́ть

'recognize (as)'  
признава́ть/призна́ть

'appoint, nominate (as)'  
назнача́ть/назначáть

'name'  
называ́ть/назва́ть

## INSTRUMENTAL: AN ADJUNCT 1 — Companions

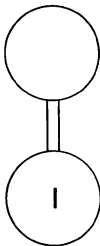
It is no accident that the two relationships expressed in English by the word *with* can both be translated using the instrumental case in Russian. *Ива́н реза́л хле́б ножо́м* [Ivan-NOM cut bread-ACC knife-INST] 'Ivan cut bread *with a knife*' is of course an example of INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS, whereas *Сестра́ говори́ла с Ива́ном* [Sister-NOM talked with Ivan-INST] 'Sister was talking *with Ivan*' is an example of INSTRUMENTAL: AN ADJUNCT. Russian is more fastidious than English, reserving the use of the preposition *с* 'with' only for INSTRUMENTAL: AN ADJUNCT to introduce an accomplice, companion, or other peripheral adjunct to an item of more central importance.

Just about any activity that a person engages in can become a joint project when there is someone else to share it with, as we see in these examples:

*Она́ предпочита́ла тихую́ жизнь с муже́м и двумя́ детьми́.*  
[She-NOM preferred quiet life-ACC with husband-INST and two children-INST.]  
She preferred a quiet life *with her husband and two children*.

Подчёркивается, что существу́ют возмо́жности для многосторо́нного сотру́дничества́ с *Москво́й* и для разви́тия торго́вых конта́ктов.  
[Emphasizes, that exist opportunities-NOM for multi-lateral collaboration-GEN with Moscow-INST and for development-GEN commercial contacts-GEN.]  
It should be emphasized that there exist opportunities for multi-lateral collaboration *with Moscow* and for the development of commercial contacts.

Many activities that are part of interpersonal relationships require a partner to engage *with*. All of the words below can use *с* 'with' to name such a partner:



INSTRUMENTAL: AN  
ADJUNCT (circle  
labeled I) is an  
adjunct of another  
item (other circle)

## Expressions of engagement associated with INSTRUMENTAL: AN ADJUNCT

'converse' беседовать с беседа с 'conversation'	'fight' драться/подражаться с драка с 'fight'	'communicate, get i associated' связываться/связаться с связь с 'association, contact'
'struggle, fight' бороться с борьба с 'struggle, fight'	'become acquainted' знакомиться/познакомиться с знаком с 'acquainted' (short forms only) знакомство с 'acquaintance'	'agree' соглашаться/согласиться с согласие с 'agreement'
'see (each other)' видеться с	'associate, be friendly' общаться с общение с 'associating, association'	'compete' соревноваться с соревнование с 'competition'
'wage war' воевать с война с 'war'	'correspond (exchange letters)' переписываться с переписка с 'correspondence (ex- change of letters)'	'argue' сбрызгаться/поссбрызгаться с ссора с 'argument'
'romp, play' возиться/повозиться с возня с 'romp(ing), play(ing)'	'say farewell' прощаться/проститься с прощение с 'saying farewell'	'collide with, run into, encounter' столкнуться/столкнуться с столкновение с 'collision'
'meet' встречаться/встретиться с встреча с 'meeting'	'converse' разговаривать с разговор с 'conversation'	
'share' делиться с	'settle accounts' рассчитываться/рассчитаться с	
'come to an agreement, make an ar- rangement' договариваться/договориться с договор с 'agreement, arrangement'		

The following examples illustrate the use of INSTRUMENTAL: AN ADJUNCT with these words:

Я люблю вечер пятницы: можно посидеть подольше за столом, повозиться с ребятами, уложить их на полчаса позже.

[I-NOM love evening-ACC Friday-GEN: possible sit longer behind table-INST, play with kids-INST, put-to-bed them-ACC on half-hour-ACC later.]

I love Friday evening: I can sit a while longer at the table, play with *the kids*, and put them to bed a half hour later.

По роду своей работы я каждодневно сталкиваюсь с людьми, пострадавшими от укусов животных.

[Along nature-DAT own work-GEN I-NOM daily encounter with people-INST, suffered-INST from bites-GEN animals-GEN.]

Due to the nature of my work I daily encounter *people who have suffered* animal bites.

Когда Наполеон проснулся и решил продолжать бой, то увидел, что воевать не с кем.

[When Napoleon-NOM woke-up and decided continue battle-ACC, then saw, that wage-war not with who-INST.]

When Napoleon woke up and decided to continue the battle, then he saw that there was *no one* to wage war with.

## INSTRUMENTAL: AN ADJUNCT 2 — Idioms and other uses

Russian uses the idiom мы с + INST (literally 'we with *so-and-so*') to express 'so-and-so and I'. This seems to involve a politeness strategy similar to that imposed in English, where we consider it improper to say *I and Anna*, but are supposed to say *Anna and I* instead. In Russian, instead of inverting to be polite, you include the partner by saying 'we' in place of 'I': мы с Анной [we-NOM with Anna-INST] 'Anna and I'. Here is an example of the мы с + INST idiom where мы appears in the dative case as нам:

Однѣжды Муся заглянула к нам с женой.

[Once Musya-NOM glanced-in to us-DAT with wife-INST.]

Once Musya stopped by to see *my wife* and me.

One idiomatic use of c + INSTRUMENTAL: AN ADJUNCT has an exact parallel in English:

Что с тобой?

[What-NOM with you-INST?]

What's with *you*?

The phrase поздравляю вас/тебя с + INSTRUMENTAL: AN ADJUNCT, literally 'I congratulate you with', motivates another idiomatic construction used for greetings on the occasion of holidays and events. The first part of the phrase is rarely heard, leaving just the prepositional c + INST. Here is a table of common greetings:

С днём ангела!	Happy Name's Day!
С днём рождения!	Happy Birthday!
С лёгким паром!	Have a nice bath!
С новым годом!	Happy New Year!
С праздником!	Happy Holiday!
С причащением!	Congratulations on receiving Holy Communion!
С Рождеством!	Merry Christmas!

As the idioms with holidays above show, the use of the preposition c 'with' is not limited to human companions; it can be used with objects, abstractions, and attributes, much as *with* is used in English. Here are some examples:

Она́ что-то проделала с волоса́ми.  
[She-NOM something-ACC with hair-INST.]  
She did something with *her hair*.

Одна́жды он возвраща́лся из овощно́го магази́на со све́клой в аво́ске —  
крупно́й и кругло́й, как футбо́льный мяч.  
[Once he-NOM returned from grocery store-GEN with beet-INST in shopping-bag-  
LOC — big-INST and round-INST, like soccer ball-NOM.]  
Once he came back from the grocery store with *a beet* in his shopping bag — *big*  
and *round* like a soccer ball.

Но в ней всё это́ каким-то о́бразом совме́щалось — наивно́сть с цини́змом,  
ум с глупо́стью и че́стность с тяготе́нием к вра́нью.  
[But in her-LOC all this-NOM some manner-INST was-combined — naivete-NOM  
with cynicism-INST, intelligence-NOM with stupidity-INST and honesty-NOM with  
tendency-INST to lying-DAT.]  
But somehow all these things were combined in her — *naivete* with *cynicism*, *intel-*  
*ligence* with *stupidity*, and *honesty* with *a tendency* to lie.

Приро́да с и́стинно послево́енной ще́дростью разгуля́лась.  
[Nature-NOM with truly post-war generosity-INST blossomed-forth.]  
Nature was blossoming forth with true *post-war generosity*.

Рабо́тала то́лько одна́ касса́, и вдоль магази́на текла́ о́чередь, как река́ с  
изги́бами и излу́чинами и отве́твленными ручейка́ми.  
[Worked only one cash-register-NOM, and along store-GEN flowed line-NOM, li  
river-NOM with twists-INST and turns-INST and branched streams-INST.]  
Only one cash register was open, and a line flowed around the store, like a river with  
*twists* and *turns* and *little branching streams*.

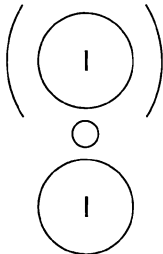
## INSTRUMENTAL: A LANDMARK 1—пéред ‘in front of, before’

Five Russian prepositions are used with the INSTRUMENTAL: A LANDMARK to describe the peripheral location of one item in alignment with another item or items. Two of these prepositions view this alignment in a horizontal plane: пéред ‘in front of’ and за ‘behind’. Two more are exactly parallel to these, but view the alignment in a vertical plane: над ‘above’ and под ‘below’. The fifth preposition, мéжду ‘between, among’ uses two or more items to establish the alignment independent of any geographic orientation.

In terms of physical location, пéред ‘in front of’ + INSTRUMENTAL: A LANDMARK identifies an item that serves as a peripheral landmark for another item. In this example, the administration building serves as a peripheral landmark for the square where students’ passions are seething:

Два дня на площади перед зданием администрации города кипели страсти — демонстрировали студенты.

[Two days-ACC on square-LOC in-front-of building-INST administration-GEN city-GEN seethed passions-NOM — demonstrated students-NOM.]  
For two days passions seethed on the square in front of the municipal administration building — the students were demonstrating.



INSTRUMENTAL: A LANDMARK (circle or circles labeled I) is in a proximate relationship to another item (small circle)

In the domain of time, *перед* means 'before, until such time as', and can be used directly with the landmark time in the instrumental, or with the fixed phrase *перед тем*, как [before that-INST, how] 'before', as illustrated in these two examples, where the meeting and the loss of contact serve as temporal landmarks for the announcement of health and for wandering in the Alaskan hinterland:

"Никаких остатков болезни нет", отметил вчера президент перед встречей с премьер-министром.

["No remains-GEN illness-GEN no", remarked yesterday president-NOM before meeting-INST with prime-minister-INST.]

"I show no signs of illness," remarked the president yesterday before *his meeting* with the prime minister.

Норвежский путешественник два месяца провёл в центральных районах Аляски, перед тем, как связь с ним неожиданно прервалась.

[Norwegian traveler-NOM two months-ACC spent in central regions-LOC Alaska-GEN, before that-INST, how contact-NOM with him-INST unexpectedly was-broken-off.]

The Norwegian traveler spent two months in the central regions of Alaska before contact with him was suddenly broken off.

*Перед* is frequently deployed in the domain of morality and justice, where it designates a position in terms of merits and obligations. The first example below describes a moral achievement, the following ones refer to legal and financial obligations, respectively.

В сообщении пресс-службы президента говорится, что господин Куликов "удостоен высокой награды за заслуги перед государством".

[In report-LOC press-service-GEN president-GEN says, that Mr. Kulikov-NOM "awarded-NOM high award-GEN for services-ACC before state-INST."]

In the president's press report it says that Mr. Kulikov "has received an exalted award for his service to the state."

перед +  
INSTRUMENTAL:  
LANDMARK  
front of, before  
in the domain of  
time.

перед +  
INSTRUMENTAL:  
LANDMARK in the  
domain of  
morality and



Олимпийский чемпион в гребле на каное словак Мйхал Мартикан в скором времени предстанет перед *судом*.

[Olympic champion-NOM in rowing-LOC on canoe-LOC Slovak Michal Martikan-NOM in soon time-LOC appear before court-INST.]

Olympic canoeing champion Slovak Michal Martikan will soon appear in *court*.

Премьер-министр отметил, что в настоящее время фирма “Татнефт” не имеет долгов перед *федеральным бюджетом*.

[Prime-minister-NOM noted, that in present time-ACC company “Tatneft”-NOM no have debts-GEN before federal budget-INST.]

The prime-minister noted that at the present time the “Tatneft” company is not indebted to *the federal budget*.

Here is an example of a self-imposed obligation:

Выставка Словацкой республики ставит перед *собой* цель ознакомить российских предпринимателей с экспортными возможностями Словакии.

[Exhibition-NOM Slovak Republic-GEN places before self-INST goal-ACC acquaint Russian entrepreneurs-ACC with export opportunities-INST Slovakia-GEN.]

The Slovak Republic’s exhibit is setting *itself* the goal of acquainting Russian entrepreneurs with Slovakia’s export opportunities.

## INSTRUMENTAL: A LANDMARK 2—за ‘beyond, behind’

За + INSTRUMENTAL: A LANDMARK indicates a spatial alignment that is the opposite of *перед*. The landmark is an item that is between us and another item which is ‘behind’ or ‘beyond’ it. Here are a couple of examples of *за* used to locate items in space.

Нашему соседу пообещали за квартиру всего лишь девять миллионов рублей, зато взамен предложили жить в своё удовольствие на даче за *городом*.

[Our neighbor-DAT promised for apartment-ACC all-GEN only nine-ACC millions-GEN rubles-GEN, but in-exchange offered live in own pleasure-ACC at dacha-LOC beyond city-INST.]

They promised our neighbor only nine million rubles for his apartment, but in return they offered him a life of pleasure in a dacha outside of *town*.

За *воротами* женщину вытолкнули из машины и скрылись.

[Beyond gate-INST woman-ACC pushed-out from car-GEN and hid.]

On the other side of *the gate* they pushed the woman out of the car and hid

The notion that *за* identifies a barrier between us and another item is capitalized on in the Russian translation of ‘You can’t see the forest for *the trees*’, За *деревьями* не видать леса [beyond trees-INST not see forest-GEN].

There are two spatial uses of *за* that are especially worth noting. One is *за рулём* [behind wheel-INST] 'behind the (steering) wheel', and the other is *за столом* [behind table-INST] 'at the table (while eating a meal).'

Чувствовалось, что *за рулём* сидел супермен, владеющий машиной, как ковбой мустангом.

[Felt that behind wheel-INST sat superman-NOM, commanding-NOM car-INST, like cowboy-NOM mustang-INST.]

One got the feeling that there was a superman sitting behind the wheel who was controlling the car like a cowboy controls a mustang.

*За столом* сидим долго, едим не спеша.

[Behind table-INST sit long, eat not hurrying.]

We sit for a long time at the table, eating without hurrying.

The *за столом* construction above motivates *за обедом* [behind lunch-INST] 'during lunch', where the spatial location is juxtaposed with a given time.

Just as we use 'behind' with the word 'follow', so do Russians associate *за* + INSTRUMENTAL: A LANDMARK with following. The following examples demonstrate this use in physical movement through space, in sequential action along the dimension of time, and in the metaphorical domain of verification:

Собаки бегут *за зверем*.

[Dogs-NOM run following beast-INST.]

The dogs are running after the beast.

Он курит сигарету *за сигаретой*.

[He-NOM smokes cigarette-ACC following cigarette-INST.]

He smokes one cigarette after another.

Абонементную плату за пользование телефоном вносят не позднее десятого числа месяца, следующего *за* *месяцем* предоставления услуги.

[Subscription fee-ACC for use-ACC telephone-INST enter not later tenth number GEN month-GEN, following-GEN behind month-INST rendering-GEN service GEN.]

They enter the subscription fee for telephone use no later than the tenth of the month following the month in which the service was rendered.

С 1 января во всём регионе вводится жёсткий контроль *за* *качество* алкогольной продукции, её *производством*, *хранением*, и *реализацией*.

[From first-GEN January-GEN in all region-LOC is-introduced strict control-NOM following quality-INST alcohol production-GEN, its manufacture-INST, storage INST, and sale-INST.]

Throughout the region beginning January 1, strict control is being introduced on the quality of alcohol production, its manufacture, storage, and sale.

In English 'following' is synonymous with 'going after' something, and we can 'go after' something in order to get it; in Russian за + INSTRUMENTAL: A LANDMARK can likewise be used to mean 'fetch':

Решили сделать имениннику приятный сюрприз и поехали за девочками и дополнительной выпивкой.

[Decided make birthday-boy-DAT pleasant surprise-ACC and rode fetch girls-INST and supplementary drink-INST.]

They decided to give the birthday boy a nice surprise and went to get *some girls and something more to drink*.

Я зайду за тобой в школу.

[I-NOM go-by fetch you-INST in school-ACC.]

I'll come to pick you up at school.

### INSTRUMENTAL: A LANDMARK З—над 'above'

In the vertical plane, над locates an item 'above' another item. The use of this preposition in the domain of space is just what we would expect:

Озоновая дыра над Антарктикой достигла рекордных размеров.

[Ozone hole-NOM above Antarctica-INST reached record proportions-GEN.]

The ozone hole above *Antarctica* has reached record proportions.

В небе над Лос-Анджелесом едва не столкнулись два самолёта.

[In sky-LOC above Los-Angeles-INST barely not collided two airplanes-NOM.]

Two airplanes almost collided in the sky above *Los Angeles*.

Про семью Ганди говорят, что над ней горит несчастливая звезда.

[About family-ACC Gandhi say, that above it-INST burns unlucky star-NOM.]

They say about the Gandhi family that an unlucky star burns above *it*.

As with English 'above', над identifies a vantage point that has certain implications. It is a location from which one can make observations:

Корреспондент попросил профессора Левинсона поделиться своими наблюдениями над поведением городского населения в разные годы, эпохи и режимы.

[Correspondent-NOM asked professor Levinson-ACC share own observations-INST above behavior-INST city population-GEN in various years-ACC, epochs-ACC and regimes-ACC.]

The correspondent asked Professor Levinson to share his observations of *the behavior* of the city's population in various years, epochs, and regimes.

In English we can 'look down at someone' from a higher vantage point of superiority; Russian uses this idea to motivate the expression смеяться над + INSTRUMENTAL: A LANDMARK 'laugh at', as illustrated in this example:

Сначала над ним смеялись, потом стали отмечать успехи в искусстве, а конце концов позволили открыть "Дом художников".  
 [At-first above him-INST laughed, then started notice successes-ACC in art-LOC and in end-LOC ends-GEN allowed open "House-ACC artists-GEN".]  
 At first they laughed at *him*, but then they started to notice his successes in art, and finally they allowed him to open a "House of Artists."

A position 'above' an item facilitates manipulation and control. Notice the parallel vertical relationships in English translations of работать над 'work on' and контроль над 'control over' in these examples:

Президент активно работает над формированием структуры правительства.  
 [President-NOM actively works above formation-INST structure-GEN government-GEN.]  
 The president is actively working on the formation of the structure of the government.

В апреле в Москве состоится Международная конференция сотрудничеству с Россией в области контроля над наркотиками.  
 [In April-LOC in Moscow-LOC takes-place International conference-NOM collaboration-DAT with Russia-INST in area-LOC control-GEN above narcotics INST.]  
 In April in Moscow there is an International Conference on Collaboration with Russia in the area of narcotics control.

Control over an item can likewise be wielded by legal or governmental authority, as the following two examples:

Вчера в Дели начался суд над бывшим премьер-министром Индии.  
 [Yesterday in Delhi-LOC began legal-proceedings-NOM above former prime-minister-INST India-GEN.]  
 Legal proceedings against the former prime minister of India began in Delhi yesterday.

Бальмонт целое десятилетие безраздельно царил над русской поэзией.  
 [Balmont-NOM whole decade-ACC indivisibly was-tsar above Russian poetry INST.]  
 For a whole decade, Balmont reigned over Russian poetry unchallenged.

НАД + INSTRUMENTAL: A LANDMARK can express derisive

НАД + INSTRUMENTAL: A LANDMARK can express work and control 'over'

## INSTRUMENTAL: A LANDMARK 4—ПОД ‘under’

Opposing над in the vertical plane is под ‘under’. Once again we will look first at examples of how this preposition indicates physical locations:

Тигр погѣб под колѣсами лесовѣза.

[Tiger-NOM died under wheels-INST lumber-truck-GEN.]

The tiger died under *the wheels* of the lumber truck.

По нѣкоторым свѣдѣніям, под обломками зданій всё ещё находятся около двадцати семей.

[Along certain reports-DAT, under wreckage-INST buildings-GEN all still are-located about twenty families-GEN.]

According to certain reports, there are still about twenty families under *the wreckage* of the buildings.

Because cities were traditionally built on hills and locations outside them were at lower elevations, the preposition под with the name of a city indicates a position outside or on the outskirts of town:

Четыре человека погѣбли в результате авиакатастрофы, произошедшей вчера под Тулой.

[Four people-NOM died in result-LOC aviation-catastrophe-GEN took-place-GEN yesterday under Tula-INST.]

Four people died as a result of the aviation catastrophe which took place outside *Tula* yesterday.

Just as над gave us the perspective of control ‘over’, под can conversely describe being ‘under’ control:

Солдаты под командованием полковника овладели последним уголком республики Абхазии, находившимся под контролем грузинских формирований.

[Soldiers-NOM under command-INST lieutenant-GEN took-possession last corner-INST republic-GEN Abkhazia-GEN located-INST under control-INST Georgian units-GEN.]

Soldiers under *the command* of the lieutenant took possession of the last corner of the Republic of Abkhazia that was under *the control* of Georgian military units.

В настоящее время банкир остаётся под домашним арестом.

[In present time-ACC banker-NOM remains under house arrest-INST.]

At the present time the banker remains under *house arrest*.

Being ‘under’ an item can have its benefits, since this location implies a relationship of protection, as in these examples:

Отныне музей будет находиться под покровительством президента.  
[From-henceforth museum-NOM will be-located under protection-INST presi GEN.]

From henceforth the museum will be under *the protection* of the presi

Выставка проходит под патронáжем пёрвого вице-премьера Борíса Немцова.

[Exhibit-NOM takes-place under patronage-INST first vice-premier Boris Nemtsov-GEN.]

The exhibit is taking place under *the patronage* of the first vice-premier Boris Nemtsov.

One can also go 'under' cover by taking on a disguise:

Грузи́нская сторона́ ссылáется на возмо́жность передви́жения под ви́дом военнослужащих не́ких банди́тских гру́пп.

[Georgian side-NOM cites on possibility-ACC travel-GEN under guise-INST servicemen-GEN certain bandit groups-GEN.]

The Georgian side cites the possibility that some groups of bandits are traveling under *the guise* of military servicemen.

More innocently под can indicate the name given to buildings, organizations, and events, as in this example:

Вчера́ в Берли́не откры́лся фести́валь под назва́нием “Волше́бный лес”.

[Yesterday in Berlin-LOC opened festival-NOM under title-INST “Magical forest”-NOM.]

A festival *entitled* “Magical Forest” opened yesterday in Berlin.

## INSTRUMENTAL: A LANDMARK 5—ме́жду ‘between, among’

The preposition ме́жду ‘between, among’ is used in spatial and metaphorical domains in ways very similar to its English counterparts. Here are a few examples:

По федера́льным авиаци́онным пра́вилам, расто́яние ме́жду лета́тельными объеќтами должно́ составлять не ме́нее 6,5 км.

[Along federal aviation rules-DAT, distance-NOM between flying objects-INST must be not less 6.5 km-GEN.]

According to federal aviation rules, the distance between *flying objects* must not be less than 6.5 km.

Экспортно-импортный банк Япо́нии выде́лил 200 миллио́нов до́лларов для созда́ния микроволно́вой телефо́нной связи ме́жду Моско́вой и Хаба́ровском.

[Export-import bank-NOM Japan-GEN allocated 200-ACC million-GEN dollars-

GEN for creation-GEN microwave telephone link-GEN between Moscow-INST and Khabarovsk-INST.]

The export-import bank of Japan allocated 200 million dollars to create a microwave telephone link between *Moscow* and *Khabarovsk*.

Германский бундестаг ратифицировал вчера соглашение о партнёрстве и сотрудничестве между *Европейским союзом* и *Россией*.

[German Bundestag-NOM ratified yesterday agreement-ACC about partnership-LOC and collaboration-LOC between European Union-INST and Russia-INST.]

Yesterday the German Bundestag ratified an agreement on partnership and collaboration between *the European Union* and *Russia*.

This last example demonstrates both an idiomatic usage, *между тем* [between that-INST] ‘meanwhile’, and the ‘among’ meaning that is present when the preposition refers to more than two items:

*Между тем*, распределение обязанностей *между заместителями* руководителя аппарата правительства ещё не завершилось.

[Between that-INST, assignment-NOM responsibilities-GEN among deputies-INST leader-GEN apparatus-GEN government-GEN still not completed.]

*Meanwhile* the assignment of responsibilities among *the deputy leaders* of the organs of government has not yet been completed.

## EPILOGUE

The meaning of the word *instrumental* is transparent to us, and it’s a good name for this case because Russians use it not only for instruments, but for a variety of items that are instrumental to whatever a sentence describes: a path for motion, a way to do something, a time to do it, the agent or cause of an event, the category something falls in, a companion or opponent, a landmark for locating something. As promised in the Preliminaries, we have seen that time is understood as a kind of metaphorical space, and so are many other abstract domains. We will explore similar extensions of our experience from physical space to other realms in all the remaining chapters. This survey of the instrumental case has also given us a peek into the conceptual world of Russian. It is a world where life is a journey, where power is wielded by manipulating those who are subject to it, where possession is a special type of control, where enjoyment and disdain are special types of possession, where disaster can have a means without having a cause, where obligations are something people stand in front of, where power is up and submission is down. Most of these ideas are familiar from the conceptual structure of English; even the ideas that strike us as foreign make sense in the overall structure of the instrumental case, because even though the instrumental is quite complex, all the parts fit together to make a coherent whole. Understanding the whole helps you orient to the individual meanings of the instrumental because you have a structure to relate those meanings to. Even if you don’t memorize all the meanings right off, you will now have a “feel” for the instrumental, and you’ll be surprised how well your new-found intuitions will serve you.

## ACCUSATIVE Forms

<b>Feminine declension nouns</b>	hard type: 'singular' комнату	plural комнаты = GEN if animate	soft type: 'week' singular неделю	plural недели = GEN if ani
	-ь: 'talent' singular способность	plural способности		

<b>Masculine declension nouns</b>	hard type: 'courtyard' singular двор = GEN if animate	plural дворы = GEN if animate	singular гвоздь = GEN if animate	soft type: 'plural' гвоздя = GEN if ani
-----------------------------------	--	-------------------------------------	--	---

<b>Neuter declension nouns</b>	hard type: 'body' singular тело	plural тела	soft type: 'schedule' singular расписание	plural расписания
--------------------------------	---------------------------------------	----------------	---	----------------------

<b>Adjectives</b>	hard type: 'first' feminine первую	masculine первый = GEN if animate	neuter первое	
	soft type: 'last' feminine последнюю	masculine последний = GEN if animate	neuter последнее	plural последние = GEN if animate

<b>Pronouns</b>	'I' меня	'we' нас	'you' informal тебя	'you' вас
	'she' (я)ёё	'he' (н)его	'it' (н)его	'they' (н)их
	'who' кого	'what' что	'oneself' себя	
	'this' femini эту	masculine этот этого i	neuter это	plural эти этих if ani
'all, every' feminine всю	masculi весь всего if animate		plural все всех if animate	

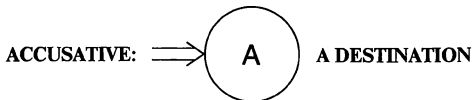
**Possessives**

feminine 'my' мою	masculine мой моего if animate	neuter моё	plural мои моих if animate
'our' нашу	наш нашего if animate	наше	наши наших if animate

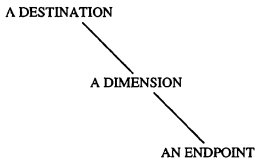
**Numerals**

'one' feminine одну	masculi один одного if ani	neuter один	plural одна одних if ani
'two' две/два двух if animate	'three' три трёх if animate	'four' четыре четырёх if animate	'five' пять





The accusative network:



## PROLOGUE

An apt subtitle for this chapter would be “Toward, down, and at the bottom of a slippery slope.” The accusative case can do all three things: it can take you to a place (toward a slippery slope = ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION), it can take you along a place (down a slippery slope = ACCUSATIVE: A DIMENSION), and it can take you to the end of a place (to the bottom of a slippery slope = ACCUSATIVE: AN ENDPOINT). Just as running up to, sliding down, and getting to the bottom of a slippery slope can be all folded into one continuous action, the three meanings of the accusative are really all parts of a continuum without precise boundaries between them. And the accusative is itself a slippery slope.

Above all else, the accusative describes a destination, and this is equally true for all of its meanings. The relations between the three meanings of the accusative are noticeably different from those that we see in the other cases with multiple meanings (the nominative, instrumental, dative, and genitive). Rather than being relatively discrete and independent (but related), the meanings of the accusative are like the nesting parts of a матрешка doll. The basic meaning of ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION is the biggest, least specific meaning; it does not analyze its object in any way<sup>2</sup>. An item marked by ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION is just a destination, its structure is of no particular interest. ACCUSATIVE: A DIMENSION, however, focuses on a destination extended through time, space, or some other dimension. ACCUSATIVE: AN ENDPOINT takes this concept even further, focusing specifically on the endpoint of a destination extended through some dimension; you might think of it as a destination (endpoint) within a destination. Overall, you can visualize the accusative meanings as a megaphone or a telescope, with ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION at the wide end, ACCUSATIVE: AN ENDPOINT at the narrow end, and ACCUSATIVE: A DIMENSION in between. The accusative operates on

a scale from general to specific, and the boundaries between submeanings are rather fuse.

Another hallmark of the accusative case is the way it deploys prepositions. With all other cases, each preposition is associated with only one submeaning. Not so the accusative. It is not uncommon for prepositions to use two or even all three meanings of the accusative. This table will give you some idea of how versatile prepositions are in the accusative case, and the individual uses of each will be discussed below.

Comparison of prepositions among the meanings of the accusative case		
ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION	ACCUSATIVE: A DIMENSION	ACCUSATIVE: AN ENDPOINT
into; on, at; for'	в 'in, during;	
onto; on, at; for'	на 'for, lasti	
; for'	за 'during'	за 'away; by the end of'
	о 'with'	
ter, to get'	по 'through; each'	
to, toward; for use as'	под 'like; to the tune of'	
	про 'about'	
	с 'approximately'	
	сквозь 'through'	
	через 'through'	ross, after; in, at the end of'

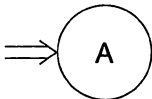
We often spend so much time learning the prepositions in Russian that we neglect the fact that it also has postpositions. Just as a preposition is a word that comes before other words, a postposition is a word that comes after other words. All the postpositions associated with the accusative case are used to express time with ACCUSATIVE: AN ENDPOINT, and appear in the last section of this chapter.

## ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION 1—В 'in, into'

ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION operates in four domains: space, time, action, and purpose. In the spatial domain ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION is a destination of physical motion; in terms of time it is a temporal destination, a time when something happens; in the domain of action it is the destination of a verbal activity — what we usually call the direct object; and in the domain of purpose its meaning is roughly equivalent to the English word *for*.

In the domain of space, ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION always requires a preposition to tell us what sort of trajectory is envisioned. The prepositions that can appear here are: в 'to, into', на 'to, onto', за 'to the far/back side of', о 'against', по 'up to; after, to get', под 'to the underside of, approaching', and про 'for'. We will look at each preposition, including its metaphorical uses, in turn.

Physical movement through space in the direction of or entering something is the most basic use of в expressing ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION.



A force (arrow) arrives at an ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION (circle labeled A)

Лишь 7 процентов людей выразили желание выехать в *другие места*.  
 [Only 7-NOM percent-GEN people-GEN expressed desire-ACC move to other places-ACC.]  
 Only 7 percent of the people expressed a desire to move to *other places*.

Эта девушка раньше училась в их классе, а потом перешла в *другую школу*.  
 [That girl-NOM earlier studied in their class-LOC, but later transferred to another school-ACC.]  
 That girl used to study in their class, but later she transferred to *another school*.

Мама попала в *сумасшедший дом*.  
 [Mama-NOM wound-up in lunatic asylum-ACC.]  
 Mama wound up in *a lunatic asylum*.

The last example shows that Russian will often express the idea of moving toward a destination even when the equivalent English doesn't. Here's another typical example:

Я разделась и легла в *постель*.  
 [I-NOM got-undressed and lay-down in bed-ACC.]  
 I got undressed and lay down in *bed*.

Many kinds of motion, large and small, may be conceived of as showing direction. Here are some examples that you might not expect to use the accusative, given the way we think of them in English. Still, they do show directed motion, and thus the logic of using ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION is justified.

удар в *грудь*, стучать в *дверь*  
 [blow-NOM to chest-ACC, knock to door-ACC]  
 a blow to *the chest*, to knock on *a door*

Я как сумасшедший захлопал в *ладони*.  
 [I-NOM like crazy-person-NOM began-clapping to palms-ACC.]  
 I started clapping *my hands* like a crazy person.

Of course, in addition to moving oneself, one can also move other objects to accusative destinations, as in the following example:

Ван Гог отрезал себе ухо и отдал в *бордель*.  
 [Van Gogh-NOM cut-off self-DAT ear-ACC and sent to brothel-ACC.]  
 Van Gogh cut off his ear and sent it to *the brothel*.

ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION is also used when the motion is more imaginary than actual, as in the following to examples:

B + ACCUSATIVE:  
DESTIN

conceiv  
locati

B + ACCUSATIVE:  
DESTINATION wi  
metaphorical  
motion.

В Япо́нии всё ча́ще звучит лóзунг: Отбро́сим Европу́, вернёмся в А́зию.  
[In Japan-LOC all more-frequently sounds slogan-NOM: Cast-away Europe-ACC, return to Asia-ACC.]

In Japan one more and more frequently hears the slogan: Let's cast off Europe and return to *Asia*.

Э́то должнó снять основнóе препя́тствие на пу́ти за́падных инвести́ций в на́шу эконóмику.

[This-NOM should remove primary barrier-ACC on path-LOC western investments-GEN to our economy-ACC.]

This should remove the primary barrier on the path leading western investments into *our economy*.

Vision is conceived of as moving along a path from the eyes to what they perceive. We therefore look at something using ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION.

Он ей посмотре́л в гла́за.

[He-NOM her-DAT looked into eyes-ACC.]

He looked into her *eyes*.

Just as light travels, so do sound and telephone signals, motivating the use of the accusative with verbs like звонить 'call':

Он звони́л в разл́ичные органи́зации.

[He-NOM called to various organizations-ACC.]

He called *various organizations*.

There are also some idiomatic uses of ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION; here are some common examples:

Э́то в *пе́рвую о́чередь* пробле́ма президéнта.

[This-NOM in first line-ACC problem-NOM president-GEN.]

In the *first place* this is the president's problem.

Э́то мо́жет усилить критику́ в *а́дрес* президéнта.

[This-NOM can intensify criticism-ACC in address-ACC president-GEN.]

This can intensify the criticism *directed toward* the president.

Два го́да наза́д я посетил э́тот го́род и буквально́ влюбился в не́го.

[Two years-ACC ago I-NOM visited that city-ACC and literally fell-in-love to it-ACC.]

Two years ago I visited that city and literally fell in love with *it*.

Sometimes movement can also cause a change in the object itself, as in hair, which via movement goes from a free state to one in which it forms a braid:

У Пёти были длинные белые волосы, которые он заплетал сзади в косу.  
 [By Petya-GEN were long white hairs-NOM, which-ACC he-NOM wove in-back to braid-ACC.]  
 Petya had long white hair which he wove into a *brai*

This sort of movement as a transformation inspires a metaphorical usage of ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION in which objects move from one state of existence to another, as in the following three examples:

Иногда любовь переходит в ненависть.  
 [Sometimes love-NOM passes to hatred-ACC.]  
 Sometimes love turns into *hatred*.

Редактор переименовал своё издательство в “Невидимую книгу”.  
 [Editor-NOM renamed his publishing-house-ACC to “Invisible book”-ACC.]  
 The editor renamed his publishing house *The Invisible Book*.

С помощью световых эффектов здание МГУ превратилось в башню Кремля.  
 [With help-INST light effects-GEN building-NOM MGU-GEN turned to tower-ACC Kremlin-GEN.]  
 With the help of light effects the MGU building turned into a *tower* of the Kremlin.

In the abstract domain of mathematics, a “destination” is a factor involved in multiplication, motivating this common use of **В + ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION**:

За последние пять лет преступность увеличилась почти в четыре раза.  
 [In past five-ACC years-GEN crime-rate-NOM increased nearly in four times-ACC.]  
 In the past five years the crime rate has nearly *quadrupled*.

**В + ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION** expresses multipli

There is one use of the preposition **в** with ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION that refers exclusively to people who are taking on an identity or joining a group. The most common example is идти/ехать в гости [go to guests-ACC] ‘go on a visit’ (where the subject takes on the identity of a guest); but you will encounter other examples like выдвигаться в руководители [be-promoted to managers-ACC] ‘be promoted to *manager*’, and играть в кошки-мышки [play to cats-mice-ACC] ‘play *cat-and-mouse*’. What is very strange about this use of the accusative is that even though the items marked with the accusative tend to be plural and animate, there is no use of the genitive-accusative. That is because this use of ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION is a historical throw-back — it dates from a time before the genitive-accusative spread to the plural, back when all plural accusatives looked like the inanimate accusatives of today. So that is why you see гости instead of гостей, руководители instead of руководителей, and кошки-мышки instead of кошек-мышек. Here is a contextualized example:

**В + ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION** expresses joining a group — note that animates are not marked with the genitive-accusative fo

Лора поступила в ученицы к маникюрше.  
 [Lora-NOM entered to apprentices-ACC to manicurist-DAT.]  
 Lora joined (became one of) the manicurist’s *apprentices*.

## ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION 2—на ‘to, on, onto’

The behavior of на is very similar to that of в. The only difference is that в can imply entering the accusative object, whereas на treats it like a two-dimensional surface. See the chapter on the locative case for a list of common “на words”, including ones we wouldn’t think of as surfaces in English. Like в, на is often used to describe the destination to which objects move or are moved:

Маленькая змея влезла на горячий камень и поднимала голову.  
[Small snake-NOM crawled-up on hot stone-ACC and lifted head-head-ACC.]  
The small snake crawled up on *the hot stone* and lifted its head.

Я причёсываюсь, положив шпильки на умывальник под зеркалом.  
[I-NOM brush-hair, having-laid hairpins-ACC on sink-ACC under mirror-INST.]  
I brush my hair, having laid the hairpins on *the sink* under the mirror.

Он уселся на собственные очки.  
[He-NOM sat-down on own glasses-ACC.]  
He sat down on *his own glasses*.

Sometimes the motion involved is more imaginary than real:

Слишком рано отправляет он Россию на дно морское!  
[Too early sends he-NOM Russia-ACC to bottom sea-ACC!]  
It’s too early for him to be sending Russia to *the bottom of the sea!*

As we saw above, vision is understood as directed motion, motivating the use of на with things that can be looked upon or at:

Я смотрю на её личико, гладенькое и овальное, как яйцо.  
[I-NOM look on her face-ACC, smooth and oval-ACC, like an egg-NOM.]  
I look at *her face, smooth and oval* like an egg.

The fact that there is a direction indicated, even if there is no actual motion, is often sufficient to trigger the ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION meaning:

Президент проводит политику, направленную на поддержание тесных связей с Китаем.  
[President-NOM conduct policy-ACC, directed-ACC on support-ACC close ties-GEN with China-INST.]  
The president is setting policy aimed at *supporting* close ties with China.

This idea of energy rather than actual objects moving toward a destination inspires further uses of на, which function to some degree as fixed phrases. Here are a few typical examples:

Горький никогда не претендовал на роль “верховного судьи” литературы.  
[Gorky-NOM never not aspired/claimed on role-ACC “supreme judge”-GEN literature-GEN.]

Gorky never claimed to be the “supreme judge” of literature.

Вероятно, великие люди имеют право на особые пристрастия.  
[Probably great people-NOM have right-ACC on peculiar passions-ACC and preferences-ACC.]

Great people probably have a right to their peculiar passions and preferences.

В ответ на предложение Горького приехать Цветаева написала ему второе письмо.  
[In answer-ACC on suggestion-ACC Gorky-GEN come Tsvetaeva-NOM wrote hi DAT second letter-ACC.]

In answer to Gorky's suggestion to come, Tsvetaeva wrote hi

In answer to Gorky's suggestion to come, Tsvetaeva wrote hi

## ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION 3—за ‘beyond, behind’

The preposition *за* takes an object beyond or behind ; this is clearly expressed in concrete examples:

Вечерело и солнце закатывалось за горизонт.

[Night-fell and sun-NOM rolled-away behind horizon-ACC.]

Night was falling and the sun was rolling away behind the horizon.

Лётчик схватил его, завёл ему руку за спину, повалил на землю, а сам сел сверху.

[Pilot-NOM grabbed him-ACC, put him-DAT arm-ACC behind back-ACC, threw-down on ground-ACC, and self-NOM sat on-top.]

The pilot grabbed him, put his arm behind his back, threw him to the ground and sat on top of him.

Sitting down is of course also a movement toward a destination, and there are important idioms associated with this idea, such as: *сесть за стол* [sit-down behind table-ACC] ‘sit down at the table’ and *сесть за руль* [sit-down behind steering-wheel-ACC] ‘take the wheel’. The first one seems odd because in English we talk about being *at*, not *behind*, tables. The insistence on mentioning sitting when assuming control of a car will likewise strike us as odd, though the logic behind it is clear. Less clear is the idiomatic use of *за* to express marriage for women; a man “marries on” a woman at the altar (using the construction *жениться на* — see the chapter on the locative case), but a woman “goes behind” her man (since this book is about grammar, let’s leave the explanation to the cultural historians):

A DESTINATION is the domain of space me s ‘behind, to the far/back side of’

Тётя Ира вышла замуж за американца.  
[Aunt Ira-NOM went-out married behind American-ACC.]  
Aunt Ira got married to *an American*.

Another common idiomatic use is за границу [behind border-ACC] 'abroad', as in this example:

Ещё когда я в первый раз поехала со своими фильмами за границу, была поражена неадекватностью восприятия зарубежной аудиторией.  
[Still when I-NOM in first time-ACC rode with own films-INST behind border-ACC, was shocked-NOM inadequacy-INST perception-GEN foreign audience-INST.]  
Even the first time I went *abroad* with my films, I was shocked at the reception of foreign audiences.

When one object goes behind another it can get caught there or use that position to restrain the other object (remember the pilot in the example above). You will often see за plus ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION used to mean grabbing or holding. Common examples involve hands, as in взяться за руку [take behind hand-ACC] 'join hands' and вести за руку [lead behind hand-ACC] 'lead by the hand', but grabbing and holding can be invoked in a variety of situations, as illustrated in the following two examples:

Он подошёл к машине, взял за задний бампер, оторвал задние колёса от земли, потом поставил и ушёл.  
[He-NOM approached to car-DAT, took behind back bumper-ACC, tore-away back wheels-ACC from ground-GEN, then placed and left.]  
He walked up to the car, took it by *the back bumper*, tore the back wheels off the ground, then put it down and walked away.

Полицейские крепко держали его за плечи.  
[Policemen-NOM firmly held him-ACC behind shoulders-ACC.]  
The policemen held him firmly by *the shoulders*.

Placing one thing behind another can also be the first step in replacing or exchanging items; the most common transaction of this kind is the receipt of goods or services in exchange for money (here the use of за is very similar to its use meaning 'for' in the domain of purpose):

Англичане приобрели дочку за мизерную плату у 17-летней цыганки.  
[English-people-NOM obtained daughter-ACC for wretched sum-ACC by 17-year-old gypsy-GEN.]  
The English [couple] obtained a daughter from a 17-year-old gypsy girl for *a wretched sum*.

Finally, in the metaphorical space of numbers, за can name a number that is exceeded, as in: набралось за сотню желающих [gathered beyond hundred-ACC interested-parties-GEN] 'more than *a hundred* interested parties gathered'.



## ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION 4—о ‘against’

The preposition *о*, like *на*, treats the accusative object as a surface, but it requires that contact be made and that there be some kind of force or pressure, usually involving leaning on or striking the object.

О + ACCUSATIVE:  
DESTINATION in  
e domain of  
space means

Брала́ их за дли́нный ро́зовый хвост и с разма́ху била́ головóй о це́ментны́й по́л.

[Took them-ACC beyond long pink tail-ACC and from sweep-GEN beat head-INST against cement floor-ACC.]

She took them by their long pink tail and with all her might beat their head against *the cement floor*.

Электромеха́ник сказа́л, что о́коло четырёх часо́в утра́ слы́шались си́льные уда́ры о ко́рпус кора́бля.

[Electromechanic-NOM said, that around four hours-GEN morning-GEN were-heard strong blows-NOM against hull-ACC ship-GEN.]

The electromechanic said that heavy blows against *the hull* of the ship were heard at about four in the morning.

О + ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION also provides the structure for the *и* *ио́м* *бок о́ бок* [side-NOM against side-ACC] ‘side by *side*’.

## ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION 5—по ‘up to’

Most frequently *по* with the accusative means ‘up to’ a certain point. Some activity is progressing through some space, and the accusative item is its destination, the place where it stops.

ПО + ACCUSATIVE:  
A DESTINATION in  
e domain of  
space means ‘up  
to; after, to get’.

Бы́ло очеви́дно, что егó дед привы́к сто́ять по ко́лено в наво́зе и шу́рвать лопа́той.

[Was obvious, that his grandfather-NOM accustomed stand up-to knee-ACC i manure-LOC and stoke shovel-INST.]

It was obvious that his grandfather was used to standing up to *his knees* in manure and heaving a shovel.

The next two examples demonstrate metaphorical extensions: the arranging of meetings is an activity which has six as its stopping point/destination, and writing is an activity which has eighty pages as its destination (note that this meaning overlaps with the use of *по*

+ ACCUSATIVE: A DIMENSION meaning ‘each’).

Ди́ректору назна́чали ежедне́вно по ше́сть деловы́х свида́ний.

[Director-DAT arranged daily up-to six-ACC business meetings-GEN.]

They were arranging up to *six* business meetings a day for the director.

Этот журналист писал по *восемьдесят* страниц в день.  
[That journalist-NOM wrote up-to eighty-ACC pages-GEN i  
That journalist wrote up to *eighty* pages a day.

The use of *по* to mean ‘after, to get’ is fairly infrequent, and sounds archaic to most Russians. It can also be paraphrased as ‘to fetch’, as in *идти по ягоды* [to-go after/to get/to fetch strawberries-ACC] ‘to go get *strawberries*’.

## ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION 6—ПОД ‘under’

The preposition *под* expresses a destination ‘under’ an item. Here’s a concrete illustration of how it is used:

На таёжной трассе погиб тигр, попавший под *колёса* проезжавшего лесовоза.  
[On taiga route-LOC died tiger-NOM, fallen-NOM under wheels-ACC passed logging-truck-GEN.]  
A tiger that fell under *the wheels* of a passing logging truck died on the taiga road.

More frequently *под* is used to describe the creation of metaphorical relationships, often involving power, as in this newspaper headline:

Русские пограничники в Грузии взяты под *наблюдение*  
[Russian border-guards-NOM in Georgia-LOC taken-NOM under observation-ACC]  
Russian border guards are put under *observation* in Georgia

This last example is of ‘under’-handed financing, involving the attraction of investments with a promise of state-owned stocks:

Правительство готово рассмотреть вопрос привлечения инвестиций под *гарантию* акций Сберегательного банка, принадлежащих государству.  
[Government-NOM prepared-NOM examine question-ACC attraction-GEN investments-GEN under guarantee-ACC shares-GEN Savings bank-GEN, belonging-GEN state-DAT.]  
The government is prepared to examine the question of how investments were solicited by means of *a guarantee* of Savings Bank shares that belong to the state.

Similar to *под гарантию* is the common phrase *под залог* [under pledge-ACC] ‘on *the security* of’.

## ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION 7—Destinations in time

If a destination in space is the point where something goes, then a destination in time is the point when something happens.

Both **в** and **на** are deployed for this meaning, which is very common, especially for days and times of day:

Курс доллара в пятницу несколько снизился.  
[Exchange-rate-NOM dollar-GEN to Friday-ACC somewhat declined.]  
The exchange rate for the dollar declined somewhat on *Friday*.

В семь часов вечера она стояла возле его дома в чём-то модном, ярком и коварном.  
[To seven-ACC hours-GEN evening-GEN she-NOM stood next-to his house-GEN in something fashionable, bright and insidious-LOC.]  
At *seven* o'clock in the evening she was standing next to his house in something fashionable, bright, and insidious.

На следующий день после подписания контракта началась отправка грузов.  
[On next day-ACC after signing-GEN contract-GEN began shipment-NOM freight-GEN.]  
Shipment of freight began *the day* after the contract was signed.

Both **в** and **на** are used with *раз* [time-ACC] in time expressions such as: **в первый раз** 'the first time', **в последний раз** 'the last time', **на этот раз** 'this/that time'. Here's an example:

Предвыборный штаб постарается опротестовать результаты выборов, тем более что на этот раз было зафиксировано немало нарушений.  
[Election staff-NOM tries protest results-ACC elections-GEN, that-INST more that on this time-ACC was recorded-NOM not-few violations-GEN.]  
The election staff will try to protest the election results, especially si *time*  
quite a number of violations were recorded.

The preposition **по** preserves its meaning 'in the domain of time, as these examples demonstrate:

Тысячи людей поколения наших родителей по пятьдесят лет жили вместе, но при этом нередко были абсолютно чужими друг другу людьми.  
[Thousands-NOM people-GEN generation-GEN our parents-GEN up-to fifty-ACC years-GEN lived together, but at this-LOC not-infrequently were absolutely alien-INST friend-NOM friend-DAT people-INST.]  
Thousands of people of our parents' generation lived together for up to *fifty* years, but still were not infrequently absolutely estranged from each other.

С середины января по конец февраля вооружёнными отрядами исламистов уничтожено свыше 600 мирных граждан, включая стариков и детей.  
[From middle-GEN January-GEN up-to end-ACC February-GEN armed divisions-INST Islamists-GEN destroyed-NOM more 600 peaceful citizens-GEN, including old-people-GEN and children-GEN.]  
From the middle of January through *the end* of February more than 600 peaceful citizens, including children and the elderly, were killed by armed divisions of Islamists.

Parallel to its spatial uses, *под* can indicate a time approaching another set time (note how we also express directed motion in English by using *toward* in this way):

Возвращаясь под *утро*, она говорила себе: ладно, обойдётся. Что-нибудь придумаю в такси.

[Returning under morning-ACC, she-NOM said self-DAT: okay, work-out. Something-ACC think-up in taxi-LOC.]

Returning toward *morning*, she said to herself: okay, things will work out. I'll think something up in the taxi.

## ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION 8—The direct object

Thus far we have traveled through the domains of space and time in search of destinations: What happens if we enter the domain of action? Where will we find the destination of the activity expressed by the verb in a sentence? The answer is something traditionally called the direct object. Here is the logic that ties it to the ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION. Imagine any sentence with both an agent (something that does something) and a patient (something that has something done to it). The patient is the direct object, and it is in the accusative case because the action moves along a path from the agent to the patient. For example, let's take *I* for the agent, *pushed* for the action, and *button* for the patient. Result: *I pushed the button*, where *the button* is the direct object of the verb. Of course in Russian it will appear in the accusative case, and here is what it looks like:

Я нажал *большую круглую кнопку* лифта.

[I-NOM pressed big round button-ACC elevator-GEN.]

I pressed the elevator's *big round button*.

This formula will work for just about any verb (except the ones that govern the instrumental, dative, or genitive for some special reason explained in those chapters), even verbs that don't involve any real "action".

Вертолёт пошёл *вверх*, увлекая за собой *Бонда*.

[Helicopter-NOM went up, dragging behind self-INST Bond-ACC.]

The helicopter went up, dragging *Bond* behind it.

Каждый трудящийся содержит *троих*.

[Each worker-NOM supports three-ACC.]

Each worker supports *three people*.

Новый документ предполагает *открытие* национальных и международных рынков.

[New document-NOM proposes opening-ACC national and international markets-GEN.]

The new document proposes *the opening* of national and international markets.

---

Четыре спорных острова имеют *важное значение* для безопасности России.  
[Four disputed islands-NOM have important meaning-ACC for security-GEN Russia-GEN.]

The four disputed islands are *important* for Russia's security.

Я вёл *двойную жизнь*.

[I-NOM led double life-ACC.]

I led a *double life*.

Thanks to the fact that the direct object is marked with the accusative case (and thus distinct from the nominative agent/subject), the subject, verb, and direct object can be presented in just about any order. Here are a few examples of word orders that won't usually work in English (at least not with active verbs):

*Виталика* любили оба родителя, две бабушки, прабабушка, и два дедушки.  
[Vitalik-ACC loved both parents-NOM, two grandmothers-NOM, great-grandmother-NOM, and two grandfathers-NOM.]

*Vitalik* was loved by both parents, two grandmothers, a great-grandmother, and two grandfathers.

*Свою двухкомнатную квартиру* она сдала внаём.

[Own two-room apartment-ACC she-NOM let-out to-rent.]

She rented out *her two-room apartment*.

*Завистники* считают, что *женщин* привлекают в богачах их деньги.

[Envious-people-NOM think, that women-ACC attract in rich-men-LOC their money-NOM.]

Envious people think that what attracts *women* about rich men is their money.

It is possible to have an accusative direct object even when we tamper a bit with the rest of the sentence structure. For example, sometimes the subject might appear in the dative case (for more about such datives, see the following chapter):

Кабинету министров поручено разработать *технико-экономическое обоснование* проекта.

[Cabinet-DAT ministers-GEN charged work-out technical-economic basis-ACC project-GEN.]

The cabinet of ministers has been charged with working out *the technical and economic basis* of the project.

Often in Russian we simply use a plural verb with no subject to express a generic “they”. Here the subject is implied even though we can’t see it, and the direct object stays in the accusative case, just as we would expect it to:

Печально, но *тех*, кто счастлив в браке, полностью игнорируют.  
[Sadly, but those-ACC, who-NOM happy-NOM in marriage-LOC, completely ignore.]  
It’s unfortunate, but *people* who are happy in marriage are utterly ignored.

Вот уж поистине режут *курицу*, несущую золотые яйца!  
[Well already indeed slaughter hen-ACC, laying-ACC golden eggs-ACC!]  
Well now they really are killing *the goose that lays the golden eggs!*

The first of these two sentences is based on the structure игнорируют *тех* ‘[they] ignore *those [people]*’; these two words are inverted and the clause about who is happy in marriage is inserted to explain what *тех* refers to. The second sentence contains two examples of ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION in the domain of action: one is *the hen* (with no subject), and the other is *the golden eggs* (with the hen as the subject).

## ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION 9—Objects without subjects

It is possible to have sentences without even an implied subject, in which case the verb shows “default” agreement of neuter singular. This is required for certain verbs (usually involving feeling sick), and some examples (like the one with the barn below) are clearly parallel with the “raw force” type of INSTRUMENTAL: A MEANS (minus the instrumental itself; note that the accusative items in the “raw force” instrumental examples are all direct objects, too). The verbs most frequently encountered in this construction are знобить ‘have the chills’, рвать ‘vomit’, тошнить ‘feel nauseated’, and трясти ‘shake, have the shivers’. The following examples demonstrate how these verbs are used in context:

И когда зазвенел звонок на обед и все родители столпились у лестницы, он понял, что это значит, и *его* стало рвать бутербродом.

[And when rang bell-NOM on lunch-ACC and all parents-NOM crowded by staircase-GEN, he-NOM understood, what-ACC this-NOM means, and him-ACC began vomit sandwich-INST.]

And when the lunch bell rang and all the parents crowded around the staircase, he understood what it meant and *he* began to throw up his sandwich.

Вас не тошнит от того, что Чечня считается территорией России, а там регулярно похищают и убивают людей?

[You-ACC not feel-nauseated from that-GEN, that Chechnya-NOM is-considered territory-INST Russia-GEN, but there regularly capture and kill people-ACC?]

It doesn’t make *you* sick that Chechnya is considered a Russian territory, but people are being captured and killed there?

*Пассажи́ров* трясёт меньше, чем в други́х маши́нах.  
 [Passengers-ACC shakes less, than in other vehicles-LOC.]  
*Passengers* get shaken less than in other vehicles.

As the last example with the shaken passengers above suggests, it is also possible just to name the patient of some (usually damaging) action, and leave the agent anonymous, as in this statement of arson:

*Сара́й* зажгло́.  
 [Barn-ACC set-on-fire.]  
*The barn* was set on fire.

Another variant is to leave it in the infinitive form, again without a subject, as in

*Курс* интенсйвной терапйи решено́ продо́лжить.  
 [Course-ACC intensive therapy-GEN decided continue.]  
 It was decided to continue *the course* of intensive therapy.

Finally, one can even dispense with the verb entirely, provided it can be retrieved from context, as in this expression which you might hear when someone offers their hand to help you up a steep path (where *на* is an interjection, not a preposition):

*На ру́ку!*  
 [Here hand-ACC!]  
 Here, take *my hand*!

## ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION 10—Destinations of purpose

Now we move to a more nebulous realm, that of the wishes, wants, and hopes that make up the human will. Moving the will in a certain direction means using it as a cause to produce a desired effect. Here we see ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION fleshed out as an object toward which an agent is directing its will, its sense of purpose. Usually this takes the form of somebody doing something for *something or somebody* (and perhaps for *a reason*). This kind of 'for' is most commonly expressed by the preposition *на*, though *в*, *за*, and less frequently *под* and *про* are deployed for this purpose.

In this first example, the purpose of Moscow's taking action is the defense of one of its citizens; Moscow is obliged to do something for him:

Росси́йский гражда́нин преступле́ния не соверши́л, и Москва́ обяза́на  
 вы́ступить в его́ за́щиту́.  
 [Russian citizen-NOM crime-GEN not committed, and Moscow-NOM obliged-NOM  
 act for his defense-ACC.]  
 The Russian citizen has not committed any crime, and Moscow is obliged to act in  
*his defense*.

ACCUSATIVE: A  
 DESTINATION in  
 the domain of  
 purpose.

В + ACCUSATIVE:  
 DESTINATION in  
 the domain of  
 purpose means  
 'for'.





Very frequently, however, *за* inspires the concept of exchange, getting this *for that*, fighting *for something*, being punished *for something*, or paying *for something*. We have already seen *за* play this role in expressing transactions when we looked at the spatial destinations above.

Кажется маловероятным, чтобы такой человек планировал бороться за президентское кресло.

[Seems unlikely-INST, that such person-NOM planned fight for presi ACC.]

It seems unlikely that such a person would plan to fight *for the presi*

Будут ли у нас когда-нибудь наказывать за врачебные преступления и ошибки?

[Will whether by us-GEN someday punish for medical crimes-ACC and errors-ACC?]

Will people someday be punished in our country for *ical crimes and errors?*

Журналисты заплатили штраф за незаконное пребывание в пограничной полосе.

[Journalists-NOM paid fine-ACC for illegal stay-ACC in border zone-LOC.]

The journalists paid a fine *for staying illegally* in the border zone.

When the preposition *под* is used in the domain of purpose, it means 'for use as', and involves designing or redesigning something to serve a given function, as in this example:

Однако после революции церковь переделали под крематорий.

[However after revolution-GEN church-ACC remade under crematorium-ACC.]

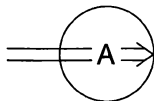
However after the revolution they remodeled the church to serve as *a crematorium*.

The use of the preposition *про* is also relatively restricted in the domain of purpose. It is part of the fixed phrase *сохранить про чёрный день* [save for black day-ACC] 'save for a rainy day' and often occurs in the negative with the pronoun *нас* 'us', as in this example:

Эти лакомства — не про нас.

[These delicacies-NOM — not for us-ACC.]

These delicacies aren't for *us*.



A force (arrow) moves through an ACCUSATIVE: A DIMENSION (circle labeled A)

## ACCUSATIVE: A DIMENSION 1— Distance and duration

The hallmark of the ACCUSATIVE: A DIMENSION is that the action of the verb extends over some dimension. The domains invoked by ACCUSATIVE: A DIMENSION can be grouped as follows: distance and duration, size and capacity, comparison, and performance of activities. Each grouping will be examined in turn below.

ACCUSATIVE: A DIMENSION  
domain  
purpose means

ACCUSATIVE: A DIMENSION  
in the domain of  
purpose means  
'for'.

ACCUSATIVE: A DIMENSION is invoked in the domains of distance and duration, size and capacity, comparison, and performance of activities.

There's a Russian proverb that nicely illustrates the distance and duration uses of the preposition *по*.  
CUSATIVE: A DIMENSION:

*Жизнь прожить не поле перейти.*

[Life-ACC live-through not field-ACC walk-across.]

Living through *life* isn't like walking across *a field/Life's* no bed of roses.

Here life is understood as a stretch of time with a beginning and an end (and punctuated by trials and tribulations), and living is an activity that stretches all along this time period. The field is a bounded space, and walking extends along the distance from one edge of it to the other. Both the life and the field provide dimensions that guide activities.

Although examples of distance are by no means rare, you will encounter many more examples of duration, which can be expressed both without prepositions and with them: *в*, *за*, *на*, and *по*.

The following four sentences illustrate duration without prepositions. The first two contain obvious cues, such as the idiomatic expression *провести время* 'spend time' and the verb *длиться* 'last'. The other two show that duration can be expressed for any activity (walking) or state (being).

*Мы с ним обязательно ещё раз сходим в ресторан и опять прекрасно проведём время вдвоём.*

[We-NOM with him-INST surely still one-time-ACC go to restaurant-ACC and again splendidly conduct time-ACC together.]

Surely he and I will go once more to a restaurant and again have a splendid time together.

*Наркомания почти неизлечима, и если ремиссия длится два-три года, то это уже хороший результат.*

[Drug-addiction-NOM almost incurable-NOM and if remission-NOM lasts two-three years-ACC, then that-NOM already good result-NOM.]

Drug addiction is almost incurable, and if a remission lasts *two or three years*, then that's a pretty good result.

*Американец купил эти сапоги в спортивном магазине и ходил в них по горам лет пять или шесть.*

[American-NOM bought these boots-ACC in sport store-LOC and walked in them-LOC along mountains-DAT years-GEN five-ACC or six-ACC.]

An American bought these boots in a sporting goods store and walked around the mountains in them for about *five or six years*.

*Пять десятилетий Япония была верным последователем США.*

[Five-ACC decades-GEN Japan-NOM was loyal follower-INST USA-GEN.]

For five decades Japan was the USA's loyal follower.

Sometimes the duration is made up of small discontinuous pieces of time, usually indicated by the use of words like *каждый* 'every' and *раз* 'time', as in *говорить сто раз* [say hundred-ACC times-GEN] 'say a hundred times', and as in this example:

Если ты любишь меня, тогда зачем мы *каждый день* расстаёмся?  
[If you-NOM love me-ACC, then why we-NOM every day-ACC break-up?]  
If you love me, then why do we break up *every day*?

With the preposition *в*, duration is usually expressed in terms of *время/времена* 'ti or го́ды' 'years', as in the following two examples:

Сати́ра во *все времена́* испыты́вала недоброжелательство власте́й и во *все времена́* пита́лась горя́чей подде́ржкой публи́ки.

[Satire-NOM in all times-ACC experienced disfavor-ACC authorities-GEN and i all times-ACC been-nourished ardent support-INST public-GEN.]

Satire has at *all times* experienced the disfavor of the authorities and at *all ti* been nourished by the ardent support of the public.

В *те го́ды* всем не хватало́ нали́чных де́нег.

[In those years-ACC all-DAT not sufficed available money-GEN.]

In *those years* everyone had a shortage of available money.

Probably the most common use of *в* + ACCUSATIVE: A DIMENSION in the domain of time is with the word *раз* 'time' to express frequency, as in *раз в неде́лю* [time-ACC in week-ACC] 'once a week', *три ра́за в ме́сяц* [three times-ACC in month-ACC] 'three times a month'.

Like *в*, *на* can also identify a duration, specifically one during which something is done, or how long the results should last, usually translatable into English as 'for' or 'lasting'. Thus in Russian you can come on a visit *на одну неде́лю* [for one week-ACC] 'for one week', and one can also engage in an activity for a specified period of time, as in this example:

Врачи́ настаивают на скорейшем у́ходе в о́тпуск не ме́нее чем на *три́дцать* дней.

[Doctors-NOM insist on fastest departure-LOC in vacation-ACC not less than last- ing thirty days-ACC.]

The doctors insist that he immediately take a vacation lasti

The preposition *за* can mean 'during, in the course of', as we see in these two examples:

За *э́тот ме́сяц* нико́го в на́шем до́ме не хорони́ли.

[During that month-ACC no one-ACC in our house-LOC not

During *that month* no one in our house was buried.

*в* + ACCUSATIVE:  
in the

duration means  
'in, during'.

*на* + ACCUSATIVE:  
DIMENSION in  
e domain of  
tion means  
'sing'.

*за* + ACCUSATIVE:  
A DIMENSION in  
the domain of  
duration means  
'during'.

За *сутки* состояние больного незначительно меняется то в лучшую, то в худшую сторону.

[During twenty-four-hours-ACC condition-NOM patient-GEN imperceptibly changes now to better-ACC, now to worse side-ACC.]

In the course of *twenty-four hours* the patient's condition changes imperceptibly, getting better and worse by turns.

The meaning of *по* in this context is usually best translated as 'through':

С января по май вы будете в олимпийской форме.

[From January-GEN through May-ACC you-NOM will-be in olympic form-LOC.]

From January through *May* you will be in olympic form.

## ACCUSATIVE: A DIMENSION 2—Size and capacity

In the domain of size and capacity, some feature of an object is measured against a standardized scale (often units of weight and measure) or against another object or objects. You will usually have a preposition here (*в* is most frequent, *на* and *по* are possible, and *о* is rather rare), followed by the ACCUSATIVE: A DIMENSION marking the scale, units, or object along which size or capacity are measured.

Here are typical examples expressing weight and size:

Один из слонов — трёхлётний Раджа́ ве́сом в 850 килогра́ммов — воспользовался прогу́лкой, чтобы загляну́ть в посудную ла́вку.

[One-NOM of elephants-GEN — three-year-old Rajah-NOM weight-INST in 850-ACC kilograms-GEN — took-advantage outing-INST, to take-peek to china shop-ACC.]

One of the elephants — three-year-old Rajah, weighing 850 kilograms — took advantage of the outing to take a peek into a china shop.

Сразу́ броса́ется в глаза́ ваго́нчик в два эта́жа, сде́ланный в А́нглии незадо́лго до пе́рвой мирово́й война́.

[Immediately throws in eyes-ACC wagon-NOM in two stories-ACC, made-NOM in England-LOC not-long before first world war-GEN.]

Suddenly there appears a *two-story* wagon, made in England not long before the first World War.

The preposition *в* can also be used to tell us the amount by which things differ:

Ста́рый ку́рс от но́вого отлича́ется ровно́ в *ты́сячу* раз.

[Old rate-NOM from new-GEN differs exactly in thousand-ACC times-GEN.]

The old rate is exactly *a thousand* times more than the new one.

In this domain, *на* can tell us how big an item is in phrases like: театр *на пятьсот мест* [theater-NOM on five-hundred-ACC places-GEN] 'a five-hundred-seat theater', облигация *на сто рублей* [obligation-NOM on hundred-ACC rubles-GEN] 'a one-hundred-ruble obligation', комната *на двоих* [room-NOM on two-ACC] 'a room for two'.

Like *в*, *на* can measure the amount by which it differs from some other object. Here you will usually see a comparative adjective (like больше 'bigger', меньше 'smaller', короче 'shorter') or a verb indicating exceeding or failing to reach some mark, plus the preposition *на*:

В понедельник курс доллара зафиксирован на уровне 2017 рублей, что на пять рублей выше предыдущего показателя.

[To Monday-ACC exchange-rate-NOM dollar-GEN fixed-NOM on level-LOC 2017 rubles-GEN, what-NOM to five-ACC rubles higher previous indicator-GEN.]

On Monday the exchange rate for the dollar is fixed at the level of 2017 rubles, which is five rubles higher than the previous indicator.

Я опоздала на пятнадцать минут.

[I-NOM got-late on fifteen-ACC minutes-GEN.]

I was fifteen minutes late.

In this domain the preposition *по* refers to a distribution such that each of a series of items is assigned the same amount. In the following example the value of two rubles is assigned to each kilo of mimosa:

В Сочи мимозу можно продать по два рубля за один килограмм.

[In Sochi-LOC mimosa-ACC possible sell along two rubles-ACC for one kilogram-ACC.]

In Sochi you can sell mimosa for two rubles a kilo.

The use of the preposition *о* in the domain of size and capacity is rare and archaic, but here are two phrases to give you an idea of what it looks like: избушка *об одно оконце* [hut-NOM with one window-ACC] 'a hut with just one little window', крыльцо *о три ступеньки* [porch-NOM with three steps-ACC] 'a porch with just three little steps'.

A very common use of ACCUSATIVE: A DIMENSION deals with financial rather than physical dimensions, here the cost of an item is presented in the accusative with no preposition. This meaning of the accusative is most frequently associated with the verb *стоить* 'cost', although, as this example illustrates, other verbs can occasionally serve this purpose:

Обычно перевыпуск карточки стоит пятьдесят долларов, сервисная плата составляет сто пятьдесят долларов.

[Usually reissue-NOM card-GEN costs fifty-ACC doll ice fee-NOM comes-to hundred fifty-ACC dollars-GEN.]

Usually the reissue of a card costs fifty dollars, and the service fee comes to one hundred and fifty dollars.

**НА + ACC** SATIVE:  
A DIMENSION in  
the domain of  
size and capaci  
expresses a  
number of uni

**ПО + ACCUSATIVE:**  
A DIMENSION in  
the domain of  
size and capaci  
expresses an  
amount r item.

**О + ACCUS**  
DIMENSION i  
domain of si  
and capaci  
means 'wi

## ACCUSATIVE: A DIMENSION 3—Comparison

The measurement of one thing against another in and of itself implies a comparison of the thing measured with some standard. It is perhaps no surprise that comparison is an important component of the ACCUSATIVE: A DIMENSION, and that comparison can be made in many different ways.

The use of *в* in the domain of comparison is rather marginal, but one does come across examples such as *бумага в клеточку* [paper-NOM like square-ACC] ‘graph paper’ and *юбка в полоску* [skirt-NOM in stripe-ACC] ‘a striped skirt.’

In comparing objects according to their various characteristics to determine whether they are similar to each other, the accusative object is used as a standard, along which another object is measured in a metaphorical sense. The most common example of this use of ACCUSATIVE: A DIMENSION is the phrase *похож на* ‘looks like, resembling’:

Хотите знать, на *кого* вы похожи? На *разбитую* параличом *гориллу*, которую держат в зоопарке из жалости.

[Want know, to whom-ACC you-NOM resemble? To stricken-ACC paralysis-INST gorilla-ACC, which-ACC keep in zoo-LOC from pity-GEN.]

Do you want to know *what* you look like? Like *a paralyzed gorilla* that they keep in a zoo out of pity.

With the preposition *под*, comparison has the connotation of imitation, as in this bit of conversation from a beauty parlor, where a woman is being offered a haircut ‘like a boy’s’:

Согласно *вашему* лицу, предлагаю *под мальчика* — не возражаете?

[In-harmony your face-DAT, suggest under boy-ACC — not object?]

To suit your face, I suggest giving you *a boy’s* haircut — is that okay with you?

A specialized type of comparison is approximation, and this use has its own preposition: *с* ‘about the size/length of, approximately’. This is the only meaning that *с* ever has when it is used with the accusative case. An easy way to recognize this use is to remember the Russian rhyme for ‘Tom Thumb’, which is *Мальчик с пальчик*, literally [Boy-NOM approximately finger-ACC] ‘A boy about the size of *your* finger’. Here are some contextualized examples:

Наш попугай был *ростом с курицу*.

[Our parrot-NOM was size-INST approximately chicken-ACC.]

Our parrot was about the *size of a chicken*.

Он *с минутку* подержал *жену* в объятиях.

[He-NOM approximately minute-ACC held wife-ACC in embraces-LOC.]

He held his wife in his arms for about *a minute*.

## ACCUSATIVE: A DIMENSION 4—Activities in various domains

Measurement and comparison are not the only activities that can extend along the dimensions of an object marked as ACCUSATIVE: A DIMENSION. Almost any kind of activity can behave this way, being guided or limited by the features or dimensions of the accusative object. The concept of activity extending along some defining space is abstract and metaphorical; considering some concrete examples will help you to see how this works.

A very common use of this meaning is in the phrase играть в [play to] which is used when we talk about playing games and sports. The name of the game or sport follows in the accusative. Let's think for a minute about the relationship between a game or sport and playing. Playing in itself is a relatively loosely defined activity. A game or sport, however, brings all kinds of concrete parameters with it: rules, implements used, techniques, etc. In this sense the game or sport lends specific dimensions to the playing activity (otherwise left undefined).

На новом стадионе можно играть в *регби, бейсбол, софтбол*...

[At new stadium-LOC possible play in rugby-ACC, baseball-ACC, softball-ACC...]

At the new stadium one can play *rugby, baseball, softball*...

The distinction we make in English between 'believe' (say, 'a story') and 'believe in' (say, 'God') has an exact parallel in Russian. Whereas верить is usually followed by a DATIVE: A COMПЕТОР (parallel to 'believe'), when speaking of strong convictions Russians use верить/веря в + accusative: a dimension, as in верить/веря в Бога [believe/belief in God-ACC] 'believe/belief in God'.

Here's another example using в, where the activity is crying, defined by the dimension of one voice (unison).

Но плакать в *один голос* с ним не хочется.

[But cry to one voice-ACC with him-INST not want-self.]

But one doesn't feel like crying in *unison* with him.

The extension of an activity along a dimension can be variously expressed by all of the following prepositions: на, под, про, сквозь, and через. На is usually the place where something is or happens. In this example being beautiful is something that extends along the face, but being fat extends along the figure:

Она была красивая на *лицо*, но толстая на *фигуру*.

[She-NOM was beautiful-NOM to face-ACC, but fat-NOM to figure-ACC.]

She had a beautiful *face*, but a fat *figure*.

A more abstract, but very common example is the phrase на мой (твой, её, его...) взгляд [to my (your, her, his...) view-ACC] 'in my (your, her, his...) view/opinion'. The proposition (whatever it is that the person believes) extends along that person's view; in other words, it is true for the domain of that person's opinion. In the following example, the belief that taking such steps will be beneficial is true for the domain of the ambassador's opinion:

A DATIVE: A DIMENSION in the domains of s activity always requires a preposition.

DIMENSION

manner of

НА + ACC  
A DIMENSION  
e domains of  
various activities  
expresses  
locations and  
inions.

На *взгляд* посла, такие шаги создают благоприятную атмосферу для решения территориальной проблемы.

[To view-ACC ambassador-GEN, such steps-NOM create favorable atmosphere-ACC for solution-GEN territorial problem-GEN.]

In the ambassador's *opinion*, such steps create a favorable atmosphere for solving the territorial problem.

The preposition *под* indicates an activity that accompanies another one, most commonly involving music, as in *танцевать под музыку* [dance under music-ACC] 'dance to the music', *петь под гитару* [sing under guitar-ACC] 'sing along with the guitar'. This idea of musical accompaniment can be extended to other activities involving rhythmic sounds, as in this example:

Под *сверённую воркотню* гардеробщика оставляю свои сумки на полу, поднимаюсь наверх и сразу сажусь в кресло.

[Under fierce growling-ACC coat-check-man-GEN leave own bags-ACC on floor-LOC, raise up and immediately sit in chair-ACC.]

To the tune of the coat-check man's *fierce growls* I leave my bags on the floor, go upstairs, and sit right down in a chair.

The preposition *про* designates dimensions for activities like thinking, talking, and writing. The domain of these cognitive and communicative activities is their topic, literally the thing that you think, talk, or write *about*.

Мы всё знаем друг про друга.

[We-NOM all-ACC know other-NOM for other-ACC.]

We know everything about *each other*.

Я забыл про *царевну-лягушку*.

[I-NOM forgot for queen-frog-ACC.]

I forgot about the *frog-queen*.

*Сквозь* refers to something that has dimensions, 'through' which something else (usually light or sound or the perception of something seen or heard) passes, often with some difficulty or alteration, as we see in these two examples:

Заразительная поэтика великой книги заставляет смотреть сквозь её оптику на многие обычные вещи.

[Infectious poetics-NOM great book-GEN force look through its lens-ACC on many ordinary things-ACC.]

This great book's captivating poetry forces us to look at a multitude of everyday things through *its lens*.



Я ещё слышу сквозь сон, как ложится Дима, но не могу открыть глаза.  
[I-NOM still hear through sleep-ACC, how goes-to-bed Dima-NOM, but not can open eyes-ACC.]  
Through *the veil of sleep*, I can still hear Dima going to bed, but I can't open my eyes.

We should also note the common Russian expression смех сквозь слёзы [laughter-NOM through tears-ACC] 'laughter through *tears*', a metaphorical extension of the use of *сквозь* to the domain of the emotions, where one can bring forth a smile despite the trials and tribulations of life.

Через likewise identifies a dimension through which something passes. The first example describes a money-laundering scheme where funds are being cycled through a firm in order to make it look like they have a legitimate origin. The firm provides the dimensions for this cycling activity:

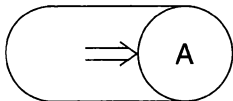
Они прокручивали через фирму сотни тысяч долларов.  
[They-NOM cycled through firm-ACC hundreds-ACC thousands dollars-GEN.]  
They cycled hundreds of thousands of dollars through *the firm*.

People can also serve this purpose when they act as go-betweens. Here Russian journalists provide a medium for the act of conveying:

Лишь немногим бойцам удаётся передать через случайно в  
российских журналистов записку для родственников.  
[Only few soldiers-DAT manage convey through by-chance met Russian journal-  
ists-ACC note-ACC for relatives-GEN.]  
Only a few soldiers manage to convey a note for their relatives via *Russi  
ists that they meet* by chance.

## ACCUSATIVE: AN ENDPOINT 1—Space as opposed to time

ACCUSATIVE: AN ENDPOINT is very similar to the ACCUSATIVE: A DIMENSION, except that it focuses just on one part of the accusative object, namely the one furthest away. The accusative object is thus reduced to its logical endpoint.



A force (arrow) arrives at the  
ACCUSATIVE: AN ENDPOINT  
(circle labeled A) of a domain

ACCUSATIVE: AN ENDPOINT functions in only two domains, that of space and time; however, space and time actually function rather differently from each other. Imagine yourself standing on a certain spot at a certain time. Space stretches out from your spot in all directions equally. Since all directions are equal, they are all the same in some sense. In other words, if some object is one meter away from you, that fact is essentially the same regardless of the direction in which the object lies: it will always be *one meter* away

from you. Time is different. It stretches away from you in exactly two directions, and those directions are distinct from each other. One goes forward, into the future. And one goes backward, into the past. If an event is an hour away from you, it does matter which direction it lies in. The event will either happen *in an hour* or it will have happened *an hour ago*. We don't have any one way to say (in normal English) that an event is an hour away without indicating that it is future or past. The same goes for Russian. In terms of space, the ACCUSATIVE: AN ENDPOINT locates something as being a certain distance away (at the end of that distance), whereas in terms of time this meaning locates things as happening later, at the end of a certain period, or has having happened before, at or prior to the beginning of a certain period. In this way Russian shows a parallelism between the two concepts that we would express in English as I'll see him in *a week* and I saw him *a week ago*. In either case you have to reach one week away from where you are now to get to the point where the action is; you are always looking at something that happens at the far end of a week.

In the domain of space, there are three prepositions that identify endpoints: *в*, *за*, and *через*. *В* is relatively infrequently used to locate items at a given distance, but here is one example:

В *один скачок* он очутился у двери.  
[In one leap-ACC he-NOM found-self by door-GEN.]  
In *one leap* he was at the door.

When *за* 'away' is used in the domain of space, it usually occurs in conjunction with *от* 'from' or *до* 'to' (which also means 'from' in this context), as in this example:

За *несколько километров* до города автобус сорвался с обрыва в реку.  
[Beyond several-ACC kilometers-GEN to city-GEN bus-NOM fell from precipice-GEN in river-ACC.]  
*Several kilometers* before reaching the city the bus fell off the precipice into the river.

In its most simple manifestation, *через* 'across' locates something at the opposite edge of an item as in *клуб — через дорогу* [club-NOM — across street-ACC] 'the club is across the street'. Usually, however, *через* refers to something that is repeated in a series, such that you wind up skipping over every other object, as in the common teacher's instruction *писать через строчку* [write away line-ACC] 'skip lines/write double-spaced', which could be literally interpreted as 'go *one line* away and then write, and then repeat that pattern'. Here's an example to show how this works in context:

И *через каждую фразу* условно подчеркивали: У России в космосе всё хорошо.  
[And across every phrase-ACC as-if emphasized: By Russia-GEN in space-LOC all-NOM good.]  
And it was as if *every other sentence* they were emphasizing: Everything is okay with the Russian space program.

## ACCUSATIVE: AN ENDPOINT 2—Time as opposed to space

As we saw above, time differs in important ways from space. There are furthermore some special peculiarities about the way Russian uses ACCUSATIVE: AN ENDPOINT in time expressions. In addition to the usual use of prepositions (в, за, через) followed by the accusative case, you will also see the accusative case preceding words indicating direction of time (these words act as postpositions triggering the accusative). This table gives an overview of the uses, using *одну неделю* [one week-ACC] ‘one week’ as our unit of time:

### Time expressions associated with ACCUSATIVE: AN ENDPOINT

#### time running forward : in, after, later

<i>в одну неделю</i>	[to one week-ACC]	in/ by the end
<i>за одну неделю</i>	[to one week-ACC]	in/ by the end
<i>через (одну) неделю</i>	[across (one) week-ACC]	after a week, a every other we
<i>одну неделю погодя</i>	[one week-ACC later]	one week later
<i>одну неделю после того</i>	[one week-ACC after that-]	one week after
<i>одну неделю спустя</i>	[one week-ACC later]	one week later

#### time running backward: ago, before

<i>одну неделю до того/перед тем</i>	[one week-ACC until that-GEN/before that-INST]	one week before
<i>за одну неделю до того/перед тем</i>	[to one week-ACC until that-GEN/before that-INST]	one week before
<i>одну неделю назад</i>	[one week-ACC ago]	one week ago

The preposition *в* is often used in reference to the ages of people to say ‘at the age of X this person did Y’; literally it means ‘at the end of so many years this person did Y’:

Наш дирижёр родился в семье музыкантов и уже в пять лет научился играть на фортепиано.

[Our conductor-NOM was-born in family-LOC musicians-GEN and already to five-ACC years-GEN learned play on piano-LOC.]

Our conductor was born in a family of musicians and already at 5 learned to play the piano.

The meaning of the preposition *за* is very similar here. You will notice that when *за* is used with an accusative time expression, if the sentence refers to a completed action (usually with a perfective verb), you get focus on the endpoint, whereas if a process or state is involved, then you have a duration (ACCUSATIVE: A DIMENSION). Here is an example of *за* expressing ACCUSATIVE: AN ENDPOINT:

За месяц Дима превратился в обыкновенного человека.

[To month-ACC Dima-NOM transformed to ordinary person-ACC.]

By the end of a month Dima had become an ordinary person.

Через typically indicates a time period that elapses before something else happens:

Он поставил им ультиматум: сдать́сь че́рез *неде́лю*.  
[He-NOM set them-DAT ultimatum-ACC: give-up across week-ACC.]  
He set an ultimatum for them: give up by the end of a week.

Буква́льно че́рез *час* к ней прие́дет расстрельна́я бригаа́да.  
[Literally across hour-ACC to her-DAT arrives firing squad-NOM.]  
Literally in *one hour* a firing squad will arrive at her place.

When the context calls for periodic repetition (often by means of *ка́ждый* 'every'), then you get the temporal equivalent of what we saw with *че́рез* and intervals of space: things that happen at regular intervals of time:

Че́рез *ка́ждую неде́лю* — медици́нский осмо́тр.  
[Across every week-ACC — medical examination-NOM.]  
There's a medical examination *every other week*.

The postposition *спустя́* 'later' (which can also be used as a preposition) gives Russian yet another way to say 'later' (just as we can also say *thereafter* and *after that*); here's an example:

*Четы́ре го́да* спустя́, в 1904 го́ду на и́грах в Сент-Луи́се, же́нщины ста́ли ме́ряться си́лами в стрельбе́ из лу́ка.  
[Four years-ACC later, in 1904 year-LOC at games-LOC in Saint Louis-LOC, women-NOM started compare strengths-INST in shooting-LOC from bow-GEN.]  
*Four years* later, in 1904 at the games in Saint Louis, women started to compare their abilities in archery.

The postposition *наза́д* is probably the most common Russian equivalent for 'ago'. Here are a couple of examples to show how it works:

*Ме́сяц* наза́д я забы́ла у него́ очки́ от со́лнца.  
[Month-ACC ago I-NOM forgot by him-GEN glasses-ACC from sun-GEN.]  
*A month* ago I forgot my sunglasses at his place.

*Неде́лю* наза́д я слы́шала по ра́дио переда́чу о сча́стье.  
[Week-ACC ago I-NOM heard along radio-DAT program-ACC about LOC.]  
*A week* ago I heard a program on the radio about happiness.

By the way, *наза́д* has a variant, *тому́ наза́д*, which also means 'ago' and is also preceded by ACCUSATIVE: AN ENDPOINT.

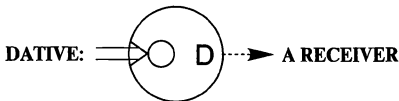
---

## EPILOGUE

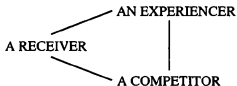
The word *accusative* is not very helpful in summing up this case, although you can think of the parallel between the force of an accusation being released upon the accused and the force of a verb being released upon an object. Accusation is indeed one kind of directed activity, and the accusative case is all about directed activity, particularly motion. Directed motion occupies a prominent place in the linguistic imagination of Russians, and they make a much crisper distinction between motion and location than we do in English. It doesn't matter how short the trip is: even the travel of our backside to a seat or the travel of hairpins to the place we lay them on the sink is described as a movement with a destination. Just looking at something constitutes a visual voyage. Once again our understanding of time is patterned after how we perceive space, motivating the conclusion that if a journey has a spatial destination, then an event has a temporal destination as well. Time is clearly conceived of in Russian as a unidimensional line stretching away from us in two directions. Change to a new state is comprehended as movement to a new location. Going to a destination behind an item can be interpreted as catching hold, replacing, or exceeding that item. Feeling nauseated or shaken up are not activities people engage in; these are things that just happen to us without any apparent agent. The dative case will continue this theme of forces directed at targets, albeit in a less immediate way.

## DATIVE Forms

<b>Feminine declension nouns</b>	'room'	plural комнатам	soft type: singular неделе	plural неделям
	-ь: 'talent' singular способности			
<b>Masculine declension nouns</b>	hard type: 'courtyard' singular двору	plural дворам	soft type: ' singular гвоздю	plural гвоздям
<b>Neuter declension nouns</b>	hard type: 'body' singular телу	plural телам	soft type: 'schedule' singular расписанию	plural расписаниям
<b>Adjectives</b>	hard type: 'first' feminine первой	masculine первому	neuter первому	
	soft type: feminine последней	masculine последнему	neuter последнему	plural последним
<b>Pronouns</b>	'I' мне	'we' нам	'you' informal тебе	'you' вам
		'he' (я)емý	'it' (я)емý	'they' (я)им
	'who' кому	'what' чему	'oneself' себе	
	'this' feminine этой	masculine этому	neuter этому	plural этим
	'all, every' feminine всей	masculine всемý	neuter всемý	plural всем
<b>Possessives</b>	feminine 'my' моей	masculine моему	neuter моему	plural моим
	'our' нашей	нашему	нашему	нашим
<b>Numerals</b>	'one' feminine одной	masculine одному	neuter одному	plural одним
	'two' двум	'three' трём	'four' четырёх	'five' пяти



The dative network:



## PROLOGUE

Imagine for a moment that you are playing Mad Libs, and you are asked to supply some words, so you suggest *flowerpot*, *mud puddle*, and *refrigerator*. Then the leader of the game reads the story: “Philanthropists are people who like to help flowerpots. Some of them are very gullible and will believe every mud puddle they meet. These do-gooders will even give a refrigerator their last dime.” Although they are all grammatically correct, these sentences are not representative of the ordinary repertoire of English. The fun of this game in fact consists in creating nonsensical sentences such as these. The three Mad Libs sentences created here are strange because there is a clash between the expectations of constructions containing *help*, *believe*, and *give* and words like *flowerpot*, *mud puddle*, and *refrigerator* which fail to meet these expectations. All three constructions presume that the object is most likely to be a human being. Help is meaningless to a flowerpot because it cannot appreciate the benefit it receives. A mud puddle doesn’t have a story to tell and cannot inspire belief. A refrigerator cannot do anything with money, so there is no point in giving it any. The reason that inanimate objects don’t work in these contexts is that they are incapable of serving as the subjects of further action. If you were to play this round of Mad Libs in Russian, you would put all three words in the dative case because the verbs *помогать* ‘help’, *верить* ‘believe’, and *дать* ‘give’ would require you to do so, but they still wouldn’t make any more sense in Russian than in English. The dative case shows that all three contexts have something in common, and as we saw above, they all share the expectation that the dative item is capable of being a subject. This doesn’t mean that all dative items are going to be human or even animate, but it does mean that when you are dealing with a dative item, it is likely to be able to react or at least to exert forces of its own.

There are three meanings to the dative, all of which involve the dative’s capacity to interact with its surroundings. The first two meanings are relatively passive, involving receiving objects (DATIVE: A RECEIVER) and absorbing experiences (DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER), whereas the third one is relatively active, involving exerting equal or superior strength in relation to something else (DATIVE: A COMPETITOR).

An overview of the dative case.

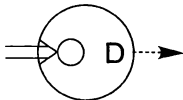
## DATIVE: A RECEIVER 1—The indirect object

DATIVE: A RECEIVER expresses the indirect object.

DATIVE: RECEIVER in the context of giving.

DATIVE: A RECEIVER involves the transfer of an object from one thing or person to another, as in *Sally gave the book to John*. The thing or person on the receiving end (John) is marked with the dative. You might recognize this as the indirect object (the direct object, of course, is the book, marked in the accusative). As we will see, the tricky thing about Russian is that you can sometimes have an indirect object (DATIVE: A RECEIVER) without an obvious direct object (ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION). But let's start with some straightforward examples.

Giving is a universal experience of human interaction, and it serves as the logical starting point for the meanings of the dative. Russian has two verbs for 'give': *давать/дать* (which can have many prefixes) and *дарить/подарить*, and the following examples illustrate their use with the dative:



A force (arrow) brings an item (small circle) to a DATIVE: A RECEIVER (circle labeled D), which has the potential to exert a force (dotted arrow)

Дори́ан обхо́дит сво́их ученико́в, раздаёт *им* но́ты.

[Dorian-NOM walk-around own pupils-ACC, gives-out them-DAT music-ACC.]  
Dorian makes the rounds of his pupils, handing out music to them.

Иде́я бы́ла мо́я, я са́ма подари́ла её сво́ему нача́льнику.

[Idea-NOM was mine-NOM, I myself-NOM gave it-ACC own boss-DAT.]  
The idea was mine, I gave it to my boss myself.

You can see that these sentences have parallel structures, as indicated in this table:

subject	verb	direct object
Dorian	hands out	music
I	gave	the idea

The indirect object can act as subject for a further action.

DATIVE: RECEIVER in context metaphorically.

You can also see that both the pupils and the boss are much more than passive destinations for the music and the idea. In both instances we presume that they are going to do something with what they have received: the pupils are probably going to play the music on their instruments, and the boss is probably going to implement the idea. Even if they fail to do anything, the fact that they could do something is crucial here.

Giving need not involve tangible objects. In English we can offer more abstract, metaphorical "gifts", such as chances and opportunities, and the same goes for Russian:

Ему́ да́ли шанс вы́платить долги́ по креди́там.

[Him-DAT gave chance-ACC pay-off debts-ACC along credits-DAT.]  
They gave him the chance to pay off his debts on credit.



Смеясь, мы широко открываем рот, напрягая все мышцы лица, и даём возможность полностью расслабиться *другим мышцам*.

[Laughing, we-NOM widely open mouth-ACC, tensing all muscles-ACC face-GEN, and give opportunity-ACC completely relax other muscles-DAT.]

When we laugh, we open wide our mouth, tensing all the muscles in our face, and we give *our other muscles* an opportunity to completely relax.

Acts of transferring objects from one party to another are fairly widespread; in English, for example we can *send, offer, supply, and deliver* things to other people. We can even extend this idea of making something available to someone to words like *buy* (She bought *me* a ticket) and *show* (He showed *me* his report card). These words aren't really synonyms of *give*, but they share the same basic conceptual structure, and it is no surprise that in Russian words like these will also have dative indirect objects, as we see in the following table and examples:

Words meaning  
'transfer'  
'make available'  
trigger DATIVE  
RECEIVER.

### Expressions of giving associated with DATIVE: A RECEIVER

'return' возвращать/возвратить/вернуть	'send, dispatch' отправлять/отправить	'send' посылать/послать посылка 'sending; parcel'
'deliver, entrust' вручать/вручить вручение 'delivery'	'pass, convey' передавать/передать передача 'passing; broadcast'	'offer' предлагать/предложить предложение 'offer'
'give out, issue' выдавать/выдать выдача 'issue'	'show' показывать/показать показание 'testimony, evi'	'grant' предоставлять/предоставить предоставление 'grant(ing)'
'give' давать/дать	'buy' покупать/купить	'bring' приносить/принести приношение 'bringing'
'give as a gift' дарить/подарить дарение 'giving' подарок 'gift'	'entrust' поручать/поручить	
'bequeath' завещать	'dedicate' посвящать/посвятить посвящение, 'dedication'	'hand out, distribute' раздавать/раздать раздача 'distribution'
'leave (for)' оставлять/оставить	'supply' поставлять/поставить поставка 'supply, delivery'	'hand over, surrender' сдавать/сдать сдача 'handing over, surrender'

Партия монархистов направила письмо *английскому принцу Эдварду* с просьбой стать эстонским королём.

[Party-NOM monarchists-GEN sent letter-ACC English prince Edward-DAT with request-INST become Estonian King-INST.]

The monarchist party sent a letter *to the English Prince Edward* with a request that he become King of Estonia.

Китай поставлял *Ирану* компоненты, которые могут быть использованы для создания ядерного оружия.

[China-NOM supplied Iran-DAT components-ACC, which-NOM can be used-NOM for creation-GEN nuclear weapons-GEN.]

China supplied components *to Iran* that can be used to create nuclear weapons.

Transfer of objects with a variety of verbs also lends itself to abstract, metaphorical usage. Granting status and selling your soul involve a transfer that is more fictive than actual, but still the connection with giving is clear:

Он также предложил предоставить *восточноевропейским странам* статус наблюдателей при Западноевропейском союзе.

[He-NOM also suggested grant East-European countries-DAT status-ACC observers-GEN at West-European union-LOC.]

He also suggested granting *the East European countries* the status of observers in the West European union.

Все душу *дьяволу* продают, а я подарил бесплатно.

[Everyone-NOM soul-ACC devil-DAT sell, but I-NOM gave for-free.]

Everyone sells their soul *to the devil*, but I gave mine for free.

Another way to give someone something is by creating the gift for the person. If I say *I'll bake you a cake for your birthday*, I'm promising to bring the cake into existence so that you will receive it; in Russian you would be the DATIVE: A RECEIVER. All kinds of words involving making things can be recruited for this purpose, such as building, cooking, sewing, etc. Here's an example:

*Себе* она ничего не построила.

[Self-DAT she-NOM nothing-GEN not built.]

She didn't build anything *for herself*.

The force of the dative case is so strong that the role of DATIVE: A RECEIVER comes through loud and clear even when there is no word indicating giving at all, as in this example:

Наследники, три брата и сестра, переругались, обсуждая что — *кому*.

[Heirs-NOM, three brothers-NOM and sister-NOM cussed-each-other-out, discussing what-NOM who-DAT.]

The heirs, three brothers and a sister, cussed each other out while discussing what would go/be given *to whom*.

You will also recognize this verb-less construction in the formulaic phrase *Сл́ава Бо́гу* [Glory-NOM God-DAT] 'Glory to God'.

## DATIVE: A RECEIVER 2—Indirect objects without direct objects

The remaining uses of the DATIVE: A RECEIVER submeaning are not indirect objects in the classic sense because they don't have any ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION direct objects. However, they do involve the transfer of something to a receiver, even if that something is not explicitly named in the accusative case, and for this reason we can think of these uses as being very close relatives to the indirect object. Usually the "missing" direct objects can be found in the meaning of the trigger word; for example, verbs of communication all involve the transfer of a signal to a receiver, and these verbs take the dative case. When you make a contribution to a worthy cause, it is not necessary to specify that you gave them money, we still understand the charitable organization as the receiver even when the money is not mentioned. It is also possible for something to bring itself to a receiver, in which case the "missing" direct object is the subject of the sentence. Each of these types of indirect objects will be taken up below.

There is quite a selection of words that express delivering signals to receivers. For convenience they can be broken down into two groups: those that involve talking and those that do not. In most instances you can easily recover the "missing" direct object by restating these words as 'give a signal to X', where the signal is the direct object and X is the DATIVE: A RECEIVER. Because the signal is already implicit in the word, we can skip right over it and go directly to the receiver. This table contains some of the communication words associated with the dative that you are likely to encounter:

RECEIVER can express indirect object without a direct object.

"Mi direct objects signals, money, and gifts, and the

DATIVE: RECEIVER context signals.

### Expressions communication associated with DATIVE: A RECEIVER

#### communication: talking

'thanks to' благодаря	'call' звонить/позвонить звонок 'call'	'answer' ответать/ответить ответ 'answer'
'order' велеть/повелеть	'flatter' льстить/польс	'say yes to' поддакивать/поддакнуть поддакивание 'saying yes to'
'say yes to' выкаты выкание 'saying yes to'	'pray' молиться/помолиться молитва 'prayer' молбен 'prayer service' молящийся 'person who is praying'	'order' приказывать/приказать приказание 'order'
'speak, tell' говорить/сказать	'remind' напоминать/напомнить напоминание 'reminder'	'protest' протестовать протест 'protest'
'threaten' грозить/пригрозить угроза 'threat'	'promise' обещать	

## Expressions of communication associated with DATIVE-A RECEIVER (continued)

## communication: talking

'report, inform'  
сообщать/сообщать  
сообщение 'report, communication'

'say ty to'  
тыкать  
'канье 'saying ty to'

'read (out loud) to'  
читать/прочитать (вслух)

'advise'  
советовать/посоветовать  
совет 'advise'

## communication: other signals

'applaud'  
аплодировать  
'nod'  
кивать/кивнуть  
'bow'  
кланяться/поклоняться  
поклон 'bow'

'write'  
писать/написать  
письмо 'letter'  
'wink'  
подмигивать/подмигнуть  
подмигивание 'winking'

'signal'  
сигнализировать  
сигнал 'signal'  
сигнализировать(ся)

'wave'  
махать/помахать  
'blink, wink'  
моргать/моргнуть

'message, epistle'  
послание  
'radio'  
радио  
'applaud, clap'  
рукоплескание 'applause'

'laugh'  
смеяться/посмеяться  
'telegraph'  
телеграфировать  
'smile'  
улыбаться/улыбнуться  
'grin'  
усмехаться/усмехнуться

The following three examples illustrate how communication words involving talking are used with the dative:

Сегодня он напоминает *мне*: в январе испытания нового стеклопластика должны быть закончены.

[Today he-NOM reminds me-DAT: in January-LOC tests-NOM new plexiglass-GEN should-NOM be finished-NOM.]

Today he reminds *me*: the tests on the new plexiglass should be finished in January.

Я позвонил *заведующему* спортивной кафедры.

[I-NOM called head-DAT athletic department-INST.]

I called *the head* of the athletic department.

А я отвечаю *ему*, что я трачу только на еду.

[And I-NOM answer him-DAT, that I-NOM spend only on food-ACC.]

And I answer *him* that I only spend money on food.

There are some communication verbs that do not use the dative case. Благодарить/поблагодарить 'thank' has an accusative direct object, but it used to take the dative, and the preposition благодаря 'thanks to' still does:

Население Сербской Республики благодаря *своим политикам* уже расколото между Пале и Баня-Лукой.

[Population-NOM Serbian Republic-GEN thanks own politicians-DAT already split-NOM between Pale-INST and Banja-Luka-INST.]

Thanks to *its politicians* the population of the Republic of Serbia is already split between Pale and Banja-Luka.

As you see in the table above, communication through bodily gestures and electrical signals is likewise directed to DATIVE: A RECEIVER. Here is an example so you can see the parallel with verbs of verbal communication:

Он поклонился актрисе.  
[He-NOM bowed actress-DAT.]  
He bowed to the actress.

In both Russian and English there are some verbs that mean 'give money or a gift', such as *pay* and *donate*. Because the idea that money or a gift is involved is already part of the word, it doesn't need to appear as an accusative direct object, just like the signals above. Here are some of the words you can expect to see with DATIVE: A RECEIVER, along with an example to illustrate:

DATIVE:  
RECEIVER in the  
money or gifts.

#### Expressions giving money associated with DATIVE: A RECEIVER

'donate'  
жертвовать/пожертвовать  
пожертвование 'donation'

'compensate'  
компенсировать  
компенсация 'compensati

'pay'  
платить/заплатить  
плата, зарплата 'pay, wages'  
'change (money back)'  
сдача

Я в состоянии заплатить гражданам за грехи предыдущих правителей.  
[I-NOM in condition-LOC pay citizens-DAT for sins-ACC previous rulers-GEN.]  
I am in a position to pay the citizens for the sins of their previous rulers.

### DATIVE: A RECEIVER 3—Giving the self

As an alternative to presenting something to a DATIVE: A RECEIVER, the subject can simply present itself, and this can impact the receiver in two ways. The subject can physically bring itself to the receiver, or it can bring itself merely to the perception of the receiver, usually with verbs meaning 'appear (in a dream)', 'seem', 'make an impression'. Here are some words that commonly indicate the giving of the self to a DATIVE: A RECEIVER:

DATIVE:  
RECEIVER in the  
the

#### Expressions of appearance and manifestation associated with DATIVE: A RECEIVER

'appear to in a dream'  
грезниться/пригрезниться

'come to; allow oneself to  
be caught by'  
даваться/даться

'go to, fall to one's lot,  
be inherited by'  
доставаться/достаться

'appear to, haunt'  
мерещиться/померещиться

'introduce oneself to'  
представляться/представиться  
представление 'introduction'

'go in front of, precede'  
предшествовать

'appear to in a dream'  
сниться/присниться

Money presents itself to receivers in two situations in this example. In the first instance the receiver is an individual on a payroll (who pays attention to how much is in his check), whereas in the second one it is an anonymous firm (that will sign off on any amount of money):

Ведь зарплата достаётся *конечному потребителю*, который доподлинно знает, получил он миллион или полмиллиона, в то время как инвестиционные деньги уходят *фирме*, которая запросто может расписаться за любое количество денег.

[After-all salary-NOM goes end user-DAT, who-NOM for-certain knows, received he-NOM million-ACC or half-million-ACC, in that time-ACC as investment money-NOM goes firm-DAT, which-NOM simply can sign for any amount-ACC money-GEN.]

After all a salary goes *to the end user*, who knows for certain whether he received a million or half a million, whereas investment money goes *to a firm* which can simply sign for any amount of money.

Ultimately many verbs of motion can be used to bring the subject to a receiver; the preposition навстрéчу 'toward, to meet' is often used to enhance this meaning:

Навстрéчу *мне* спешáт экономический обозреватéль.  
[Toward me-DAT hurries economic reviewer-NOM.]  
The economic reviewer comes hurrying toward *me*.

The following three examples are of the metaphoric type. In all cases the subject is presenting itself to the perception of the receiver, by making an appearance (to waking or dreaming consciousness) or by making an impression.

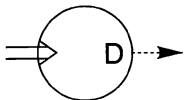
До сегоднáшнего дня моá лаборатория казалась *мне* святým мéстом.  
[Until today's day-GEN my laboratory-NOM seemed me-DAT holy place-INST.]  
Up to the present day my laboratory has seemed *to me* to be a holy place.

Недавно ему снилась девушка из соседней квартиры.  
 [Recently him-DAT appeared-in-dream girl-NOM from next-door apartment-GEN.]  
 Recently the girl from the apartment next door appeared to him in a dream.

Я заметил, что на Тасю обращают внимание. Это импонировало мне.  
 [I-NOM noticed, that on Tasya-ACC turn attention-ACC. That-NOM impressed me-DAT.]  
 I noticed that people were paying attention to Tasya. That impressed me.

## DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER 1—Benefit

Something happens to a DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER, and the dative item absorbs that experience. You can think of this as a diluted version of DATIVE: A RECEIVER; here the dative doesn't get something, instead it gets just an experience of something. Words meaning 'show' and 'appear to' are transitional examples, demonstrating the link between DATIVE: A RECEIVER and DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER. We use the dative case for experiences because the DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER is capable of appreciating the impact of whatever action or state it is exposed to. Experiences can be good and bad, thus benefiting or harming the DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER. Possession and need are also common experiences, and then there are many miscellaneous experiences that don't fit into neat categories. Let's start with the good experiences that bring benefit to the DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER.



A force (arrow) acts on a DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER (circle labeled D), which has the potential to exert a force (dotted arrow)

Kindness comes in many forms, and there is a wealth of ways in which something or someone can bring benefit. Here is a table of words that you can expect to see accompanied by DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER:

### Expressions of benefit associated with DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER

	'please' нравиться/понравиться	'help' помогать/помочь помощь 'help'
	'allow, permit' позволять/позволить позволенный 'permitted'	'forgive, pardon' прощать/простить
'be lucky' везти/повезти	'patronize, support' покровительствовать покровительствующий 'pat покровительство 'patronage'	'sympathize' симпатизировать симпатичен 'nice' симпатия 'sympath симпатизирующий
'be good for' годиться годный	'become attractive to' полюбить	
'suit, become'		

лужить	'sympathize'	'useful'
ке́ние 'service'	сочувствовать	полезный
	сочувственный 'sympathetic'	польза 'use'
	сочувствие 'sympathy'	
condole'		
ть	'assist, facilitate'	
ние 'sympathy, condo-	способствовать	
	способствованиe 'assis	
	'please'	
ть	угождать/угодить	
assistance'		

Here are some examples of relatively concrete assistance given to a DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER:

Он позволит *нашей нефтяной промышленности* решить свои проблемы.  
 [He-NOM will-allow our oil industry-DAT solve own problems-ACC.]  
 He will allow *our oil industry* to solve its own problems.

С этого момента президент покровительствовал *нашему мэру*.  
 [From that moment-GEN president-NOM supported our mayor-DAT.]  
 From that moment on, the president supported *our mayor*.

The next two examples illustrate 'serving' in a relatively metaphorical sense:

Оба больше жизни любили литерату́ру и ка́ждый по-своему, но одина́ково преданно служи́ли ей.  
 [Both-NOM more life-GEN loved literature-ACC and each-NOM in-own-way, but equally devotedly served it-DAT.]  
 They both loved literature more than life i id so in their own way,  
 but they served *it* with equal devotion.

Телевизио́нный коммента́тор заме́тил, что духо́вного соверше́нства мо́жно дости́чь просто́ ве́рой и служи́нием *добро́у*.  
 [Television commentator-NOM remarked, that spiritual perfection-GEN possi attain simply faith-INST and serving-INST good-DAT.]  
 The television commentator remarked that it is possible to attain spiritual perfection simply through faith and by serving *good*.

To express 'like' (any attraction weaker than full-blown love), Russian uses the verb meaning 'please' *нравиться/понравиться* with the dative, and the logical structure of the sentence is the inverse of what we have in English, so you-NOM please me-DAT, really means 'I like you'. Here's an example of how this works in Russian:



*Мне нравятся те, кому нравлюсь я.*

[Me-DAT please those-NOM, who-DAT please I-NOM.]

*I like people who like me.*

The use of the verb *идти* with the dative to mean 'suit, become' is idiomatic, but then so is the use of English *go* in phrases like *go well with*. In this example, age goes well with Shurochka's looks:

*У Шурочки был тот тип внешности, которому идёт возраст.*

[By Shurochka-GEN was that type-NOM appearance-GEN, which-DAT suits age-NOM.]

Shurochka had the type of appearance *that* is improved by age.

Idiomatic use of DATIVE-AN EXPERIENCER with *идти* to express 'suit, become'

DATIVE-AN EXPERIENCER in the context of 'harm'

## DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER 2—Harm

Russian has a rich variety of expressions for harm inflicted upon a DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER. Some of the most common ones are in this table. You will notice that *грозить* 'threaten' shows up both here and under verbs of communication above. This verb is just as ambiguous in Russian as it is in English; a threat can be construed either as a message delivered to a DATIVE: A RECEIVER or as a physical reality endured by a DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER.

### Expressions harm associated with DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER

'oppose, object' возражать/возразить возражение 'objection'	'annoy' досаждать/досадить	'bore' наскучить
'in spite of, against, contrary to' вопреки	'envy' завидовать	'grow hateful to' опостылеть
'hostile' враждебный	'forbid' запрещать/запретить	'bore, repel' осточертеть
'injure, harm' вредить/повредить вредный 'harmful' вред 'harm'	'betray' изменять/изменить измена 'betrayal'	'contradict' перечить
'threaten' грозить/пригрозить	'hinder, annoy' мешать/помешать помеха 'hinder, annoy'	'prefer (something else) over' предпочитать/предпочесть
'be rude to' грубить/нагубить	'take revenge' мстить/отомстить мсть 'revenge'	'hinder, interfere' препятствовать
'be impertinent to' дерзить/надерзить	'get on nerves of' надоедать/надоест	'oppose' противиться/воспротивиться противный 'opposite, contrary' противление 'opposition'
		'oppose, fight against' противоборствовать

teract'	'resist, oppose'	'difficult'
твовать	сопротивляться	трудный
gast'	сопротивляемость 'resistance,	'alien'
гавлять/	opposition'	чуждый
авить	'threaten'	
гавление 'opposing,	угрожать	'opposition'
	угроза 'threat'	оппозиция
	'offensive'	
гть	обидный	
ге 'contradiction'		

Here is an example of a physical threat to a DATIVE: EXPERIENCER, that of AIDS:

И если все “прелести” наркомании грозят *конкретному человеку, самому принимающему решение* “быть или не быть”, то СПИД, разносимы’ грязными шприцами ловцов грёз, грозит *нам всем*.

[And if all “charms”-NOM drug-abuse-GEN threaten concrete person-DAT, self receiving-DAT decision-ACC “be or not be”, then AIDS-NOM, spread-NOM dirty syringes-INST catchers-GEN dreams-GEN, threatens us all-DAT.]

And if all the “charms” of drug abuse threaten *a concrete person who himself makes the decision* “to be or not to be”, then AIDS, spread by dream-seekers’ dirty needles, threatens *us all*.

In the context of an amorous relationship, изменять/изменить refers more specifically to betrayal:

И тут жена стала ему изменять. Причём неразборчиво и беспрерывно.

[And here wife-NOM began him-DAT betray. Moreover promiscuously and continually.]

And then his wife began to cheat *on him*. And she did it promiscuously and continually.

Showing a preference for one thing over another causes some harm to that second thing. In Russian the item that is negatively impacted by preference appears in the dative:

Современный зритель часто *пышному зрелищу*, где герои декламируют монологи из классических пьес, предпочитает сладкое пение поп-звезд из Гонконга.

[Contemporary viewer-NOM often lavish spectacle-DAT, where heroes-NOM recite monologues-ACC from classical plays-GEN, prefers sweet singing-ACC pop-stars-GEN from Hong Kong-GEN.]

The contemporary viewer often prefers the sweet singing of pop-stars from Hong Kong *over the lavish spectacle* of heroes reciting monologues from classical plays.

The following two examples show harm expressed by an adjective and a noun, both triggering the use of the dative:

*Ей противен сам звук твоего гóлоса.*

[Her-DAT repulsive-NOM self sound-NOM your voice-GEN.]

The very sound of your voice is repulsive to *her*.

*Трамваи были отменены почти 40 лет назад, поскольку, по мнению властей, они создавали помехи транспортным потокам.*

[Trams-NOM were abolished-NOM almost 40-ACC years-GEN ago, since, according opinion-DAT authorities-GEN, they-NOM created hindrances-ACC transportation streams-DAT.]

Trams were abolished almost 40 years ago because according to the authorities there were a hindrance to the flow of transportation.

The preposition *вопреки* 'in spite of, against, contrary to' is used with the dative for adversarial relationships; here is an example of how it works:

*В последние месяцы вопреки своим идеологическим установкам он позволил провести лёгкую экономическую либерализацию в стране.*

[In last months-ACC contrary own ideological aims-DAT he-NOM allowed carry-out light economic liberalization-ACC in country-LOC.]

Contrary to his ideological aims, he allowed a mild economic liberalization to be carried out in the country in recent months.

## DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER 3—Having and needing

Remember that we started our discussion of the dative with verbs meaning 'give'. The final state that the dative ultimately reaches as a result of "giving" is "having". In this use of the DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER, the dative item experiences possession and related states of having, such as availability, having knowledge of, and need (the state when having is desired).

Expressions of having and needing associated with DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER

'belong to'

принадлежать

'known to'

известный

известно 'known to'

'be necessary to'

требоваться/потребоваться

'sufficient'

достаточный

достаточно 'sufficient(ly)'

'possible'

можно

	'required'	'characteristic of'
	обязательный	свойственный
	обязательно 'required'	свойственно 'characteristic of'
ген 'needed'	'inherent, characteristic'	
'need to'	присущий	

Here are some examples using the trigger words in the table to express states of having:

*Вам, скорее всего, потребуются большие суммы, чем обычно.*

[You-DAT, rather all-GEN, will-be-needed larger sums-NOM, than usual.]

*You will probably need larger sums of money than usual.*

*Ему для равновесия с миром достаточно два-три близких человека.*

[Him-DAT for balance-GEN with world-INST sufficient two-three close people-NOM.]

*To keep his balance with the world he needs only two or three people to be close to.*

*Ему известны литературные тайны прошлого и будущего.*

[Him-DAT known-NOM literary secrets-NOM past-GEN and future-GEN.]

*He knows the literary secrets of the past and the future.*

In English we can say that people *have it in them* or that they *have a tendency* to do something, and this tendency that they have is a characteristic; here is a Russian example that uses this kind of logic:

*Людям свойственно надеяться и верить в хорошее.*

[People-DAT characteristically hope and believe in good-ACC.]

*People tend to hope and to believe in good.*

The most common way to express need and necessity is with *нужный/нужен* 'needed' or *нужно/надо* 'need to', and similar to *нравиться/понравиться* 'like', the grammatical force of the construction is the opposite of what we have in English. Instead of our needing things, in Russian things are needed to us:

*А может, она вообще не нужна мне больше, эта любовь?*

[And perhaps, it-NOM at-all not needed-NOM me-DAT further, this love-NOM?]

*And perhaps I don't need it at all anymore, this love?*

*Нам надо работать так, чтобы был избран президент, способный гарантировать развитие России по демократическому пути.*

[Us-DAT needed work thus, so-that was chosen-NOM president-NOM, capable-NOM guarantee development-ACC Russia-GEN along democratic path-DAT.]

We have to work so that a president who is capable of guaranteeing Russian development along the path to democracy.

The DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER can express possession even without a trigger word like those in the table. Most frequently this happens with body parts which (barring catastrophic accident) belong to the person who inhabits the body. The grammatical logic of the following three sentences is as follows. Russian 'the soldier broke *to him* the head' is equivalent to 'the soldier broke *his* head' because *he* experiences having the head (and the damage thereto). In the same way, 'the old woman looks *to me* into the mouth' is equivalent to 'the old woman looks at *my* mouth', and 'the woman places *to me* onto shoulder hand' is equivalent to 'the woman places her hand on *my* shoulder'.

Солдát проломíл ему́ голову́ бляхой.  
[Soldier-NOM broke him-DAT head-ACC name-plate-INST.]  
The soldier broke *his* head with the name-plate.

(By the way, the soldier broke someone else's head, not his own. If it had been his own head, we would see *себе́* [self-DAT] '*himself*' instead of *ему́*.)

Стару́ха смóтрит мне́ прýмо в рот и ждёт разу́много совёта.  
[Old-woman-NOM looks me-DAT straight into mouth-ACC and waits reasonable advice-GEN.]  
The old woman looks right at *my* mouth and waits for reasonable advice.

Жёнщина кладёт мне́ на плечó рýку худúю, как птíчья ла́па.  
[Woman-NOM places me-DAT onto shoulder-ACC hand thin-ACC, li NOM.]  
The woman places her hand on *my* shoulder, and it is thin, li

Водíтель остано́вил маши́ну, отрёзал *звёрю* хвост, и уёхал.  
[Driver-NOM stopped vehicle-ACC, cut-off animal-DAT tail-ACC, and rode-away.]  
The driver stopped his vehicle, cut off the *animal's* tail, and drove away.

The only significant exception to the rule that this kind of possession involves body parts is the use of the DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER with the word *конёц*; note that this is parallel to our use in English of *to* with this word as in the translation of this example:

Конца́ *беспоко́йству* не вíдно.  
[End-GEN upset-DAT not visible.]  
There's no end *to the upset* in sight.

In English when we want to talk about the lack of an opportunity, we can say that someone *has no one to turn to, has nowhere to go, has nothing to hope for*. Russian can express this state of not having a choice by putting the prefix *не-* on the missing item and using the DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER, as in these examples:

Я прошу прощения за излишние подробности в описании, но мне просто  
 некому об этом рассказать.

[I-NOM beg forgiveness-GEN for excessive details-ACC in description-LOC, but  
 me-DAT simply no-one-DAT about this-LOC tell.]

I beg your forgiveness for the excessive detail in my description, but I simply don't  
 have anyone to tell this to.

Обещали, что честным людям ничего бояться.

[Promised, that honest people-DAT nothing-GEN fear.]

They promised that *honest people have* nothing to fear.

## DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER 4—Age, environment, and emotions

This use is the grab-bag for all kinds of other experiences encountered by a DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER. The logic here is that something is happening in the outside world that is causing a change or a feeling in the DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER. A constant force exerted by external reality is the unrelenting march of time. As a result we age, and in Russian we experience this process in the dative case. This is why we ask *Сколько вам лет?* [How-many you-DAT years-GEN?] 'How old are you?' and we reply *Мне двадцать лет* [Me-DAT twenty-NOM years-GEN] 'I am twenty years old' The verb *исполняться* 'complete' is also associated with the accumulation of birthdays, as in this example:

*Легендарному Вану Клиберну, завоевавшему в 1958 году в Москве первую  
 премию на конкурсе имени П. И. Чайковского, исполняется 60 лет.*

[Legendary Van Cliburn-DAT, won-DAT in 1958 year-LOC in Moscow-LOC first  
 prize-ACC at competition-LOC name-GEN P. I. Tchaikovsky, completes 60-NOM  
 years-GEN.]

*The legendary Van Cliburn, who won first prize at the P. I. Tchaikovsky competi-  
 tion in Moscow in 1958, is 60 years old.*

Environmental conditions can induce feelings of heat and cold, as in *ей холодно/жарко* [her-DAT cold/hot] '*she feels cold/hot*', as well as a host of emotions, as in these examples:

*Мне весело оттого, что день солнечный.*

[Me-DAT happily from-that, that day-NOM sunny-NOM.]

*I'm happy because it's a sunny day.*

*В тюремных камерах они жили дружно. На воле им стало тесновато.*

[In prison cells-LOC they-NOM lived harmoniously. At freedom-LOC them-DAT  
 became rather-constrained.]

*They lived harmoniously in their prison cells. In freedom they began to feel con-  
 strained.*

A common idiom is the use of всё равно, literally 'all equal', with the dative case to express the feeling of indifference, as in this example:

Предположим, я его убью, ему будет всё равно, где я и что со мной.

[Suppose, I-NOM him-ACC kill, him-DAT will-be all equal, where I-NOM and what-NOM with me-INST.]

Suppose I kill him, then *he* won't care where I am or how I'm doi

EXPERIENCER  
expresses  
indifference with  
всё равно.

Another idiom for apathy is the use of the dative with не до [not to], meaning 'isn't interested in/doesn't want':

Бывает, ты разговариваешь с женщиной, приводишь красноречивые доводы и убедительные аргументы. А ей не до аргументов.

[Happens, you-NOM converse with woman-INST, present eloquent reasons-ACC and convincing arguments-ACC. But her-DAT not to arguments-GEN.]

It happens that you are conversing with a woman, presenting eloquent reasons and convincing arguments. But *she* is not interested in/doesn't care about arguments.

DATIVE:  
EXPERIENCER  
expresses apath  
with не до.

The dative can also be used for feelings of overall well-being, and the verb становиться/стать 'become' frequently appears when there is a change in feeling:

Народному артисту Юрию Владимировичу Никулину утром 20-ого августа стало хуже.

[National artist Yuri Vladimirovich Nikulin-DAT morning-INST 20th-GEN August-GEN became worse.]

National artist Yuri Vladimirovich Nikulin began feeling worse on the morning of August 20th.

DATIVE: AN  
EXPERIENCER  
expresses  
changes in well-  
being with  
становит  
стать.

От этой сделанной улыбки мне становится не по себе.

[From that artificial smile-GEN me-DAT becomes not along self-DAT.]

That artificial smile makes *me* feel uneasy.

## DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER 5—Modal meanings

Experiences of difficulty or ease, as in нам это трудно/легко [us-DAT that-NOM hard/easily] 'that's hard/easy for us' belong here, as do experiences of comprehensibility, which overlap somewhat with the concepts of possession and availability discussed above:

Вам это не понятно? А мне это абсолютно ясно.

[You-DAT that-NOM not understandable? But me-DAT that-NOM absolutely clear.]

You don't understand it? But it's absolutely clear to *me*.

DATIVE: AN  
EXPERIENCER  
expresses  
difficulty, ease,  
obligation, and  
desire.

With an infinitive the dative expresses mild compulsion, something on the order of English *should* or *ought*. Here is an example to illustrate:

Я не знал, идти мне за ней следом или в противоположную сторону.  
[I-NOM not knew, go me-DAT behind her-INST or in opposite side-ACC.]  
I didn't know whether I should follow her or go in the opposite direction.

The various experiences that people can have doing things — feeling like it, having to do it, succeeding at it — can likewise be expressed with the dative case, often by verbs that have no subject. Here are some common verbs used this way, followed by some examples (note that when these verbs have no subjects, they appear with the “default” agreement of neuter singular):

ns	feeling	having to associated	ith DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER
'necessary'		'have to, happen to'	'feel like, want to'
о/остаться		приходиться/прийтись	хотеться/захотеться
be destined to, have to'		'succeed'	
ь		удаваться/удаться	

И врачам ничего не остаётся, как совершенствовать свои познания в мире захлёстывающих рынок уже современных, синтетических наркотиков.  
[And doctors-DAT nothing-GEN not remains, how perfect own knowledge-ACC in world-LOC overflowing markets-ACC already modern synthetic narcotics-GEN.]  
And doctors have no choice but to perfect their knowledge of the world where markets are overflowing with modern synthetic narcotics.

Российские и французские инженеры продемонстрировали автоматический вездеход, которому предстоит исследовать поверхность Марса.  
[Russian-NOM and French engineers-NOM demonstrated automatic landrover-ACC, which-DAT is-destined explore surface-ACC Mars-GEN.]  
Russian and French engineers demonstrated an automatic landrover which is destined to explore the surface of Mars.

По мнению экспертов, рано или поздно правительству, делающему ставку на сближение с НАТО, придётся решиться уничтожить ракеты или продать их.  
[Along opinion-DAT experts-GEN, early or late government-DAT, making-DAT stake-ACC on rapprochement-ACC with NATO-INST, must decide destroy missiles-ACC or sell them-ACC.]  
According to the experts, sooner or later a government that is counting on rapprochement with NATO will have to decide either to destroy its missiles or to sell them.

В первые три месяца вам удастся использовать весь свой потенциал.  
[In first three months-ACC you-DAT will-succeed use all own potential-ACC.]  
In the first three months you will succeed in making the most of all your potential.



Вйжу, что *мальчику* не хочется идти в школу.

[See, that boy-DAT not wants go to school-ACC.]

I see that *the boy* doesn't want to go/doesn't feel like go to school.

## DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER 6—Victims and beneficiaries

In Russian you can add *-ся/-сь* to many ordinary verbs and use the DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER to describe how the subject is experiencing an action. The grammatical implication here is that instead of the subject performing the action, the action is something that is happening to the subject. So you can say both *он икает* [he-NOM hiccups] 'he is hiccupping' and *ему икается* [him-DAT hiccups] 'he has the hiccups'; in the latter case hiccupping is something that is happening to the person. In the next example it would certainly be possible to say instead *некоторые эмигранты живут плохо* [some emigrants-NOM live badly] 'some emigrants live badly', but by adding *-ся/-сь* to the verb and putting the logical subject in the dative case, the author of this sentence implies that the emigrants are victims rather than masters of their fate:

Мы слышали, что *некоторым эмигрантам* живётся плохо.

[We-NOM heard, that some emigrants-DAT lives badly.]

We heard that *some emigrants* are living badly.

Ultimately anything can happen to us or for us, and the dative case can be inserted into sentences just to explain who was affected by some event. In both of the examples below, the dative items could easily be removed and the sentences would be perfectly normal and grammatical. The dative items are there to provide some extra information, telling us who was impacted by the event.

Футбол и хоккей заменяют *русским людям* религию и культуру.

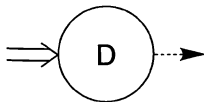
[Soccer-NOM and hockey-NOM replace Russian people-DAT religion-ACC and culture-ACC.]

For *Russians*, soccer and hockey take the place of religion and culture.

Мы перегородили *всем* дорогу.

[We-NOM blocked everyone-DAT road-ACC.]

We blocked *everyone's* way.



A force (arrow) arrives at a  
DATIVE: A COMPETITOR (circle labeled D), which  
s the potential to exert a force (dotted arrow)

## DATIVE: A COMPETITOR 1— Matching forces

Remember that the hallmark of the dative is that a dative item has the potential to do something. Grammatically, this means that it can potentially be the subject of a sentence, a role that is usually marked with the nominative

case. The fact that a dative item is potentially a nominative item implies a comparison between the dative and the nominative. The uses of the DATIVE: A COMPETITOR exploit this comparison, for here we see the dative item in competition with a nominative item. In some instances the two items are evenly matched and participate in a symmetrical relationship as equal competitors. In other instances the dative item exerts a force to which the nominative item submits, giving the dative an advantage over the nominative.

In identifying an equal competitor, the meaning of the DATIVE: A COMPETITOR overlaps somewhat with the benefit meaning of DATIVE: AN EXPERIENCER, particularly if the two parties are equally engaged in a harmonious activity. Here are some words that typically trigger the meaning of roughly equally matched forces, as well as examples of how they are used:

Examples of equal or matching forces associated with DATIVE: A COMPETITOR

'accompany (music) аккомпанировать аккомпанирование 'accompaniment'	'withstand; be opposite (of stars) противостоять	'akin to' сродни
'agreeing with' согласно	'equal' равняться равный 'equal' равносильный '(equally) matched'	'identical' идентичный 'identical' идентичность 'indentialness'
'correspond, be responsive' отвечать	'correspond' соответствовать соответствующий 'correspondi appropriate	'isomorphic' изоморфный изоморфность 'isomorphism'
'sing along' подпевать подпевание 'singing along'	соответствие 'correspondence'	'orthogonal' ортогональны '
'precede' предшествовать 'precede' предшествование 'precession'	'accompany' сопутствовать сопутствие 'accompani	'similar' подобный 'simil  'in harmony with' созвучный 'in harmony with'

Система безопасности на авиалиниях этих стран не отвечает международным стандартам.

[System-NOM security-GEN on airlines-LOC those countries-GEN not corresponds international standards-DAT.]

The security system used by the airlines of those countries does not correspond to international standards

Отношения между странами не соответствуют возможностям.

[Relations-NOM between countries-INST not correspond possibilities-DAT.]

The relations between the countries are not what they could be

Его эстетика созвучна железнодорожной катастрофе.

[His aesthetics-NOM in-harmony-with-NOM railroad catastrophe-DAT.]

He has the aesthetics of a train wreck .

## DATIVE: A COMPETITOR 2—Submission to a greater force

Submission has many entailments, among them belief and obedience. If you submit yourself to someone, you will trust this person, you will fall under the influence of this person, being surprised and amazed at their acts, and you will follow where they lead, possibly to the point of imitating them. In Russian, you will surrender yourself to a dative item, a competitor with an advantage.

DATIVE  
COMPETITOR can  
find  
competitor  
an advantage.

### Expressions of submission associated with DATIVE: COMPETITOR

'believe' вѣрить/поверить вѣрный 'loyal' вѣрность 'faithfulness, loyalty'	'give in to' поддаваться/поддаться	'rejoice at' радоваться/обрадоваться
'marvel at' дивиться	'be subject to' подлежать подлежащий 'subject to'	'surrender, yield to' сдаваться/сдаться
'trust' доверять(ся)/ доверить(ся) доверие 'trust'	'imitate' подражать подражание 'i'	'follow' следовать/последовать следование 'movement, proceeding'
'owe, be obligated to' должен	'submit to, obey' подчиняться/подчиниться подчинѣнный 'subordinate to' подчинѣние 'subordination, subjection'	'be surprised at' удивляться/удивиться
'obey' повиноваться повиновение 'obedience'	'worship' поклоняться поклонение 'worship'	'be similar, assimilate' уподобляться/уподобиться подобный 'similar' уподобление 'likening, comparison'
'undergo, be subject to' подвергаться/подвергнуться подверженный 'subject to' подвержение 'liability to'	'submit to, obey' покоряться/покориться покорный 'obedient to'	'yield to' уступать/уступить уступка 'concession, compromise'
		'study' учиться/научиться учащийся 'student'

These first three examples illustrate subordination in its more ordinary aspects:

Политика президента подверглась вновь *рѣзкой критике* на прошлой неделе.  
[Policy-NOM president-GEN subjected again sharp criticism-DAT on last week-LOC.]

The president's policy was subjected to *sharp criticism*

Только здоровые люди в состоянии выйти из душевного потрясения, а психически больные поддаются *этому*, доходят до безумия и ... проявляют себя в творчестве.

[Only healthy people-NOM in condition-LOC come-out from emotional shock-GEN, but emotionally ill-NOM give-in this-DAT, reach to insanity-GEN and ... express self-ACC in artwork -LOC.]

Only healthy people have the capacity to overcome emotional shock, but the mentally ill give in to it, go insane, and ... express themselves in works of art.

Я подчинился естественному ходу жизни.  
[I-NOM gave-in natural course-DAT life-GEN.]  
I gave in to the natural course of life.

ing one's beliefs and emotions is specifically illustrated in the following two examples:

Бабушка радостно кивает, она верит каждому моему слову.  
[Grandmother-NOM joyously nods, she-NOM believes every my word-DAT.]  
Grandmother nods joyously, she believes my every word.

Она никогда не удивлялась тому, что он почти не нуждается во сне.  
[She-NOM never not surprised that-DAT, that he-NOM almost not need in sleep-LOC.]  
She was never surprised by the fact that he hardly needed any sleep.

### DATIVE: A COMPETITOR 3—к 'to, toward'

The two prefixes most commonly associated with the dative case, к 'to, toward' and по 'along, according to', both use the DATIVE: A COMPETITOR. In both instances, the preposition points us toward something that can exert influence, guiding the nominative subject's action. Approach, as opposed to arrival, implies some level of subordination. When you reach a destination by means of к + DAT, you will have to interact with it rather than just arriving at it. Remember that the primary use of к is to indicate an approach to a human destination, as opposed to arrival at a non-human destination, for which we use в or на and the accusative case. Compare the three sentences in the table below:

some non-human destinations require в + ACC

Дочь пошла	в	школу.
[Daughter-NOM went	in	school-ACC.]
My daughter went	to	school.

some non-human destinations require на + ACC

Дочь пошла	на	почту.
[Daughter-NOM went	on	post-office-ACC.]
My daughter went	to	the post-office.

all human destinations require к + DAT

Дочь пошла	к	врачу.
[Daughter-NOM went	to	doctor-DAT.]
My daughter went	to	the doctor.

к and по describe motion subordinate to DATIVE: COMPETITOR.  
к + DATIVE: COMPETITOR 'to, toward'  
к + DATIVE: COMPETITOR is used with human destinations.

Here is a naturally-occurring use of *к* with a human destination:

Он деловито подходил ко мне.

[He-NOM in-business-like-manner approached to me-DAT.]

He approached *me* in a business-like manner.

Cities and countries are often personified or used to represent the people that live there, and in these instances they will trigger the use of *к* as well. Notice how Washington and Russia serve this purpose in the following two examples:

Российский президент ещё может обратиться к Вашингтону

доплатить за Аляску.

[Russian president-NOM still can turn to Washington-DAT with demand-INST additionally-pay for Alaska-ACC.]

The Russian president can still turn to *Washington* and demand further payment for Alaska.

Во Франции нарастает интерес к России.

[In France-LOC grows interest-NOM to Russia-DAT.]

In France there is a growing interest in *Russia*.

One of the important distinctions between a non-human destination and a human one is that when we arrive at a person, we do not enter or otherwise physically encroach upon them, we just come nearer, going in that person's direction. This idea can be extended to physical locations in both space and time, as the following two examples attest:

Палау, архипелаг, состоящий из двухсот мелких островов, расположенных в 800 километрах к юго-востоку от Филиппин, стал 185-м членом ООН.

[Palau-NOM, archipelago-NOM, consisting-NOM from two hundred small islands-GEN, located-NOM in 800 kilometers-LOC to south-east-DAT from Philippines-GEN, became 185th member-INST UN-GEN.]

Palau, an archipelago consisting of two hundred small islands located 800 kilometers to the *southeast* of the Philippines, became the 185th member of the UN.

К одиннадцати часам я более или менее разобрался в ситуации.

[To eleven hours-DAT I-NOM more or less understood in situation-LOC.]

Toward *eleven o'clock* I more or less came to understand the situation.

As we have already seen with the accusative case, a destination can be conceived of in the metaphorical realm of purpose, as in this example:

В предисловии к его сборнику говорилось, что он работает фрезеровщиком на заводе.

[In foreword-LOC to his collected-works-DAT said, that he-NOM works milli machine-operator-INST at factory-LOC.]

In the foreword to *his collected works* it said that he works as a milling-machine operator at a factory.

Events frequently structure our lives, forcing us to interact with them. In the next pair of examples, there are two events involved. One is named directly, the examinations, and another indirectly through its location, the bed, which is where the drama of death is expected to take place.

Днём она готовилась к экзаменам.

[Day-INST she-NOM prepared to examinations-DAT.]

During the day she prepared for *the examinations*.

В тот же день к постели больного пригласили родных.

[In that very day-ACC to bed-DAT patient-GEN invited relatives-ACC.]

That very day they invited relatives to come to the patient's *bedside*.

There are many phenomena that likewise order our existence. In the next two examples  $\kappa$  indicates relationships to two particularly powerful phenomena, those of economic forces and substance abuse:

Был открыт японский центр, который будет готовить кадры для перехода к рыночной экономике.

[Was opened-NOM Japanese center-NOM, which-NOM will prepare personnel-ACC for transition-GEN to market economy-DAT.]

A Japanese center was opened to prepare personnel for the transition to *a market economy*.

По мнению врачей, уже первые пробы любого наркотика могут привести к формированию психической, а затем и физической зависимости.

[Along opinion-DAT doctors-GEN, already first trials-NOM any narcotic-GEN can lead to formation-DAT psychological-GEN and thereupon physical dependence-GEN.]

In the opinion of doctors, even the first use of any narcotic can lead to *the formation* of psychological, and thereupon physical, dependence.

Emotions are more abstract, but no less influential forces, and here are two examples of how they interact with  $\kappa$ . Note that the second one,  $\kappa$  *с сожалением* 'unfortunately' is so conventional that it is used as an adverb.

К ужасу турецких властей жертвой всё чаще становятся иностранцы.

[To horror-DAT Turkish authorities-GEN victim-INST all more-frequently become foreigners-NOM.]

To *the horror* of Turkish authorities, the victims are more and more frequently foreigners.

Отобра́ли, к сожа́лению, лишь́ четвёрту́ю часть.  
[Removed, to regret-DAT, only fourth part-ACC.]  
*Unfortunately, they only removed a fourth of it.*

## DATIVE: A COMPETITOR 4—по ‘along’

The preposition *по* triggers the one use of the dative case that is not particularly associated with human beings. ‘Along’ is perhaps the translation of *по* that best captures its nature, since *по*’s job is to indicate paths. When one selects a path, one must then follow it, submitting to its contours; thus the path exerts an influence much like that suggested by the verbs of subordination above. This is why the use of *по* is classed under the DATIVE: A COMPETITOR. Our first example is of the path taken by someone who is so happy she feels like she is walking on air:

Э́то сча́стье неслó её по во́здуху.  
[That good-fortune-NOM carried her-ACC along air-DAT.]  
That good fortune carried her through *the air*.

A shorter path is the area of a body part where somet person is hit by something:

Собира́ли све́дения о пожило́й же́нщине, безжа́лостно уби́той че́м-то  
тяже́лым по заты́лку.  
[Gathered information-ACC about elderly woman-LOC, ruthlessly murdered-LOC  
something heavy-INST along back-of-head-DAT.]  
They were gathering information about an elderly woman who was ruthlessly murdered when she was hit by some heavy object in *the back of the head*.

Electronic signals flow across telephone wires, making the telephone a path for communication, as in this example:

Ту́т-то незнако́мый же́нский го́лос по телефо́ну предло́жил познако́миться.  
[Suddenly unfamiliar woman’s voice-NOM along telephone-DAT suggested get-acquainted.]  
Suddenly an unfamiliar woman’s voice on *the telephone* suggested that they get acquainted.

With plural nouns, *по* often indicates a kind of place frequently visited, or something that regularly happens at a certain time or on a certain day of the week. The following two examples demonstrate how this works in the domains of space and time:

Зараба́тываем бо́льше ты́сячи в неде́лю. Че́рез день по ресто́ра́нам ходи́м.  
[Earn more thousand-GEN in week-ACC. Across day-ACC along restaurants-DAT go.]  
We earn more than a thousand a week. Every other day we go to *restaurants*.

По утрам он вместо гимнастических упражнений и чашки кофе пил портвейн.

[Along mornings-DAT he-NOM instead-of gymnastic exercises-GEN and cup-GEN coffee-GEN drank portwine-ACC.]

In *the mornings* instead of calisthenics and a cup of coffee he would drink portwine.

Distribution of one to each also describes a path indicated by по:

Разместили нас в гостинице Хилтон. По одному человеку в номере.

[Placed us-ACC in hotel-LOC Hilton. Along one person-DAT in room-LOC.]

They put us in the Hilton hotel. *One person* in each room.

There are many possible metaphoric paths. Here are two of the intellect. In the first example, solution must follow the contours of the issues, and in the second, an answer should follow the logic of the problem.

Решили создать межправительственную комиссию по торгово-экономическим вопросам.

[Decided create intergovernmental commission-ACC along market-economy issues-DAT.]

They decided to create an intergovernmental commission for *market-economy issues*.

Президент уклонился от чётких ответов по этой проблеме.

[President-NOM avoided from precise answers-GEN along that problem-DAT.]

The president avoided giving any precise answers concerning *that problem*.

When you follow logical paths, you are thinking or acting according to things, and 'according to' is one of the most frequent meanings of the preposition по. Here are a few examples to illustrate:

По нашей информации, обсуждалось ухудшение состояния больного.

[Along our information-DAT, discussed worsening-NOM state-GEN patient-GEN.]

According to *our information*, they discussed the patient's worsening state.

По официальным данным, пропало без вести около 10 тысяч человек.

[Along official data-DAT, lost without news-GEN around 10 thousand people-GEN.]

According to *official data*, around 10 thousand people are missing.

По заявлению врачей, мальчик психически совершенно здоров.

[Along statement-DAT doctors-GEN, boy-NOM psychologically completely healthy-NOM.]

According to the doctors' *statement*, psychologically the boy is completely healthy.



Following a certain path can also cause things to happen, as we see in this example:

То ли по *лени*, то ли по *гениальной своей интуиции*, наш режиссёр этого избежал.

[That whether along laziness-DAT, that whether along ingenious own intuition-DAT, our director-NOM that-GEN avoided.]

Whether it was due to *laziness* or due to *his own i* , our director managed to avoid that.

По participates in its share of idioms, such as по *всей видимости* [along all appearance-DAT] 'to all appearances'. Two of the most important idioms are по-*своему* [along-own-DAT] 'in one's own way', and сам по *себе* [self-NOM along self-DAT] 'in itself/on its own', illustrated in this example:

Самá по *себе* хартия не имеет юридической силы.

[Self-NOM along self-DAT charter-NOM not has legal force-GEN.]

In *itself*, the charter has no legal force.

## ЕPILOGUE

Our human capacity to perceive, appreciate, and react to the world around us is the foundation upon which the whole of the dative case is built. It should not surprise you that the name *dative* comes from the Latin word for 'give', since giving is the defining concept of human interaction, be it the presentation of gifts, the giving of good and evil, or the give and take of competition. We are never entirely passive: we take money, understand messages, interpret dreams, and struggle against the forces imposed upon us, matching or submitting to them. In Russian, as opposed to English, people see themselves as subject to atmospheric, temporal, and emotional factors in their environment, since being hot, twenty years old, and sad are all things that happen to people as DATIVE: EXPERIENCERS, rather than characteristics of them (as in English). Russian insists on treating people differently from all other items that serve as destinations, since people require the use of К + DATIVE: A COMPETITOR rather than В or НА + ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION. Surrender can take place on a variety of levels, entailing yielding one's behavior, beliefs, intellect, and sense of awe. The dative case seems to dwell on the negative, for with the dative case we find more words expressing harm than benefit, more words for relationships of submission than harmony, many ways to express imposed obligations, and a tendency for body parts to incur damage. Perhaps as human beings we are more adept at noticing and expressing our frustrations than our delights.

**GENITIVE Forms****Feminine declension nouns**

hard type: 'room'	singular	plural
кóмнаты	кóмнат	
-ь: 'talent'	singular	plural
спосóбности	спосóбностей	

soft type: 'week'	singular	plural
недéли	недéль	

**Masculine declension nouns**

hard type: 'courtyard'	singular	plural
дворá	дворóв	

soft type: 'nail'	singular	plural
гвоздý	гвоздéй	

**Neuter declension nouns**

hard type: 'body'	singular	plural
тéла	тел	

soft type: 'schedule'	singular	plural
расписáния	расписáний	

**Adjectives**

hard type: 'first'	feminine	masculine
пéрвой	пéрвого	

neuter	plural
пéрвого	пéрвых

soft type: 'last'	feminine	masculine
послéдней	послéднего	

neuter	plural
послéднего	послéдних

**Pronouns**

'I'	'we'
меня	нас

'you' informal	'you'
тебý	вас

'she' (н)её	'he' (н)его
-------------	-------------

'it' (н)его	'they' (н)их
-------------	--------------

'who' когó	'what' чегó
------------	-------------

'oneself' себя
----------------

'this' feminine éтой	masculine éтого
----------------------	-----------------

neuter éтого	plural éтих
--------------	-------------

'all, every' feminine всей	masculine всегó
----------------------------	-----------------

neuter всегó	plural всех
--------------	-------------

**Possessives**

feminine 'my' моéй	masculine моегó
--------------------	-----------------

neuter моегó	plural мо́их
--------------	--------------

'our' нáшей	нáшего
-------------	--------

нáшего	нáших
--------	-------

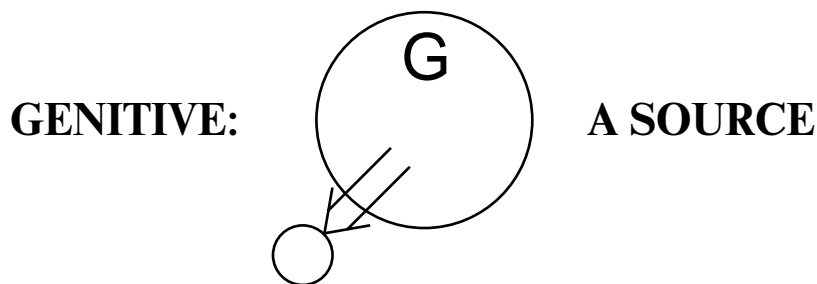
**Numerals**

'one' feminine однóй	masculine одногó
----------------------	------------------

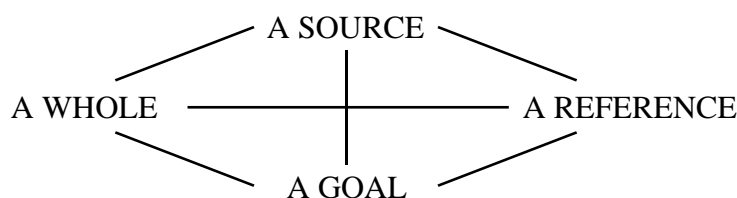
neuter одногó	plural однóих
---------------	---------------

'two' двух	'three' трéх
------------	--------------

'four' четырéх	'five' пятí
----------------	-------------



The genitive network:



## PROLOGUE

Let's start by looking at an example:

Фидель Кáстро на пятом съезде *своёй компáртии* говорýл без умóлку шесть часóв и сóрок три минúты, что достóйно *рекóрдов Кни́ги Гýннесса*.

[Fidel Castro-NOM at fifth congress-LOC own communist-party-GEN spoke without pause-GEN six-ACC hours-GEN and forty-three minutes-ACC, that worthy records-GEN Book-GEN Guinness-GEN.]

At the fifth congress *of his communist party*, Fidel Castro spoke without *pause* for *six hours* and forty-three minutes, an accomplishment worthy *of the Guinness Book of Records*.

Here we see six uses of the genitive case in a single sentence, one that is not even particularly long or unusual. If there were an entry for Russian case use in the Guinness Book of World Records, the genitive case would walk off with multiple honors, among them:

- The genitive is the most used case in Russian. The likelihood of finding sentences with six uses of any other case is relatively small.
- The genitive is used with over one hundred prepositions (about 40 simple prepositions and 70 complex ones), vastly more than all the other cases combined.
- The genitive is the only case that forms chains of consecutive uses, as in our example above: *достóйно рекóрдов Кни́ги Гýннесса* [worthy records-GEN Book-GEN Guinness-GEN], literally ‘worthy *of the records of the Book of Guinness*’.
- The genitive is probably the most complex case in Russian, and the basic idea of the genitive is perhaps the hardest to grasp.

The genitive case is the most frequent case, has the most prepositions, forms chains, and has the most complex meaning.

An overview of the genitive case.

The genitive case diverts attention to another item.

An abstract definition of the genitive.

These might look like formidable hurdles, but our strategy is to tackle the last item on the list, the meaning of the genitive. After that, all the other “problems” will become opportunities for easy success.

The uses of the genitive will be described in terms of four categories: GENITIVE: A SOURCE, GENITIVE:: A GOAL, GENITIVE:: A WHOLE, and GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE. The four labels used here hint at both what the basic meaning of the genitive is and why it is so hard to make sense of it. The genitive is by nature an elusive beast, a sort of “back-seat driver” that is always handing off the responsibility of focusing attention to something else. When we say that something comes from a source, we generally aren’t as interested in the source as we are in the something that comes from it. The same goes for goals; while a goal is important, what we really care about is the person or thing that is headed for it. In the GENITIVE:: A WHOLE use, there is always another item that plays the role of the “part”, and of course when we are talking about something that is part of a whole, we are focusing our attention on the part more than on the whole. A reference point is something that we use to locate something else, and in its GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE use, the genitive serves as a mental address for other things. Rather than turning focus to the item it marks, the genitive deflects our focus away from it. It is this habit of retreating into the background that makes the genitive so hard to pin down. Passing the buck, by the way, also makes the chaining of genitives possible, allowing focus to bounce from one item to the next.

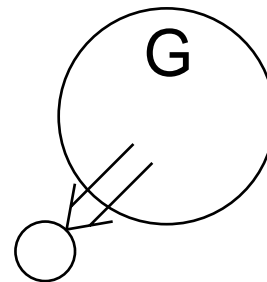
Looking at the labels, however, it is at first hard to understand what they have in common. After all, a source and a goal seem to be opposites, and both involve movement, whereas whole and reference are static. If we compare the diagrams of the four uses, we see that the GENITIVE:: A GOAL is really the same as the GENITIVE: A SOURCE, just run in reverse, and furthermore the GENITIVE:: A WHOLE and GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE are simply the two endpoints of GENITIVE: A SOURCE. More abstractly, we could say that all of the diagrams support the following definition:

The genitive is a backgrounded item (big circle) that yields focus of attention to something else (small circle) which exists or maneuvers in its proximity.

In order to make sense of this definition we will have to examine the many faces of the genitive in action.

## GENITIVE: A SOURCE 1—Going to > coming from

The GENITIVE: A SOURCE meaning is always triggered by a preposition or word indicating removal or withdrawal from the genitive item. All three of the prepositions particularly important in expressing this meaning are often translated as ‘from’: из, с, and от. These three prepositions reverse the direction of motion described by the prepositions в, на, к in their meaning ‘to, toward’. Here again is the table comparing в, на, к, this time adding the reverse direction:



An item (small circle) departs from a GENITIVE: A SOURCE (circle labeled G)

## GOING TO

*some non-human destinations require* в + ACC

Дочь пошла́	в	шко́лу.
[Daughter-NOM went	in	school-ACC.]
My daughter went	to	school.

*some non-human destinations require* на + ACC

Дочь пошла́	на	по́чту.
[Daughter-NOM went	on	post-office-ACC.]
My daughter went	to	the post-office.

*all human destinations require* к + DAT

Дочь пошла́	к	врачу́.
[Daughter-NOM went	to	doctor-DAT.]
My daughter went	to	the doctor.

## COMING FROM

*non-human destinations that require* в + ACC use из + GEN when they are sources

Дочь пришла́	из	шко́лы.
[Daughter-NOM came	from	school-GEN.]
My daughter came (home)	from	school .

*non-human destinations that require* на + ACC use с + GEN when they are sources

Дочь пришла́	с	по́чты.
[Daughter-NOM came	from	post-office-GEN.]
My daughter came (home)	from	the post-of fice .

*all human destinations require* к + DAT and use от + GEN when they are sources

Дочь пришла́	от	врача́.
[Daughter-NOM came	from	doctor-GEN.]
My daughter came (home)	from	the doctor .

## GENITIVE: A SOURCE 2—из ‘from’

Here are some examples of the use of из to indicate a container or location from which something is removed:

На сту́льях и кровати лежа́ли ве́щи, вы́нутые из сундука́.  
[On chairs-LOC and bed-LOC lay things-NOM, taken-NOM from trunk-GEN.]  
On the chairs and bed lay things that had been taken out of the trunk .

Из сара́я вы́бежал ма́льчик.  
[From barn-GEN ran-out boy-NOM.]  
A boy ran out of the barn .

Comparison of three GENITIVE: A SOURCE prepositions meaning ‘from’: из, с, and от.

из + GENITIVE: A SOURCE ‘from’.

Он археолог, недавно вернулся из Якутии.  
 [He-NOM archeologist-NOM, recently returned from Yakutia-GEN.]  
 He's an archeologist, and he's recently returned from *Yakutia*.

ИЗ + GENITIVE: A  
 SOURCE 'from' in  
 metaphorical  
 domains.

ИЗ can also be used metaphorically to indicate abstract objects and refer to domains other than space. In the first of these two examples Hitchcock's films are the source of horrors, and in the second charity (shown by a very self-important hairdresser) is the source (and thereby the motive) for giving the person a seat in the beauty parlor. Note the use of English *from* and *out of* in these examples; the metaphorical extension of the source concept is something we share with Russian.

Иногда Вадик зарисовывал свои сны, похожие на ужасы из фильмов Хичкока.  
 [Sometimes Vadik-NOM drew his dreams-ACC, similar-ACC on horrors-ACC from films-GEN Hitchcock-GEN.]  
 Sometimes Vadik drew pictures of his dreams, similar to horrors from Hitchcock's *films*.

Я понимаю, что посажена в кресло из милости и вообще по сравнению с парикмахершей ничего не стою.  
 [I-NOM understand, that seated-NOM to chair-ACC from charity-GEN and in-general along comparison-DAT with hairdresser-INST nothing-GEN not be-worth.]  
 I understand that I have been given a seat *out of charity* and that in general in comparison with the hairdresser I am worthless.

ИЗ + GENITIVE: A  
 SOURCE in fixed  
 phrases  
 ИСХОДИТЬ ИЗ  
 'proceed from',  
 один из  
 'one of'.

ИЗ appears in numerous fixed phrases. Perhaps the two most common ones are *исходить из* 'proceed from; base one's assumptions on' and *один из* 'one of [a group of things]'. Here is an example for each of these uses:

Исходя из прошлого опыта, догадываюсь, что ...  
 [Proceeding from past experience-GEN, guess, that...]  
 Based on *past experience*, I guess that...

Один из часто встречаемых мотивов его произведений — сон.  
 [One-NOM from frequently encountered motifs-GEN his works-GEN — sleep-NOM.]  
 One *of the frequently encountered motifs* of his work is sleep.

ИЗ-ЗА + GENITIVE:  
 A SOURCE 'from  
 beyond;  
 because of'.

ИЗ forms two secondary prepositions, both of which can be used in concrete and metaphorical contexts. *Из-за*, literally means 'from beyond'. The first example below illustrates a concrete use, *из-за рубежа* [from-beyond border-GEN] 'from *abroad*', whereas the second is metaphorical, indicating a cause:

У этой фирмы тоже есть ресурсы из-за рубежа.  
 [By this firm-GEN also are resources-NOM from-beyond border-GEN.]  
 This firm also has resources from *abroad*.

Вре́мя от вре́мени она́ переставала́ краси́ться, из-за хандры́, и́ли из-за того́, что пропадала́ краси́лка, и́ли лень бы́ло е́хать в магази́н.

[Time-NOM from time-GEN she-NOM stopped dye from-beyond depression-GEN, or from-beyond that-GEN, that lost dye-NOM, or laziness-NOM was ride to store-ACC.]

From time to time she would stop dyeing her hair, whether from *depression*, or from *the fact* that there was no dye in the store, or because she just felt too lazy to go to the store.

Из-под is the other complex preposition, literally ‘from beneath’. The first example is of a concrete use, whereas the second is idiomatic:

Гла́вную опору́ выбива́ют у него́ из-под ног.

[Main support-ACC knock-out by him-GEN from-beneath feet-GEN.]

They are knocking his main support out from under *his feet*.

Сковорода́ свали́лась на бутылки́ из-под кефи́ра, кото́рые сто́ят во́зле плиты́.

[Frying pan-NOM fell on bottles-ACC from-beneath kefir-GEN, which-NOM stand next-to burner-GEN.]

The frying pan fell onto the *kefir* bottles that are next to the burner.

## GENITIVE: A SOURCE 3—с ‘from’

Just as из takes us on the path reversing the direction of в + ACC for something that is conceived of as a container, so с takes us on the path reversing на + ACC for something that is conceived of as a surface. The bee house was *on* the tree, the pinecone was *on* the ground, and the friends were *at* the language department, all using на for locations, and consequently с for removal from these locations.

Он снял пчели́ный до́мик с дере́ва.

[He-NOM removed bee house-ACC from tree-GEN.]

He removed the bee house from *the tree*.

Она́ подняла́ с земли́ ши́шку.

[She-NOM picked-up from ground-GEN pinecone-ACC.]

She picked up a pinecone from *the ground*.

Прия́тели с фи́лфа́ка не внуша́ли дове́рия.

[Friends-NOM from language-department-GEN not inspired confidence-GEN.]

Our friends from *the language department* did not inspire confidence.

Although the GENITIVE: A SOURCE preposition that is usually used with human beings is от, we do occasionally see human beings with с, particularly when they are viewed as a source of money, as in the common phrase Ско́лько с меня́? [How-much from me-GEN?] ‘How much *do I owe you* ?’, or the following example:

ИЗ-ПОД +  
GENITIVE: A  
SOURCE ‘from  
beneath’.

С + GENITIVE: A  
SOURCE ‘from’.

c + GENITIVE: A SOURCE with human beings when they serve as the source of funds.

c + GENITIVE: A SOURCE in the domain of time.

Правительство не собирает налог с проституток.  
[Government-NOM not collects tax-ACC from prostitutes-GEN.]  
The government does not collect a tax from *prostitutes* .

With time expressions, *c* can be used to indicate the time when something begins. Common examples are months and ages, as well as the fixed expression *c тех пор* [from those times-GEN] ‘from *that time on*’. Here are three examples to illustrate:

Райса с пяти лет клеила коробочки для пилюль.  
[Raisa-NOM from five years-GEN glued boxes-ACC for pills-GEN.]  
Raisa started gluing pill boxes *when she was five years old* .

С января по май вы будете в олимпийской форме.  
[From January-GEN along May-ACC you-NOM will-be in olympic form-LOC.]  
From *January* through *May* you will be in olympic form.

Я с детства мечтал о литературе.  
[I-NOM from childhood-GEN dreamed about literature-LOC.]  
I have dreamed about literature since *childhood* .

c + GENITIVE: A SOURCE in metaphorical domains.

Like any other preposition, *c* has its metaphorical uses. Here are a couple of examples to whet your appetite, one involving the source serving as a motive (the hangover causing the gloomy mood), and the other referring to an abstract numerical realm:

Ты являешься, когда Дудко с похмелья — мрачный.  
[You-NOM appear, when Dudko-NOM from hangover-GEN — gloomy-NOM.]  
You keep showing up when Dudko is gloomy because *he’s got a hangover* .

Слава Богу, мы начинали не с нуля.  
[Glory-NOM God-DAT, we-NOM started not from zero-GEN.]  
Thank God we weren’t starting from *zero* .

## GENITIVE: A SOURCE 4—от ‘from’

от + GENITIVE: A SOURCE ‘from’.

As our table above indicates, when a human being serves as GENITIVE: A SOURCE, you can usually expect to see the preposition *от*. The following example serves to illustrate both the use of *от* with human sources and the fact that *от* is frequently used with non-human sources as well:

По его лицу я понял, с каким удовольствием уехал бы он на юг от крика, от тещи, и от жены.  
[Along his face-DAT I-NOM understood, with what pleasure-INST leave would he-NOM to south-ACC from yell-GEN, from mother-in-law-GEN, and from wife-GEN.]  
From his face I understood how glad he would be to go south, away from *the yelling*, away from *his mother-in-law*, and away from *his wife* .



Whenever location is expressed in terms of *у* ‘by’ + GEN (see below under GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE), removal from that place is expressed with *от*. In Russian a person can stand *у окна́* [by window-GEN] ‘by *the window*’, and removal from this position is achieved by *от*:

Почти́ четы́ре шага́ мо́жно сде́лать в прогу́лке от *окна́* до *дверей*.  
 [Almost four steps-ACC possible do in walk-LOC from window-GEN to door-GEN.]  
 One can take almost four steps in walking from *the window* to the door.

The use of *от* with expressions of time is not particularly common, but here is an example:

В отве́тном письме́ Луто́хину от *пе́рвого ма́я* 1926 г. Го́рький дал бо́лее развёрнутую оце́нку поэ́зии Цвета́евой.  
 [In answer letter-LOC Lutokhin-DAT from first-GEN May-GEN 1926-GEN Gorky-NOM gave more extensive evaluation-ACC poetry-GEN Tsvetaeva-GEN.]  
 In his letter of response written to Lutokhin on *the first* of May, 1926, Gorky gave a more extensive evaluation of Tsvetaeva’s poetry.

In Russian dependence is expressed using the verb *зависеть* (or the noun *зависимость* or the adjective *зависимый*) *от* + GEN, as in this example:

Западноевропе́йские госуда́рства смо́гут уме́ньшить свою́ зави́симость от *стран-чле́нов ОПЕК*.  
 [West-European states-NOM can reduce their dependence-ACC from countries-members-GEN OPEC-GEN.]  
 West European states can reduce their dependence on *the OPEC member-countries*.

Just like *из* and *с*, *от* can identify a metaphorical source in terms of a cause. In the case of *от*, this is usually the cause of illness or death, although other causes can also come into play:

Её муж у́мер от *разрыва́* се́рдца.  
 [Her husband-NOM died from rupture-GEN heart-GEN.]  
 Her husband died from a heart *attack*.

Утвержда́ют, что Микела́нджело та́кже страда́л от *безу́мных мы́слей*.  
 [Claim, that Michelangelo-NOM also suffered from crazy thoughts-GEN.]  
 They claim that Michelangelo also suffered from *crazy thoughts*.

От *зажжённого* за окно́м *фонаря́* на полу́ коса́я зы́бка тень ра́мы.  
 [From lighted-GEN beyond window-INST lamp-GEN on floor slanting flickering shadow-NOM windowframe-GEN.]  
 From *the lighted lamp* outside the window there is a slanting, flickering shadow of the windowframe on the floor.

*от* indicates removal ‘from’ a location marked as *у* + GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE.

*от* + GENITIVE: A SOURCE in the domain of time.

*от* + GENITIVE: A SOURCE in the fixed phrase *зависеть от* ‘depend on’.

*от* + GENITIVE: A SOURCE in metaphorical domains.

## GENITIVE: A SOURCE 5—Withdrawal

Words indicating withdrawal trigger the use of GENITIVE: A SOURCE.

In addition to prepositions, some other words trigger the use of GENITIVE: A SOURCE. Like the prepositions, they all indicate motions of withdrawal from the genitive item, whether due to fear or disgust. Here is a table of the words you are likely to encounter, followed by a few examples:

### Expressions of fear and avoidance associated with GENITIVE: A SOURCE

'fear' боя́ться	'avoid' избега́ть/избежа́ть	'be shy' стесня́ться/постесня́ться
'abhor, have aversion' гнуша́ться/погнуша́ться	'beware' остерега́ться/остере́чься	'shun, avoid' сторони́ться/посторони́ться
'shy away from' дичи́ться	'be frightened' пуга́ться/испуга́ться	'be ashamed' стыди́ться/постыди́ться
		'shun, stand aloof' чужда́ться

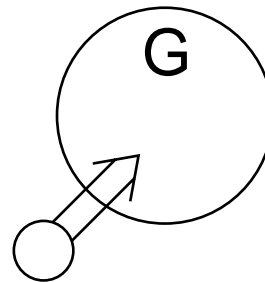
Она́ предава́лась удово́льствиям, разу́мно избега́я *неприятностей*.  
[She yielded pleasures-DAT, judiciously avoiding unpleasant-things-GEN.]  
She abandoned herself to pleasure, judiciously avoiding *unpleasant things* .

Они́ соверше́нно не стесня́лись *присутствия* люде́й.  
[They-NOM completely not were-shy presence-GEN people-GEN.]  
They were not the least bit shy *of the presence* of people.

Они́ не владе́ли англи́йским языко́м и стыди́лись *этого*.  
[They-NOM not commanded English language-INST and were-ashamed this-GEN.]  
They did not know English and were ashamed *of this* .

## GENITIVE:: A GOAL 1—до 'to'

As its name suggests, GENITIVE:: A GOAL identifies an item that is approached. Like GENITIVE: A SOURCE, GENITIVE:: A GOAL is always triggered by a preposition or other word. By far the most common is the preposition до 'to', which can be applied to the domains of space and time, as well as to metaphorical realms. Here are two examples of how до defines an approach in terms of physical space:



An item (small circle) reaches a GENITIVE:: A GOAL (circle labeled G)

ДО + GENITIVE:: A GOAL 'to'.

До *трамвая* я дошёл благополучно, неся чемодан то в правой, то в левой руке.

[To tram-GEN I-NOM went successfully, carrying suitcase-ACC that in right-LOC, that in left hand-LOC.]

I made my way to *the tram* successfully, carrying my suitcase first in my right hand and then in my left.

Ступеньки моего вагона не доходят до *земли*.

[Steps-NOM my train-car-GEN not go to ground-GEN.]

The steps of my train car do not reach *the ground*.

When used with time expressions, до can mean ‘before’, as in до *войны* [before war-GEN] ‘before *the war*’, but more frequently has a meaning very similar to English ‘until’, as in до *свидания* [until seeing-GEN] ‘goodbye (lit: until *we see each other again* )’. Here are a couple of examples to show how this works in sentences:

После тридцати шести лет разлуки, отец и сын беседовали до *утра*.

[After thirty-six years-GEN separation-GEN, father-NOM and son-NOM talked until morning-GEN.]

After being separated for thirty-six years, father and son talked until *morning*.

Выкупавшись в реке, он ложился на траву и спал до *обеда*.

[Having-swum in river-LOC, he-NOM lay-down on grass-ACC and slept until lunch-GEN.]

After taking a swim in the river, he would lie on the grass and sleep until *lunch*.

In relation to points in time, до performs the inverse of с, treating the point as a surface. Thus, as in the following example, one stretches a time line (of devotion to children’s literature) from one point (the end of the twenties) to another (the end of life) by using с and до in tandem:

Детская литература с конца 20-х годов до *конца* жизни была его лицом, его визитной карточкой, именем наконец.

[Children’s literature-NOM from end-GEN 20’s years-GEN until end-GEN life-GEN was his face-INST, his calling card-INST, name-INST in-the-end.]

From the late twenties until *the end* of his life, children’s literature was his face, his calling card, his name really.

This pairing of с and до motivates the use of до with the fixed expression до *сих/тех пор* [up-to this/that time-GEN] ‘until *this/that time*’:

Очевидно, до *сих пор* я казался ей воплощением здоровья и наивности.

[Obviously, until this time-GEN I-NOM seemed her-DAT incarnation-INST health-GEN and naivete-GEN.]

Obviously until *then* I had seemed to her to be health and naivete incarnate.

ДО + GENITIVE:: A GOAL means ‘until, before’ in the domain of time.

С + GENITIVE: A SOURCE ... ДО + GENITIVE:: A GOAL means ‘from ... to’ in the domain of time.

ДО + GENITIVE:: A GOAL in the fixed expression до *сих/тех пор* ‘until this/that time’.

ДО + GENITIVE:: A  
GOAL means 'to,  
up to' in  
metaphorical  
domains.

Metaphorically до can describe movement into various states, such as the politico-economic states in the first example below, and states of mind in the second one:

Не важно, что режим довёл страну до *международной изоляции*, до *массового исхода* интересов, до *бездёнежья*.

[Not important, that regime-NOM led country-ACC to international isolation-GEN, to mass exodus-GEN interests-GEN, to pennilessness-GEN.]

It's not important that the regime led the country to *a state of international isolation* , *mass exodus* of interests, and *pennilessness* .

Гогёна мучили мания преследования и депрессия, доведя его до *мыслей* о самоубийстве.

[Gaugin-ACC tormented mania-NOM persecution-GEN and depression-NOM, leading him-ACC to thoughts-GEN about suicide-LOC.]

Gaugin was tormented by persecution mania and depression, leading him to *thoughts* of suicide.

Similar to the time line illustrated above, до can be used to reach points on all kinds of scales, be they numerical or otherwise (extent of persecution, spectrum of painting styles), as in the following examples:

До *двухсот тысяч туристов* ежегодно приезжают сюда полюбоваться на животных, живущих в естественных условиях.

[Up-to two hundred thousand tourists-GEN yearly come here admire on animals-ACC, living-ACC in natural conditions-LOC.]

Up to *two hundred thousand tourists* a year come here to admire the animals living in natural conditions.

Но она решила преследовать своего мужа до *конца*.

[But she-NOM decided persecute own husband-ACC to end-GEN.]

But she decided to persecute her husband to *the end* .

Картины от сверхреализма до *демонизма* рождаются там.

[Pictures-NOM from super-realism-GEN to demonism-GEN are-born there.]

Pictures from super-realism to *demonism* are born there.

До also participates in an idiomatic phrase used to indicate that someone is not in the mood for something, namely DAT + не до + GEN:

Но Пушкину было не до *детей*.

[But Pushkin-DAT was not up-to children-GEN.]

But Pushkin wasn't in the mood for *children* .

The idiom не до  
+ GENITIVE:: A  
GOAL means 'not  
in the mood for' .

## GENITIVE:: A GOAL 2—для ‘for’ and прѳтив ‘against’

In the domain of purpose, the approach involved in GENITIVE:: A GOAL makes a gesture toward the genitive item, usually offering it some kind of benefit, and this is done with the preposition для ‘for’. Here are some examples to illustrate:

Я пишу не для *славѳстов*. Я пишу для *нормальных людѳй*.

[I-NOM write not for Slavists-GEN. I-NOM write for normal people-GEN.]

I don’t write for *Slavists* . I write for *normal people* .

Санаторий был закрытого типа, для *высокопоставленных людѳй*.

[Sanatorium-NOM was closed type-GEN, for highly-placed people-GEN.]

It was an exclusive sanatorium, for *highly-placed people* .

Придѳтся обращаться за пѳмощью к друзьям и знакомым для *решѳния* некоторых проблем.

[Is-necessary turn for help-INST to friends-DAT and acquaintances-DAT for solution-GEN certain problems-GEN.]

It is necessary to turn to friends and acquaintances in order *to solve* certain problems.

Similar to для is the preposition рѳди, usually translated as ‘for the sake of’:

Что с вами? Я же здесь рѳди *вас*.

[What-NOM with you-INST? I-NOM after-all here for-the-sake-of you-GEN.]

What’s with you? After all, I’m here for *your* sake.

An approach in the immediate vicinity of some person or thing can also be an act of aggression directed *against* GENITIVE:: A GOAL, and this is expressed by means of the preposition прѳтив ‘against’:

Когда была кампания прѳтив *взятничества*, Игорь рисовѳл краснорѳжего взяточника.

[When was campaign-NOM against bribery-GEN, Igor-NOM drew red-faced bribe-taker-ACC.]

When there was a campaign against *bribery* , Igor drew a picture of a red-faced bribe-taker.

Онѳ ищут средства не только прѳтив *вируса*, но и для упрѳщения защитных функций нашего организма.

[They-NOM seek means-GEN not only against virus-GEN, but also for simplification-GEN defense functions-GEN our body-GEN.]

They are looking for something not only to fight *the virus* , but also to simplify our body’s defense functions.

для + GENITIVE::  
A GOAL means  
‘for’ in the  
domain of  
purpose.

рѳди + GENITIVE::  
A GOAL means  
‘for the sake of’  
in the domain of  
purpose.

прѳтив +  
GENITIVE:: A GOAL  
means ‘against’  
in the domain of  
purpose.

ПРОТИВ +  
GENITIVE:: A GOAL  
means ‘opposite’  
in the domain of  
space.

Less frequently *против* can be interpreted concretely as mere location opposite rather than actual opposition, as in this example:

Против *корпуса* жгли костёр, наверное, сжигали ненужный хлам.  
[Opposite building-GEN burned bonfire-ACC, probably, burned unneeded trash-ACC.]

Opposite *the building* they burned a bonfire; they were probably burning unneeded trash.

ЖАЛЬ/ЖАЛКО +  
GENITIVE:: A  
WHOLE to express  
‘regret, pity’.

Finally, *жаль/жалко* ‘regret, pity’ that can be used in impersonal expressions with the genitive (or accusative):

Я люблю детские голоса, и мне при этом бывает невыразимо жаль *своёй уходящей жизни*.

[I-NOM love children’s voices-ACC, and me-DAT at this-LOC is inexpressibly regret own slipping-away life-GEN.]

I love children’s voices, and when I hear them I feel inexpressible regret *for my own life which is slipping away* .

### GENITIVE:: A GOAL 3—Actual approach

Words meaning  
‘get’, ‘approach’  
and ‘desire’ can  
trigger GENITIVE::  
A GOAL.

There are two groups of words associated with GENITIVE:: A GOAL. For the first group, the goal is actual, and it is touched, held to, acquired, desired, or deserved, in which case the use of the genitive case is obligatory. For the second group, the goal is potential, and it is sought, expected, or hoped for, in which case the use of the genitive is optional. We will look at each group in turn.

#### Words meaning ‘get’, ‘approach’, ‘desire’ associated with GENITIVE:: A GOAL

‘hold to’ держаться	‘worthy’ достойный	‘touch; concern’ касаться/коснуться
‘get, obtain’ добиваться/добиться	‘desire, wish’ желать/пожелать	‘listen to; obey’ слушаться/послушаться
‘attain, reach’ достигать/достигнуть/достичь	‘deserve, merit’ заслуживать/заслужить	‘be worth, deserve’ стоить
		‘receive, be awarded’ удостаивать/удостоить

Here are a few examples to whet your appetite:

Как вы достигли *такого нравственного совершенства*?

[How you-NOM attained such moral perfection-GEN?]

How have you attained *such moral perfection* ?

Он встаёт, отходит к окну. Кажется, я добилась *своего* — ему неприятно.

[He-NOM gets-up, walks to window-DAT. Seems, I-NOM got own-GEN — him-DAT unpleasant.]

He gets up and goes to the window. It seems that I have gotten *what I want* — he is uncomfortable.

Задача литературы состоит в том, чтобы показывать всех, кого обычно презирают, людьми, достойными *уважения* и *жалости*.

[Task-NOM literature-GEN consists in that-LOC, in-order show everyone-ACC, who-ACC usually despise, people-INST, worthy-INST respect-GEN and pity-GEN.]

Literature's task consists of depicting all people who are despised as people who are worthy of *respect* and *pity*.

As the table suggests, *касаться/коснуться* can indicate both physical 'touching', as in the first example below, as well as touching in the intellectual realm, usually rendered in English as 'concerning', as in the second example:

Он*́* как б*у*д*т*о танцевали какой-то медленный танец в красной комнате и не касались *пола*.

[They-NOM as if danced some slow dance-ACC in red room-LOC and not touched floor-GEN.]

It was as if they were dancing some slow dance in a red room and were not touching *the floor*.

Другие протоколы касаются *сотрудничества* в области ядерной энергетики и безопасности.

[Other protocols-NOM touch collaboration-GEN in area-LOC nuclear energy-GEN and security-GEN.]

Other protocols concern *collaboration* in the area of nuclear energy and security.

The verb *желать/пожелать* 'wish' is an essential but often invisible ingredient in many salutations. A complete sentence such as *Я желаю вам успеха* [I-NOM wish you-DAT success-GEN] 'I wish you *success*' shows the underlying structure of these expressions. Usually this formula is abbreviated, leaving only the thing being wished in the genitive case. Here are some common phrases that are built this way:

<i>Всего́ добро́го/лучше́го!</i>	[All good/best-GEN!]	<i>All the best !</i>
<i>Приятно́го аппети́та!</i>	[Pleasant appetite-GEN!]	<i>Bon appetit !</i>
<i>Спокойно́й но́чи!</i>	[Calm night-GEN!]	<i>Good night !</i>
<i>Счастли́вого пу́ти!</i>	[Happy trip-GEN!]	<i>Have a good trip !</i>

## GENITIVE:: A GOAL 4—Hypothetical approach

The difference between the words that require the GENITIVE:: A GOAL, and those that can use either the genitive or the accusative boils down to a difference between the status of the item that might be marked with the genitive. The verbs that require the genitive also tend to

The invisible role of *желать/пожелать* 'wish' in salutations using GENITIVE:: A GOAL.

GENITIVE:: A GOAL  
is used for  
hypothetical  
items, and  
ACCUSATIVE: A  
DESTINATION is  
used for specific  
items.

require that their object be something we know exists or can identify. You cannot attain a non-existent goal, nor can you touch something that isn't there. But you can look for something or wait for something regardless of whether the object of your quest exists. Cinderella sang "Some day my prince will come" before she ever met him, and indeed before she even knew that such a person really existed. She was waiting for a dream, and got lucky. The words that can take either the genitive or the accusative leave the door open for this possibility. When the item being sought is relatively non-specific, the genitive is used; when a specific item is sought, it will appear in the accusative.

#### Words that can govern GENITIVE:: A GOAL or ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION

'wait for' ждáть	'expect' ожидáть	'demand, require' требовать/потребовать
'seek' искáть	'request' просить/попросить	'want' хотéть/захотéть

The following table should give you some insight into how these verbs are used. Boris is a dreamer like Cinderella; he knows that he wants some things, but doesn't necessarily know exactly what they are. His brother Gleb is after specific items he can positively identify.

#### Comparison of GENITIVE:: A GOAL and ACCUSATIVE: A DESTINATION

Борис ждёт <i>автобуса</i> . (Boris isn't picky. He needs to get away from where he is. He'll take any bus that comes.)	[Boris-NOM waits bus-GEN.]	Boris is waiting for <i>a bus</i> .
Глеб ждёт <i>автобус</i> . (Gleb knows which bus he wants to take and is waiting for that one.)	[Gleb-NOM waits bus-ACC.]	Gleb is waiting for the bus.
Борис ищет <i>мэста</i> . (Boris is unemployed; any job commensurate with his qualifications will do.)	[Boris-NOM seeks place-GEN.]	Boris is looking for <i>a job</i> .
Глеб ищет своё <i>мэсто</i> в <i>зале</i> . (Gleb has a ticket, and he is trying to find the seat that matches the number printed on it.)	[Gleb-NOM seeks own place-ACC in hall-LOC.]	Gleb is looking for his seat.

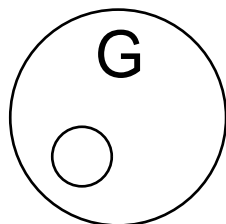
Of course, real examples aren't ordinarily so clear-cut. Here are a couple to illustrate:

*Чего* я жду *каждый* раз, *оказываясь* в *незнакомом* *мэсте*?  
[What-GEN I-NOM wait every time-ACC, finding-self in unfamiliar place-LOC?]  
*What is it that* I wait for every time I find myself in an unfamiliar place?

*Жизнь*, *котóрую* мы *вели*, *требовала* *значительных* *расходов*.  
[Life-NOM, which-ACC we-NOM led, required considerable expenditures-GEN.]  
The life we led required *considerable expenditures* .



## GENITIVE:: A WHOLE 1—‘Of’, possession, and color



An item (small circle) is a part of a  
GENITIVE:: A WHOLE (circle labeled G)

In this submeaning the genitive is a whole of which something else is a part. This accounts for all the uses of the genitive that can be translated as ‘of’, as well as numerical quantifications indicating amounts of things.

By far the most common use of the genitive is what we call its “bare case” usage, where it is not triggered by any other word. In this pristine state the genitive can indicate possessors, wholes (in relation

to parts), and other kinds of ‘having’ relationships that can motivate a meaning of ‘of’.

Perhaps the most basic use of GENITIVE:: A WHOLE is to identify wholes that parts belong to. In the physical realm we have parts of discrete objects (floors of buildings), as in the first example below. More abstractly one could say that realities are parts of the world, as in the second example. In the domain of time, hours are parts of the morning, day, evening, or night, motivating the use of утра [morning-GEN] ‘in the morning’, дня [day-GEN] ‘in the afternoon’, вечера [evening-GEN] ‘in the evening’, and ночи [night-GEN] ‘in the night’, as illustrated in the third example.

Мы занимаем целый этаж гигантского небоскрёба “Корветт.”  
[We-NOM occupy whole floor-ACC giant skyscraper-GEN “Corvette”.]  
We occupy a whole floor *of the giant Corvette skyscraper* .

Давайте трезво взглянем на реалии современного мира.  
[Let’s soberly glance on realities-ACC modern world-GEN.]  
Let’s take a sober look at the realities *of the modern world* .

В семь часов вечера она стояла возле его дома.  
[In seven-ACC hours-GEN evening-GEN she-NOM stood next-to his house-GEN.]  
At seven o’clock *in the evening* she was standing next to his house.

Since a part belongs to a whole, it can also be thought of as a possession of the whole, and GENITIVE:: A WHOLE is often used for this meaning, translatable into English with either the possessive form in ’s, or with *of*, as in these examples:

Не повторяйте ошибку президента.  
[Not repeat error-ACC president-GEN.]  
Don’t repeat *the president’s* error.

Я вообще люблю участвовать в жизни других людей: сватать, советовать, лечить.  
[I-NOM in-general love participate in life-LOC other people-GEN: do-match-making, advise, heal.]  
In general I love to participate in *other people’s* lives/in the life *of other people* : match-making, advising, and healing.

GENITIVE:: A WHOLE can express ‘of’ and numerical quantification.

GENITIVE:: A WHOLE expresses parts ‘of’ wholes.

GENITIVE:: A WHOLE expresses possession.

Он нашёл позвонóк *мáмонта* в райóне *вéчной мерзлоты́*.  
 [He-NOM found vertebra-ACC mammoth-GEN in region-LOC eternal frost-GEN.]  
 He found the vertebra *of a mammoth* in the *permafrost* region.

GENITIVE:: A  
 WHOLE expresses  
 membership in a  
 category.

The second use of the genitive in last example above, literally translatable as ‘the region *of eternal frost*’, demonstrates another meaning of ‘of’, namely belonging to a category, being of a type. Here are some examples:

Недáром я испы́тывал чýвство *стра́ха*.  
 [Not-without-reason I-NOM experienced feeling-ACC fear-GEN.]  
 It is not without reason that I experienced a feeling *of fear*.

Надéюсь, ты́ вы́растешь челоу́ком *большóй души́*.  
 [Hope, you-NOM grow-up person-INST big soul-GEN.]  
 I hope that you grow up to be a person *with a big soul*.

Был за́пах *дорогóго одеколóна* в ли́фте.  
 [Was smell-NOM expensive eau-de-cologne-GEN in elevator-LOC.]  
 There was the smell *of expensive eau-de-cologne* in the elevator.

GENITIVE:: A  
 WHOLE describes  
 color.

Russian characteristically uses the GENITIVE:: A WHOLE to describe colors of objects, using the logic of the English phrase *a horse of a different color*:

Он носíл гáлстук *бéлого цвéта*.  
 [He-NOM wore tie-ACC white color-GEN.]  
 He wore a *white* tie.

## GENITIVE:: A WHOLE 2—Events, idioms, and chains

GENITIVE:: A  
 WHOLE expresses  
 participation in  
 an event.

The items that participate in an event (subject, object, action) are related to each other; in English this relationship is expressed by *of*, and in Russian by the GENITIVE:: A WHOLE. In this first example, the event is *a man is planning to publish some books*. This event links the publication to the books:

Он плани́ровал изда́ние *сведóбных дéтских книг*.  
 [He-NOM planned publication-ACC edible children’s books-GEN.]  
 He planned the publication *of edible children’s books*.

In this next example the event is *unofficial literature exists*, with the entailment that existence is an attribute of unofficial literature:

Я ужé тогда́ знал о существова́нии *неофициáльной литерату́ры*.  
 [I-NOM already then knew about existence-LOC unofficial literature-GEN.]  
 At that time I already knew about the existence *of unofficial literature*.

The event *mentally ill people have produced creations* likewise links the creations to the people:

Всё больше хозяев музеев, галерей и критиков готовы рассматривать творения психически *больных людей* как искусство.

[All-NOM more proprietors-GEN museums-GEN, galleries-GEN and critics-GEN ready-NOM consider creations-ACC mentally ill people-GEN as art-ACC.]

More and more proprietors of museums and galleries, as well as critics, are ready to consider the creations *of mentally ill people* as art.

The bare use of GENITIVE:: A WHOLE appears in some idiomatic expressions, such as *чезо́* [what-GEN] ‘why’, *всего́* [all-GEN] ‘in all, altogether, just, only’, *своего́ ро́да* [own type-GEN] ‘in its own way, all to itself’, and *что́ нового́/интересного́*, etc. [what-NOM new/interesting, etc.-GEN] ‘what’s/is anything *new/interesting*, etc.’, as illustrated in the following examples (the first of which laments the dangers of narcotics):

Смерть ко́сит и́менно их, молодых и здоровых, *всего́* лишь раз попробовавших забы́ться и уже́ неспособных жить без э́того забы́тья.

[Death-NOM mows precisely them-ACC, young-ACC and healthy-ACC, all-GEN only time-ACC tried-ACC forget-self and already incapable-ACC live without this oblivion-GEN.]

They are precisely the ones that death mows down, the young and the healthy, who tried *just* once to forget their worries and were no longer capable of living without that oblivion.

Бо́кс, э́то, в о́бщем-то, *своего́ ро́да* искусство.

[Boxing-NOM, that-NOM, in general-LOC, own type-GEN art-NOM.]

Boxing is actually an art *all to itself*.

Кого́ интересу́ют призна́ния литерату́рного неудачника? Чтó *поучительного́* в его́ и́споведи?

[Who-ACC interest admissions-NOM literary failure-GEN? What-NOM enlightening-GEN in his confession-LOC?]

Who is interested in the admissions of a literary failure? Is there anything *enlightening* in his confession?

As mentioned in the introduction to this chapter, the genitive is the one case that can be repeated to form chains. It is specifically the GENITIVE:: A WHOLE in its bare case usage that makes this possible. Here is a chain of three consecutive genitive items:

Они́ боевики́ “*Партии исламского е́динства Афганиста́на*.”

[They-NOM revolutionary-fighters-NOM “Party-GEN Islamic unity-GEN Afghanistan-GEN.]

They are revolutionary fighters *of the “Islamic unity party of Afghanistan”*.

GENITIVE:: A WHOLE in idiomatic expressions.

The chaining capacity of GENITIVE:: A WHOLE.

## GENITIVE:: A WHOLE 3—Prepositions and prepositional phrases

GENITIVE:: A WHOLE with the prepositions *среди* ‘among’, *посреди* ‘in the middle of’, and *внутри* ‘inside’

GENITIVE:: A WHOLE is also used with the prepositions *среди* ‘among’, *посреди* ‘in the middle of’, and *внутри* ‘inside’. Here are some examples:

В перерыве *среди участников* начали циркулировать документы.  
[In break-LOC among participants-GEN began circulate documents-ACC.]  
During the break documents began circulating among *the participants* .

Однажды мы с мачехой бежали по улице, торопились в кино, а *посреди дороги* лежал районный алкоголик, но не дядя Колья, а другой.  
[Once we-NOM with step-mother-INST ran along street-DAT, hurried to cinema-ACC, and in-the-middle road-GEN lay regional alcoholic-NOM, but not uncle Kolya-NOM, but other-NOM.]  
Once my step-mother and I were running down the street, hurrying to the cinema, and in the middle *of the road* lay a local alcoholic, but it wasn’t uncle Kolya, it was someone else.

Самолёт взвыл, потом стал набирать отчаяние *внутри себя*.  
[Airplane-NOM howled, then began gather despair-ACC inside self-GEN.]  
The airplane howled and then began gathering despair within *itself*.

GENITIVE:: A WHOLE with prepositional phrases means ‘of’.

There are dozens of prepositional phrases in Russian that function as complex prepositions followed by the GENITIVE:: A WHOLE with the meaning ‘of’. The following table displays some of the more typical phrases, and is followed by a couple of examples:

### Prepositional phrases meaning ‘of’ associated with GENITIVE:: A WHOLE

в адрес	‘directed toward’	в течение	‘in the course of’
в виде	‘in the form of’	в условиях	‘in the conditions of’
в границах	‘within the bounds of’	в честь	‘in honor of’
в деле	‘in the case of’	в числе	‘in the number of, among’
в знак	‘as a mark/token of’	во время	‘in the time of, during’
в качестве	‘in the capacity of’	во имя	‘in the name of’
в направлении	‘in the direction of’	вне пределов	‘beyond the limits of’
в области	‘in the area of’	вне рамок	‘beyond the bounds/framework/ context of’
в отношении	‘in the relation of, with respect to’	за счёт	‘at the expense of’
в пользу	‘in favor of, on behalf of’	на основании	‘on the basis of’
в пределах	‘within the limits/bounds of’	на пути	‘on the path of’
в продолжении	‘in the course of’	по мере	‘according to the measure of, as far as’
в рамках	‘within the limits/framework of’	по поводу	‘on the occasion of, concerning’
в результате	‘as a result of’	по причине	‘by reason of’
в роли	‘in the role of’	по случаю	‘by reason of’
в смысле	‘in the sense of, as regards’	под видом	‘under the guise of’
в случае	‘in case of’	под именем	‘in the name of’
в сфере	‘in the realm of’		

## Prepositional phrases meaning ‘of’ associated with GENITIVE:: A WHOLE (continued)

под назв́анием	‘under the title of’	с по́мощью	‘with the help of’
под предл́огом	‘on the pretext of’	с це́лью	‘with the goal of’
при по́мощи	‘with the help of’	с то́чки зр́ения	‘from the point of view of’
при посре́дстве	‘by means of’	со сторо́ны	‘from the side of’
при усло́вии	‘on the condition of’	че́рез посре́дство	‘by means of’

В ра́мках *рабо́чего визита* в Тегера́н состоя́лась встре́ча на́шего специа́листа с предста́вителями бази́рующейся в Ира́не афга́нской оппози́ции.

[In frames-LOC working visit-GEN to Tehran-ACC took-place meeting-NOM our specialist-GEN with representatives-INST based-GEN in Iran-LOC Afghan opposition-GEN.]

In the context of *a working visit* to Tehran our specialist met with representatives of the Afghan opposition based in Iran.

Впервы́е в ка́честве *полнопра́вных уча́стников* междунаро́дного соглаше́ния вы́ступили пятна́дцать бы́вших сове́тских респу́блик.

[For-the-first-time in capacity-LOC full-fledged participants-GEN international agreement-GEN acted fifteen-NOM former Soviet republics-GEN.]

For the first time the fifteen former Soviet republics acted in the capacity of *full-fledged participants* in an international agreement.

## GENITIVE:: A WHOLE 4—Numerals and quantifiers

A part of a whole can also be interpreted as an amount of the whole. In this use, the genitive is viewed as a set of objects or as a substance, and portions of the genitive item are measured out. This accounts for the use of GENITIVE:: A WHOLE with numerals, with words meaning ‘add’, ‘subtract’, ‘full’, ‘enough’, as well as partitive uses.

Numerals come in many types. There are integers, fractions, and indefinite numerals such as *ско́лько* ‘how many’, *не́сколько* ‘some’, *сто́лько* ‘so many’, *мно́го* ‘many/much’, *немно́го* ‘not many/much’, *ма́ло* ‘few/little’, *бо́льше* ‘more’, *ме́ньше* ‘fewer/less’ *нема́ло* ‘not a few’, and many other words indicating amounts. In this sampling of quantifiers with GENITIVE:: A WHOLE, note that the quantifier and the quantified (in the genitive) do not have to appear next to each other in a sentence; in the third and fourth examples the genitive item quantified is the first word, whereas the quantifier is the last:

Я опозда́ла на пятна́дцать *мину́т*.

[I-NOM got-late on fifteen-ACC minutes-GEN.]

I was fifteen *minutes* late.

Он пел про́сто, гро́мко, моното́нно, но в э́том бы́ло сто́лько *прямоты́*, сто́лько *мужско́й и́скренности*, *беззащитности*.

GENITIVE:: A WHOLE expresses quantification with numerals, quantifiers, and in partitive expressions.

[He-NOM sang simply, loudly, in-monotone, but in that-LOC was so-much-NOM straightforwardness-GEN, so-much-NOM masculine sincerity-GEN, vulnerability-GEN.]

His singing was simple, loud, and monotonous, but in it there was so much *straightforwardness*, so much *masculine sincerity* and *vulnerability*.

*Желáющих* обуча́ться в япо́нском це́нтре оказа́лось чрезвыча́йно мно́го.  
[Desiring-GEN study in Japanese center-LOC turned-out exceedingly many-NOM.]  
*The number of people desiring* to study at the Japanese center turned out to be exceedingly large.

*Наро́ду* станови́лось всё бо́льше.  
[People-GEN became all-NOM more.]  
More and more *people* were there.

Although Russian does have words like *приблизительно* ‘approximately’, you can achieve a similar effect merely by inverting a numeral and the quantified genitive item. An approximate number of items is cited in the example below:

*Их* бы́ло *шту́к* пятьдеся́т.  
[They-GEN was items-GEN fifty-NOM.]  
There were approximately fifty *of them*.

## GENITIVE:: A WHOLE 5—‘Some’

It is not uncommon for the genitive to signal quantification without a numeral or other word to express the amount. The “default” amount is usually equivalent to English *some* (often called the “partitive” meaning in textbooks), and with perfective verbs and certain nouns referring to substances the so-called “second genitive” ending (in *-y/-ю*) is used, as in the first example below.

Я вы́пил *ча́ю*, кото́рый заказáл по телефо́ну.  
[I-NOM drank-up tea-GEN, which-NOM ordered along telephone-DAT.]  
I drank up *the tea* that I ordered by phone.

—А во́дка есть там? —Есть. —Дава́й лу́чше *во́дки* вы́пьем.  
[—And vodka-NOM is there? —Is. —Give better vodka-GEN drink-up.]  
—And do they have vodka there? —Yes. —Let’s drink (*some*) *vodka* instead.

—А у́тром она́ говори́т, без тебя́ не могу́. —А ты что? —Ну, успоко́ил, *де́нег* дал...  
[—And morning-INST she-NOM says, without you-GEN not can. —And you-NOM what-ACC? —Well, calmed, money-GEN gave...]  
—And in the morning she says, I can’t go on without you. —And what did you say?  
—Well, I calmed her down, gave her *some money*.

The inversion of a numeral and GENITIVE:: A WHOLE expresses approximation.

The partitive use of GENITIVE:: A WHOLE means ‘some’.

The genitive can have a quantitative meaning in the presence of a variety of words that express having or manipulating an amount of something. Some of these words are listed in the table and illustrated in the examples below:

#### Words expressing quantities associated with GENITIVE:: A WHOLE

‘sufficient quantity’ достáток достáточно ‘enough’	‘collect, pick up’ набира́ться/набра́ться	‘increase, add’ прибавля́ть(ся)/прибáвить(ся)
‘become filled’ исполня́ться/исполни́ться исполненный ‘full’	‘eat/have one’s fill’ наеда́ться/наесться	‘decrease, subtract’ убавля́ть(ся)/убáвить(ся)
	‘full’ по́лный	‘be enough’ хватáть/хвати́ть

Она́ броса́ла непоня́тные, зага́дочные fráзы, исполненные *како́го-то потайно́го смы́сла*.

[She-NOM flung incomprehensible, mysterious phrases-ACC, filled-ACC some secret meaning-GEN.]

She flung incomprehensible, mysterious phrases, filled *with some secret meaning* .

Он набра́лся хра́брости и спроси́л: почему́?

[He-NOM collected courage-GEN and asked: Why?]

He collected *his courage* and asked: Why?

Буква́льно два дня наза́д я запусти́л ка́рточку в банкомáт и обнару́жил, что на моём счету́ за́ год не то́лько не прибáвилось *причита́ющихся* мне *проце́нтов*, но да́же *мои́х кро́вных* суше́ственно убáвилось.

[Literally two days-ACC ago I-NOM put card-ACC in automated-teller-ACC and discovered, that on my account-LOC in year-ACC not only not increased owed-GEN me-DAT percents-GEN, but even my own-GEN significantly decreased.]

Just two days ago I put my card into the automated teller and discovered that in the course of a year not only had *the percentage owed* me on my account not been added, but even *my own money* had significantly decreased.

Она́ никогда́ не задумыва́лась над тем, хвата́ит ли у неё *сил* и *здоровья́* на осуществле́ние свои́х пла́нов и что бу́дет пото́м.

[She-NOM never not thought above that-INST, is-enough whether by her-GEN strengths-GEN and health-GEN on realization-ACC own plans-GEN and what-NOM will-be afterward.]

She never thought about whether she had enough *strength* and *health* to realize her plans and what would happen afterward.

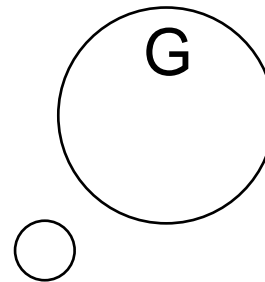
## GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE 1—Dates and other reference points

GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE serves as a reference point for expressions of lack and comparison.

GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE expresses dates.

GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE with prepositions.

In the fourth and final meaning of the genitive, the focus of our attention is located near the genitive item, from which it is separated. This combination of proximity and separation allows the genitive to serve as a reference point in the domains of time and space and on scales of qualitative and quantitative assessment. In the domain of time, the most frequent use of the GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE is with dates. Note that the genitive is only used for a date when something happens, in other words here the genitive item serves as a temporal reference point for an event:



An item (small circle) is in the proximity of a GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE (circle labeled G)

На пресс-конференции, состоявшейся *третьего* декабря, шла речь о мерах, предпринимаемых правительством России для ускорения экономических реформ.

[On press-conference-LOC took-place-LOC third-GEN December-GEN, went talk-NOM about measures-LOC undertaken-LOC government-INST Russia-GEN for acceleration-GEN economic reforms-GEN.]

At the press conference which took place *on the third* of December, they talked about the measures that the Russian government has undertaken to accelerate economic reforms.

*Восьмого* августа 1927 г. М. Цветаева писала своей знакомой С. Н. Андрониковой-Гальперн.

[Eighth-GEN August-GEN 1927 year-GEN M. Tsvetaeva-NOM wrote own acquaintance S. N. Andronikova-Galpern-DAT.]

*On the eighth* of August 1927 M. Tsvetaeva wrote to her acquaintance S. N. Andronikova-Galpern.

A large number of prepositions locate items in both time and space with reference to GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE as being without, after, before, behind, near, etc.<sup>56</sup> A few of these prepositions operate in other domains, such as similarity (наподобие ‘in the likeness of’) or concepts (ввиду ‘in view of’, насчёт ‘on the matter of’). In many instances (those marked with asterisks) these prepositions clearly derive from earlier prepositional phrases (now written as one word), originally with a following GENITIVE:: A WHOLE meaning ‘of’; compare these with the prepositional phrases that appear in the section on GENITIVE:: A WHOLE above. These complex prepositions can be thought of as belonging to both GENITIVE:: A WHOLE and GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE.



## Prepositions associated with GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE

(Items marked with asterisks derive from earlier prepositional phrases, now written as one word.)		
без	‘without’	крóме ‘except, besides, aside from’
близ	‘near’	мíмо ‘by, past’
вблизí*	‘nearby’	наканúне* ‘on the eve of’
ввídú*	‘in view of’	наподóбие* ‘in the likeness of’
вдóль*	‘along’	напрóтив ‘opposite’
взамéн*	‘in place of’	насчёт* ‘on the matter of’
вмéсто*	‘in place of’	óколо ‘around; approximately’
вне	‘outside of’	пóдле ‘beside’
вóзле	‘near’	позадí* ‘behind’
вокрúг*	‘around’	помíмо ‘aside from’
впередí*	‘in front of’	поперёк* ‘across’
врóде*	‘like’	пóсле ‘after’
		прéжде ‘before’
		сверх* ‘over, above’
		у ‘near, at, by’

The following examples display some of these prepositions:

Но без *рiска* ничегó цéнного не сдéлаешь.

[But without risk-GEN nothing valuable-GEN not do.]

But you can't do anything of value without *risk*.

Правítельством Украiны прiнято решéние о проведéнии регистрácii вернúвшихся пóсле *эвакуácii* 1986 гóда людéй и их пропiске в населённых пúнктах, располо́женных вблизí *зóны*.

[Government-INST Ukraine-GEN taken-NOM decision-NOM about carrying-out-LOC registration-GEN returned-GEN after evacuation-GEN 1986 year-GEN people-GEN and their residence-registration-LOC in settled points-LOC, located-LOC near zone-GEN.]

A decision has been made by the government of Ukraine about registering people who returned after the 1986 *evacuation* and awarding them residence in settlements near *the zone*.

По бульвáру вдóль *жёлтых скамéек*, мимо *гiпсовых урн* шагáет небольшо́го рóста человек.

[Along boulevard-DAT along yellow benches-GEN, past plaster urns-GEN strides small stature-GEN person-NOM.]

Down the boulevard, along *the yellow benches*, past *the plaster urns*, strides a person of small stature.

“Жизнь прекра́сна и удивítельна!” — как восклицáл товарищ Маякóвский наканúне *самоубúйства*.

[“Life-NOM wonderful-NOM and amazing-NOM!” — as exclaimed comrade Mayakovsky-NOM on-the-eve suicide-GEN.]

“Life is wonderful and amazing!” — as comrade Mayakovsky was exclaiming on the eve of *his suicide*.

The idiomatic expression *меж двух жерновов* ‘between a rock and a hard place’.

The genitive appears in an idiomatic expression that belongs among the GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE prepositions, *меж двух жерновов*, literally ‘between *two millstones* ’:

Когда сам уже начал пописывать, попал я меж двух жерновов — между правдой и ложью.

[When self-NOM already began write, fell I-NOM between two millstones-GEN — between truth-INST and falsehood-INST.]

When I myself began to write, I fell between *a rock and a hard place* — between truth and falsehood.

## GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE 2—y ‘by’

y + GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE means ‘by, near’ in the domain of space.

The use of the preposition *y* could be a subchapter to itself. *Y* can be variously deployed in the domains of space, possession, and causation. In its basic spatial use, *y* simply means ‘by’ or ‘near’:

У двери сидит мисс Филлипс и вяжет.

[By door-GEN sits Miss Phillips-NOM and knits.]

Miss Phillips sits by *the door* and knits.

y + GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE expresses possession.

By far the most common use of *y* is in the Russian construction that expresses ‘have’, *y* possessor-GEN + (есть) + possession-NOM, literally ‘by *the possessor* is a possession’, usually understood as ‘*the possessor* has a possession’. Here is an example:

Кроме вас, у семьи убитой были друзья или хорошие знакомые?

[Aside-from you-GEN, by family-GEN deceased-GEN were friends-NOM or good acquaintances-NOM?]

Aside from you, did *the family* of the deceased have any friends or close acquaintances?

A similar construction is used for pain and other sensations coming from body parts (which are our inalienable possessions):

Вдруг я заметил, что у меня трясутся руки.

[Suddenly I-NOM noticed, that by me-GEN shake hands-NOM.]

Suddenly I noticed that *my* hands were shaking.

y + GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE with people expresses ‘at so-and so’s place’.

When the genitive item is a person, *y* + GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE can mean ‘at *so-and so’s place*’, as in this example:

Месяц назад я забыла у него очки от солнца.

[Month-ACC ago I-NOM forgot by him-GEN glasses-ACC from sun-GEN.]

A month ago I forgot my sunglasses at *his place*.

This construction can also be used to express causation, in other words, having someone do something for you. In this example: ‘doing my hair y someone-GEN’ = ‘having *someone* do my hair’:

Мне безразлично, у *кого* причёсываться, я потом всё равно переделаю по-своему.

[Me-DAT indifferent, by who-GEN do-hair, I-NOM afterward all same redo in-own-way.]

I don't care *who* does my hair, afterward I redo it my own way anyway.

The causative use of y + GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE with people.

## GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE 3—Lack

As we have already seen above under GENITIVE:: A WHOLE, the genitive case in Russian is associated with quantification. The separation aspect of GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE is here interpreted as negative quantification, or lack, a use commonly called the “genitive of negation”. Note that separation does not necessarily imply non-existence, it just means that the genitive item isn't available. In the first example below there is of course no denial that the American way of life exists, but the hearer is separated from it by a lack of experience:

Вы просто не знаете *американской жизни*.

[You-NOM simply not know American life-GEN.]

You simply don't know (*anything about*) *life in America*.

GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE with negation expresses lack.

Here are a few more typical examples of the GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE with negated verbs. Notice that the genitive item can be either the subject of the sentence (as in the first two examples) or the direct object (as in the last two):

В то же время в частном секторе *никаких забастовок* не было.

[In that same time-ACC in private sector-LOC no-kind strikes-GEN not was.]

At the same time there were *no strikes* in the private sector.

Когда я добрался до угла — *её* нигде не было.

[When I-NOM reached to corner-GEN — she-GEN nowhere not was.]

When I reached the corner — *she* wasn't anywhere.

Можно было догадаться, что *сильного впечатления* я не произвёл.

[Possible was surmise, that strong impression-GEN I-NOM not made.]

One could surmise that I did not make *a strong impression*.

Останавливаюсь перед рисунками, *ничего* не вижу, кроме чёрно-белых пятен.

[Stop in-front drawings-INST, nothing-GEN not see, aside-from black-white spots-GEN.]

I stop in front of the drawings, but I don't see *anything* except black and white spots.

The following table lists some words in Russian that express the concept ‘lack’ and are associated with the use of the GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE:

#### Expressions of lacking associated with GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE

‘deficit’ дефи́цит	‘be deprived’ лиша́ться/лиши́ться лише́нный ‘deprived’	‘be lacking’ недостава́ть/недоста́ть недоста́ток ‘lack’
‘deprive’ лиша́ть/лиши́ть		‘shortage’ нехва́тка

Here are a couple of examples for orientation:

Обы́чная на́ша жи́знь была́ лишенá *всей́ э́той ро́скоши, каза́вшейся* театра́льной, предназна́ченной исклю́чительно для сча́сливой мину́ты.

[Ordinary our life-NOM was deprived-NOM all this luxury-GEN, seeming-GEN theatrical-INST, set-aside-INST exclusively for happy minute-GEN.]

Our ordinary life was deprived *of all this luxury*, which seemed theatrical, and was set aside exclusively for a happy time.

38 проце́нтов (бо́льше тре́ти!) москвиче́й се́туют на нехва́тку не *магази́нов и рестора́нов*, а *горо́дских туале́тов*.

[38-NOM percent-GEN (more third-GEN!) Muscovites-GEN complain on shortage-ACC not stores-GEN and restaurants-GEN, but municipal toilets-GEN.]

38 percent (more than a third!) of Muscovites complain of a lack not *of stores* and *restaurants*, but *of municipal toilets*.

## GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE 4—Comparison

Finally, distance gives you a perspective for comparing items separated along various scales of measure. GENITIVE:: A REFERENCE allows you to examine the difference between the genitive item (which is held as the standard) and another item in a comparison. This motivates the use of the genitive with comparative adjectives and adverbs in constructions of the type: other item + comparative + standard-GEN, meaning ‘the other item is better/longer/stronger, etc. *than the genitive item*’. Here are some examples:

Обще́е де́ло должно́ бы́ть вы́ше *ли́чных интере́сов*.

[Common cause-NOM should be higher personal interests-GEN.]

The common cause should be higher (priority) *than personal interests*.

Глу́по держа́ть в помеще́нии бо́льше *одной́ карти́ны* Рембра́ндта.

[Stupid keep in room-LOC more one picture-GEN Rembrandt-GEN.]

It is stupid to keep more *than one of* Rembrandt’s *pictures* in the room.

Пел он, возмóжно, и хýже *западных певцо́в*, но тря́сся сильнее.  
 [Sang he-NOM, perhaps, even worse Western singers-GEN, but shook stronger.]  
 Perhaps he did sing worse *than Western singers* , but he shook more.

Год бóдет лóчше *предыдúщего*.  
 [Year-NOM will-be better previous-GEN.]  
 This year will be better *than the previous one* .

## EPILOGUE

The word *genitive* is related to *generation* and *genesis* , and all these words are derived from the Latin and Greek roots meaning ‘give birth’. Indeed giving birth is the means by which living creatures such as ourselves serve as sources for more of our kind. The genitive case continues the theme of the role of human beings that was so prominent in our discussion of the dative case. People get special treatment in the system of preposition and case combinations to express ‘going to’, ‘being at’, and ‘coming from’. Not only do we humans require *к + DAT* when we are destinations, but as locations we demand *у + GEN* and when we are places of departure we are the objects of *от + GEN*. Location *у + GEN* ‘at’ a person can motivate a variety of interpretations, among them possession, being at someone’s place, or having that someone do something. Physical movement from and to items can be metaphorically extended to express human beings’ emotional withdrawal from and attraction to things through fear, disgust, desire, or expectation. Russian even asks us whether we can identify the object of our desire, thus grammatically capturing that very human dilemma of knowing that we want something but not knowing exactly what that something is. The genitive case is also very concerned with quantity in terms of amounts, deficiency, and comparison. In the current age of quantification, when we are all threatened with being reduced to statistics and identification numbers, it is curious to note that the Russian genitive integrates an appreciation of our distinctive human qualities with a focus on numerical concepts.

**LOCATIVE Forms**

hard type: 'room' singular комнате	plural комнатах		plural неделях
-ь: 'talent' singular способности	plural способностях		
hard type: ' singular дворе́		soft type: ' singular гвозде́	plural гвоздях
hard type: 'body' singular теле́	plural тела́х	soft type: 'schedule' singular расписа́ния	plural расписа́ниях
<hr/>			
hard type: 'first' feminine пе́рвой			
soft type: ' feminine последней	masculine последнем	neuter последнем	plural последних
<hr/>			
'I' мне	'we' нас	'you' informal тебе́	'you' вас
	'he' (н)ём		'they' (н)их
	'what' че́м		
'this' feminine этой	masculine этом	neuter этом	plural этих
'all, every' feminine всей	masculine всём	neuter всём	plural всех
<hr/>			
feminine 'my' моёй	masculine	neuter	plural
			мои́х
'our' на́шей	на́шем	на́шем	на́ших
<hr/>			
'one' feminine одной	masculine одно́м	neuter одно́м	plural одних
'two' двух	'three' тре́х	'four' четыре́х	'five' пя́ти



БЫло очевидно, что он занимается умственным трудом, и очевидно, что его дед привык стоять по колéно в *навóзе* и шуровать лопátой.

[Was obvious, that he-NOM is-occupied intellectual work-INST, and obvious, that his grandfather-NOM accustomed stand up-to knee-ACC in manure-LOC and heave shovel-INST.]

It was obvious that he does intellectual work, and obvious that his grandfather is used to standing in *manure* up to his knees and heaving a shovel.

The container referred to by *в* in physical space need not have physical or fixed boundaries. Consider the political boundaries we project upon cities and countries, or the temporary container created by folding the fingers toward the palm, as in the following examples:

Мáльчики во *всех стpánaх* одинаково не хотят ходить в шкóлу.

[Boys-NOM in all countries-LOC equally not want go to school-ACC.]

Boys in *all countries* equally dislike going to school.

До трамвáя я дошёл благополúчно, неся чемодáн то в *пpáвой*, то в *лéвой руке*.

[To tram-GEN I-NOM went successfully, carryi itcase-ACC that in right-LOC, that in left hand-LOC.]

I made my way to the tram successfully, carrying my suitcase first in *my right hand* and then in *my left*.

Clothing serves as a container for the body, inspiring the use of *в* to express wearing, which can be extended even to other worn items, such as glasses and beards. Here's a typical example with clothing, one with a clear parallel in English:

Она сто́яла в сторонé, в *корóтком пальтó*, из котóрого давнó вёрсла.

[She-NOM stood in side-LOC, in short coat-LOC, from which-GEN long-ago outgrew.]

She stood to one side, in *a short coat* which she had long ago outgrown.

The preposition *в* followed by a unit of distance constitutes an idiomatic expression translatable as 'at a distance of'. Here is an example:

Палáу, архипелáг, состоящий из двухсóт мéлких островóв, расположенный в *800 киломéтрах* к юго-востоку от Филиппин, стал 185-м члéном ООН.

[Palau-NOM, archipelago-NOM, consisting-NOM from two-hundred small islands-GEN, located-NOM in 800 kilometers-LOC to south-east from Philippines-GEN, became 185th member-INST UN-GEN.]

Palau, an archipelago consisting of two hundred small islands located at *a distance of 800 kilometers* to the south-east of the Philippines, became the 185th member of the UN.



When implemented in the domain of time, **В + LOCATIVE: A PLACE** tends to be associated with extended periods of time 'in' which events can be located, and the use is indeed very similar to the temporal use of 'in' in English:

**В + LOCATIVE:**  
PLACE means 'in'  
the domain of  
time.

Кажется маловероятным, чтобы он планировал в будущем бороться за президентское кресло.

[Seems unlikely-INST, that he-NOM planned in future-LOC fight for presi seat-ACC.]

It seems unlikely that he was planning in the future to fight for the presi

В детстве она утверждала, что её мать не уборщица в магазине, а киноактриса.

[In childhood-LOC she-NOM claimed, that her mother-NOM not cleani NOM in store-LOC, but movie-actress-NOM.]

In her childhood she claimed that her mother was not a cleaning lady in a store, but a movie actress.

Ещё один центр был открыт в ноябре в Хабаровске.

[Yet one center-NOM was opened-NOM in November-LOC in Khabarovsk-LOC.]

Another center was opened in November in Khabarovsk.

**В + LOCATIVE: A PLACE** can operate in many other domains, all of which are understood as metaphorical spaces. Marriage is a state of being which one can be 'in', as seen in the first example below. The numerical domain locates the position of inflation in the second example. The third sentence contains two examples of abstract locations, one is an emotional state of passion, and the other is a group of people constituting the diplomatic corps.

**В + LOCATIVE:**  
PLACE means 'in'  
in metaphorical  
domains.

Печально, но тех, кто счастлив в браке, полностью игнорируют.

[Unfortunately, but those-ACC, who-NOM happy-NOM in marriage-LOC completely ignore.]

It's unfortunate, but those who are happy in marriage are completely ignored.

Инфляция в годовом исчислении достигла 120 процентов.

[Inflation in annual calculation-LOC reached 120 percent-GEN.]

In the annual calculation inflation reached 120 percent.

В пристрастии к музыке он, пожалуй, лидирует в дипломатическом корпусе.

[In passion-LOC to music-DAT he-NOM, probably, leads in diplomatic corps-LOC.]

In his passion for music he is probably the leader in the diplomatic corps.

In the chapter on the accusative case it was noted that certain nouns referring to people with verbs meaning 'go, join, play the role of' have a special idiomatic accusative plural that looks just like the nominative plural, such as пойти в гости [go in guests-ACC] 'go for a visit', пойти в солдаты [go in soldiers-ACC] 'become a soldier'. There are parallel idioms for expressing the state of being a guest, a soldier, etc. that use the locative plural; the most

The idiomatic use of быть в гостях 'be visiting'

common of these is быть в гостях [be in guests-LOC] 'be visiting' (literally 'be a guest' at someone's place).

## LOCATIVE: A PLACE 2—Words that trigger в; the 2nd locative

A large number of words in Russian are typically followed by the preposition в + LOCATIVE: A PLACE. Some of them have obvious parallels to English phrases, but many do not and some might seem altogether counter-intuitive. Here is a list of в + LOC phrases you can expect to encounter:

### Words that can trigger LOCATIVE: A PLACE

'assure of' заверять/заверить в заверение в 'assurance of'	'refuse, deny' отказывать/отказать в отказ в 'refusal of'	'lucky with' счастливым в счастье в 'luck wit'
'consist, lie in' заключаться/заклучиться в	'give an account of, report on' отчитываться/отчитаться в отчёт в 'account of, report on'	'convince (oneself) of' убеждать(ся)/убедить(ся) в убеждение в 'conviction'
'get tangled up in, get involved in' запутываться/запутаться в	'suspect of' подозревать/заподозрить в подозрение в 'suspicion of'	'certainty about' уверенность в уверен в 'certain of'
'confusion' путаница в	'need of' потребность в	'successful with' удачливый в удача в 'success wi'
'excel in' изощряться/изощриться в изощрение в 'refinement in'	'confess to' признаваться/признаться в признание в 'confession of'	'assure oneself of' удостоверяться/удостовериться в удостоверение в 'attestation of'
'clever at' ловкий в ловкость в 'cleverness in'	'be disappointed in' разочаровываться/ разочароваться в разочарование в 'disappoi in'	'reproach because of' упрекать/упрекнуть в упрек в 'reproach for'
'need' нуждаться в нужда в 'need of'	'confess to' сознаваться/сознаться в	'succeed, make progress i' успевать/успеть в успевание в 'progress in'
'accuse of, charge with' обвинять/обвинить в обвинение в 'accusation of'	'success in' успех(н) в	'participate in' участвовать в участвующий в 'participant in' участие в 'participation in'
'be deceived, disappointed in' обманываться/обмануться в	'consist in, lie in, be' состоять в	'be counted among' числиться в
'find oneself in' оказываться/оказаться в		
'experienced in' опытный в опыт в 'experience in'		

Here are some examples of how these phrases work in real sentences:

Она никогда не удивлялась тому, что он почти не нуждается во сне.

[She-NOM never not be-surprised that-DAT, that he-NOM almost not need in sleep-LOC.]

It never surprised her that he hardly needed any *sleep*.

Каждый день я обвинял её в смертных грехах.

[Every day-ACC I-NOM accused her-ACC in mortal sins-LOC.]

Every day I accused her of *mortal sins*.

Сначала над ним смеялись, потом стали отмечать успехи в психиатрии и искусстве, а в конце концов позволили открыть “Дом художников”

[At-first above him-INST laughed, then started notice successes-ACC in psychiatry-LOC and art-LOC, and in end-LOC ends-GEN allowed open “House-ACC artists-GEN”.]

At first people laughed at him, but then they started to notice his successes in *psychiatry* and in *art*, and finally they allowed him to open a “House of Artists”

Горький оказался в весьма неловком положении: Пастернак мог заподозрить его в неискренности.

[Gorky-NOM found-self in very awkward position-LOC: Pasternak-NOM could suspect him-ACC in insincerity-LOC.]

Gorky found himself in a very *awkward position*: Pasternak could suspect him of *insincerity*.

About 150 masculine nouns in Russian have an alternate locative singular ending in *-ý/-iú* (always stressed), sometimes called the “second locative”. The second locative only occurs with the prepositions *в* and *на*, but it spans the domains of space, time, and metaphorical space, as we see in these three examples:

Смех вырабатывает в мозгу человека эндорфины — вещества, которые посылают свой сигнал лимфоцитам, противостоящим вирусам и инфекциям.

[Laughter-NOM produces in brain-LOC person-GEN endorphines-ACC — substances-ACC, which-NOM send their signals-ACC lymphocytes-DAT, resisting-DAT viruses-DAT and infections-DAT.]

Laughter creates in a person’s *brain* endorphines — substances which send their signals to the lymphocytes that resist viruses and infections.

Вся эта работа должна быть завершена в текущем году.

[All this work-NOM should-NOM be completed-NOM in current year-LOC.]

All this work should be completed in *the current year*.

The second locative ending *-ý/-iú* with *в + LOCATIVE: PLACE.*

Я перека́тывала го́лову по поду́шке как в бреду́.  
[I-NOM turned head-ACC along pillow-DAT as in delirium-LOC.]  
I turned my head from side to side on the pillow as if in a *delirium*.

## LOCATIVE: A PLACE 3—на ‘on, at’

In its basic spatial meaning, на ‘on’ + LOCATIVE: A PLACE refers to a two-dimensional surface where something is located.

На сту́льях и крова́ти лежа́ли ве́щи, вы́нутые из сундука́, а сундука́ нигде́ не́ было.  
[On chairs-LOC and bed-LOC lay t ings-NOM, taken-out from chest-GEN, but chest-GEN nowhere not was.]  
There were things that had been taken out of the chest lying on *the chairs* and *bed* but the chest was nowhere to be found.

Ма́ма говори́т, что когда́-то я просыпа́лся с улы́бкой на ли́це.  
[Mom-NOM says, that once I-NOM woke-up with smile-INST on face-LOC.]  
Mom says that I used to wake up with a smile on *my face*.

Since attachment is something that happens on a surface, на + LOCATIVE: A PLACE can also be used to express an attachment or connection to something; notice that English ‘on’ share this capacity in this example and its translation below:

Их соба́ка, ма́ленькая, похо́жая на лиси́цу, метáлась на це́пи, захлёбыва́ясь ла́ем.  
[Their dog-NOM, small-NOM, similar-NOM on vixen-ACC, dashed-about on chain LOC, choking bark-INST.]  
Their small, vixen-like dog dashed about on *its chain*, choking on its barks.

The fact that на does not require boundaries (whereas в does), makes на the natural candidate for locations that are events or phenomena, or anything else that does not have defined limits; in this use the meaning of на is often better translated as ‘at’. However because there is not a perfect fit between Russian на and English ‘at’, students are often told to assume that all locations use в + LOC, and that they must memorize a list of exceptions that use на instead. This is good advice, but it might also help to look at some of the categories that the so-called “на-words” tend to fall into. Here is a list representing common на words (other than surfaces) that might make the task of mastering their use a bit easier:

Locations that are islands, peninsulas, mountain ranges, clearings:

на *Аляске* 'in Alaska'  
на *Гавайях* 'in Hawaii'  
на *Кавказе* 'in the Caucasus'  
на *Кипре* 'in Cyprus'  
на *острове* 'on an island'

на *площади* 'in a square'  
на *полуострове* 'on a peninsula'  
на *поляне* 'in a clearing'  
на *стадионе* 'at/in a stadium'

на *улице* 'in the street'  
на *Урале* 'in the Urals'  
на *ферме* 'at/on a farm'

Points of embarkation for travel (passenger, freight, or mail):

на *аэродроме* 'at an aerodrome'  
на *базе* 'at a base'

на *вокзале* 'at a train station'  
на *остановке* 'at a stop (for buses or trams)'

на *почте* 'at/in a post office'  
на *станции* 'at/in a station'

Events

на *балу* 'at a ball'  
на *выставке* 'at an exhibition'  
на *заседании* 'at/in a meeting'  
на *конференции* 'at a conference'

на *концерте* 'at a concert'  
на *собрании* 'at/in a meeting'  
на *спектакле* 'at a show'

на *съезде* 'at a congress'  
на *экскурсии* 'on an excursion'  
на *ярмарке* 'at a fair'

Compass points and other generalized locations:

на *воздухе* 'in the open air, outside'  
на *востоке* 'in the east'  
на *западе* 'in the west'

на *месте* 'in place'  
на *свете* 'in the world'  
на *севере* 'in the north'

на *солнце* 'in the sunshine'  
на *целине* 'in the virgin lands'  
на *юге* 'in the south'

Certain buildings, work/trade environments, and academic units:

на *бирже* 'at the exchange'  
на *даче* 'at/in a cottage'  
на *заводе* 'at/in a factory'

на *кафедре* 'in a department (iversity)'  
на *предприятии* 'at an enterprise'  
на *рынке* 'at the market'

на *складе* 'at/in a warehouse'  
на *фабрике* 'at/in a factory'  
на *факультете* 'in a department school (of university)'

Upper floors of buildings:

на *балконе* 'in the balcony (of a theater); on a balcony'

... *этаже*  
... *floor*

There are a few words that can use either на or в without much difference in meaning; here are the most common ones:

Words that can use both на and + LOCATIVE: A PLACE

на/в *душе* 'in one's soul'  
на/в *квартире* 'in an apartment'

на/в *кухне* 'in the kitchen'  
на/в *небе* 'in the sky'

Here are some examples of на used with “на-words”:

На *Московской межбанковской валютной бирже* курс доллара США в пятницу несколько снизился.

[At Moscow inter-bank currency exchange-LOC exchange-rate-NOM dollar-GEN USA-GEN in Friday-ACC somewhat declined.]

At the Moscow inter-bank currency exchange the exchange rate for the US doll declined somewhat on Friday.

На заседании правительственных делегаций в Москве возросли трения по финансово-экономическим вопросам между Украиной и Россией.

[At meeting-LOC government delegations-GEN in Moscow-LOC increased friction-NOM along financial-economic issues-DAT between Ukraine-INST and Russia-INST.]

At the meeting of government delegations in Moscow there was increased friction between Ukraine and Russia concerning financial and economic issues.

Видно, на почте что-то перепутали.

[Apparently, at post-office-LOC something-ACC mixed-up.]

Apparently they got something mixed up at the post office.

На суде уже шла о нём речь.

[At trial-LOC already went about it-LOC talk-NOM.]

They already talked about it at the trial.

The use of **на** + LOCATIVE: A PLACE in the domain of time is restricted, being commonly used only with weeks and with the transitional times between day and night, as in the representative phrases in the table below:

LOCATIVE: A PLACE in time expressions			
этой/будущей неделе	st/this/next week	на заре/рассвете	'at dawn'
	'at sunrise'	на закате	'at sunset'

The use of **на** + LOCATIVE: A PLACE in the domain of abstract locations is also relatively uncommon; here is an example of how an abstract point is conceived of as a location *on* or *at* rather than *in*:

Мне вдруг превьше всего захотелось коснуться правым плечом своего отца, а левым — своего сына: справа — прошлое, слева — будущее, а я на живом стыке двух времён.

[Me-DAT suddenly above all-GEN wanted touch right shoulder-INST own father-GEN, and left-INST — own son-GEN: on-right — past-NOM, on-left — future-NOM, and I-NOM at live juncture-LOC two times-GEN.]

Suddenly I wanted above all else to touch my father with my right shoulder and my son with my left shoulder: on the right is the past, on the left, the future, and I am at the live juncture between the two times.

## LOCATIVE: A PLACE 4—Words that trigger на; the 2nd locative

The number of words associated with на + LOC is fewer than those for в. Many of the phrasal phrases involve means of transportation or abilities such as speaking various languages or playing musical instruments. The words you are most likely to encounter are in this table:

### Words that can trigger

### LOCATIVE: A PLACE

'ride in (a train/a bus, etc.)'  
 ъздить/ѡхать на (поезде/автобусе)  
 поездка на (поезде/автобусе) 'trip  
 by (train/bus, etc.)'

'play (the piano/flute/guitar, etc.)'  
 играть на (рояле/флейте/гитаре)  
 игра на (рояле/флейте/гитаре)  
 'playing (the piano/flute/guitar, etc.)'

'go (ice-skating/boating, etc.)'  
 кататься на (коньках/лодке)  
 катание на (коньках/лодке) 'goi  
 (ice-skating/boating, etc.)'

'fly in (a plane, etc.)'  
 летать/лететь на (самолёте)  
 полёт на (самолёте) 'flight in (a  
 plane, etc.)'

'sail on (a steamboat/a canoe, etc.)'  
 плавать/плыть на (пароходе/  
 челне)

'speak (Russian/English, etc.)'  
 говорить/сказать на (русском/  
 английском языке)  
 говорящий на  
 английском языке  
 'speaker of (Russian/English, etc.)'

'get married to (when man takes a  
 wife)'  
 жениться на  
 женитьба на 'marriage to (when  
 man takes a wife)'

'insist on'  
 настаивать/настоять на  
 настаивание на 'insistence on'

'be based on'  
 основываться/основаться на

'affect, have impact on'  
 отражаться/отразиться на  
 отражение на 'affect, impact on'

'go (skiing/sailing, etc.)'  
 ходить на (лыжах/парусах)  
 ходьба на (лыжах/парусах) 'goi  
 (skiing/sailing, etc.)'

'economize on, save on'  
 экономить/экономить на  
 экономия на 'economizing on'

Here are a couple of sentences to demonstrate these phrases in action:

Если в Японии произойдёт смена приоритетов, не отразится ли это отрицательно на отношениях между нашими странами?

[If in Japan-LOC happens change-NOM priorities-GEN, not affect whether this-NOM negatively on relations-LOC between our countries-LOC?]

If there is a change in priorities in Japan, won't this have a negative impact on relations between our countries?

Родственники погибшего настаивали на том, что он был забит камнями.

[Relatives-NOM deceased-GEN insisted on that-LOC, that he-NOM was killed-NOM stones-INST.]

The relatives of the deceased insisted that he had been stoned to death.

Some idiomatic phrases also employ на + LOC; a representative sample of these phrases is in the following table:

на + LOC

phrases

'(be) worn around *one's neck*'  
(бить) на шее

'(happen) *the other day*'  
(случиться) на днях

'*actually*'  
на самом деле

A few words can combine with either на or в + LOC, such as специализироваться на/в 'specialize in' and сходить/сойтись на/в 'agree on', both of which are illustrated with на in the two examples below:

Игорь специализируется на *детской верхней одежде*.

[Igor-NOM specializes on children's outer wear-LOC.]

Igor specializes in *children's outer wear*.

Сходимся на *том*, что брюки глажу я, а он читает мне вслух.

[Come-together on that-LOC, that pants-ACC iron I-NOM, and he-NOM reads me-DAT out-loud.]

We agree that I'm to iron the pants and he's to read to me out loud.

Like в, на can appear with the so-called second locative ending in stressed -*ý/-iú* to express locations in various domains and in the idiom на *ходу* [on gait-LOC] 'while on *the move*'. Here are some examples:

Мisha вопил *песню* про шикарный город Ялту на *южном берегу*.

[Misha-NOM wailed song-ACC about splendid town Yalta-ACC on southern coast-LOC.]

Misha wailed a song about the splendid town of Yalta on *the southern coast*.

Лётчик огляделся по сторонам, как бы мысленно прощаясь со *всем*, с полем, с простым деревянным срубом на *краю* поля.

[Pilot-NOM looked-around along sides-DAT, as if mentally saying-farewell with everything-INST, with field-INST, with simple wooden cabin-INST on edge-LOC field-GEN.]

The pilot looked about from side to side, as if mentally saying farewell to everything, the field, the simple wooden cabin *at the edge* of the field.

Мальчик усаживается на *полу* с кубиками.

[Boy-NOM seats-self on floor-LOC with blocks-INST.]

The boy seats himself on *the floor* with the blocks.



## LOCATIVE: A PLACE 5—при ‘by, at’

The sense of association that allows us to use *на* to describe a dog on a chain is the central idea of the preposition *при* ‘at’, and this idea of association gets extended to space, time, and metaphorical domains. In the domain of space, the meaning of *при* is usually best translated as ‘by’ or ‘at’, as in the following example:

В Брюсселе открывáется постоянное представителъство Росси́и при НАТО.  
[In Brussels-LOC opens permanent representation-NOM Russia-GEN at NATO-LOC.]  
Permanent representation for Russia is being established at *NATO* in Brussels.

при + LOCATIVE:  
A PLACE means  
‘by, at’ in the  
domain of space.

If an item is permanently connected to another item, then *при* can have a meaning closer to ‘with’, ‘given’, or ‘having’, as in this example, where *пéчка* refers to the traditional Russian stove that serves as a furnace and is attached to an exterior wall:

До мо́их шестна́дцати лет мы жи́ли в полуба́раке на свáях, в гну́сной коммуналке, в одно́й ко́мнате втроём, при пéчке, но без ва́нны и горя́чей водо́й.  
[To my sixteen years-GEN we-NOM lived in semi-barrack-LOC on piles-LOC, in disgusting communal-apartment-LOC, in one room-LOC three-together, at stove-LOC, but without bathtub-GEN and hot water-GEN.]  
Until I was sixteen we lived in a semi-barrack built on pilings, in a disgusting communal apartment, all three of us in one room, with a *stove*, but without a bathtub or hot water.

при + LOCATIVE:  
A PLACE means  
‘with’.

This use of *при* is most commonly encountered in the phrase *при себе́* [with self-LOC], which you can use to say whether you have a given thing with *you* at the present moment.

A *condi* is something that can be attached to an item in metaphoric space, as in this example:

Федеральная казна́ выделя́ет рабо́тникам полови́ну де́нег в фо́рме бюджетно́й ссуды́, при усло́вии, е́сли региона́льная казна́ выпла́чивает друго́ю полови́ну.  
[Federal treasury-NOM allots workers-DAT half-ACC money-GEN in form-LOC budgetary grant-GEN, at condition-LOC, if regional treasury-NOM pays-off other half-ACC.]  
The federal treasury allots half of the money to the workers in the form of a budgetary loan, on *the condition* that the regional treasury pays off the other half.

при + LOCATIVE:  
PLACE i  
metaphorical  
domain

Here is another example of the ‘with/given’ meaning of *при* in a metaphoric domain:

Устано́вить ко́нтакт с друго́ими мира́ми при ны́нешнем отноше́нии к космона́втике не уда́тся.

[Establish contact-ACC with other worlds-INST at current attitude-LOC to space exploration-DAT not succeed.]

We won't succeed in establishing contact with other worlds even *the current attitude* toward space exploration.

By far the most common use of *при* is, however, in the domain of time, where this preposition temporally connects two items, giving us to understand that they are simultaneous. In the first two examples below, we see that English 'at' can serve the same purpose as *при* but often this preposition is translated with words such as 'while' or 'when', as in our third example:

При слове "очень", мой глаза наполнились непролившимися слезами.

[At word-LOC "very" my eyes-NOM filled unshed tears-INST.]

At *the word* "very", my eyes filled with unshed tears.

Я отвечаю и при этом ищу в её глазах второй смысл.

[I-NOM respond and at this-LOC search in her eyes-LOC other meaning-ACC.]

I respond and at *the same time* search for some other meaning in her eyes.

Собираемся перерегистрировать телефон при наследовании квартиры.

[Intend re-register telephone-ACC at inheritance-LOC apartment-GEN.]

We intend to change the registration of the telephone when *we inherit* the apartment.

*При* participates in two important idiomatic expressions: *при чём* [at what-LOC] 'why' or *не при чём* [not at what-LOC] 'irrelevant'.

## LOCATIVE: A PLACE 6—о 'about'

The primary domain of the preposition о 'about' is topics for oral and written communication and thought. As we see in the four examples below, this preposition introduces *item* that we hear, talk, write, and think about:

Неделю назад я слышала по радио передачу о счастье.

[Week-ACC ago I-NOM heard along radio-DAT program-ACC about happiness LOC.]

A week ago I heard a radio program about *happiness*.

Ася рассказывает о Серёже печальные, трогательные истории.

[Asya-NOM tells about Seryozha-LOC sad, touching stories-ACC.]

Asya tells sad, touching stories about *Seryozha*.

— Вот, — усмехается он, — написал роман о рабочем классе, как все.

["Here," grins he-NOM, "wrote novel-ACC about working class-LOC, like ever, one-NOM."]

"Here," he grins, "I've written a novel about *the working class*, like everyone else

Я решил подписаться на газету <<Известия>>, не думая ни о какой лотерее — просто потому что понравилась газета.

[I-NOM decided subscribe on newspaper-ACC "Izvestia"-NOM, not thinking not about what lottery-LOC — simply because pleased newspaper-NOM.]

I decided to subscribe to the newspaper "Izvestia" without thinking about any lottery — simply because I liked the newspaper.

при, о can mean 'with' This use is restricted to describing how many things an item and it appears only in formulaic phrases such as стол о трёх ножках [table-NOM about three legs-LOC] 'a three-legged table', домик о двух этажах [house-NOM about two stories-LOC] 'a two-story house'.

### LOCATIVE: A PLACE 7—ПО 'after'

As mentioned in the introduction to this chapter, the locative case can be used with the preposition по to mean 'after, upon'. The combination of по + LOCATIVE: A PLACE is a historical left-over in modern Russian, limited to the domains of time and of emotional longing. In the domain of time, по + LOC tends to have a bureaucratic flavor, as in the following phrases:

#### LOCATIVE: A PLACE in the domain of time

'after the deadline is passed'  
по истечении срока

'after/upon arrival'  
по прибытии

'upon examination'  
по рассмотрении

'after (the end of) work'  
по окончании работы

In the domain of emotional longing, the locative is an alternative ending in the two phrases скучать по 'miss (a person, place, thing)' and тоскá по 'longing for', which can be followed with either the dative or the locative case.

The Russian Academy Grammar offers the following quote from Turgenev, demonstrating the use of по + LOC in the domain of time:

По возвращении в деревню бурмистр повёл нас посмотреть веялку.

[After return-LOC to village-ACC bailiff-NOM led us-ACC look winnowing-machine-ACC.]

After his return to the village, the bailiff took us to look at t ing machi

LOCATIVE:  
PLACE means  
'in the  
domain of

ПО + LOCATIVE:  
PLACE means  
'after,  
the domain

ПО + LOCATIVE:  
PLACE expresses  
the object of

---

## EPILOGUE

Russian views most locations as containers (with *в*) or as surfaces (with *на*). However since even in physical space many locations are not unambiguously either containers or surfaces, Russian uses conceptual conventions to choose between these two options. Thus any location that is understood as bounded is a potential container. Any location that is unbounded and/or has some vertical elevation can be construed as a surface. Time is usually understood as a container, whereas events are surfaces (at least when we attend them — however, we can talk about their contents with *в*). With the preposition *при* we see that the concept of physical contiguity is translated into the domain of time as simultaneity. Thinking and talking have their own domain, with topics serving as locations for pondering and discussing. The locative case demonstrates very clearly how agile Russian is in taking locational concepts derived from spatial relations and implementing them in other domains. Indeed, this is a recurrent theme all through the case system.

## EPILOGUE

Russian views most locations as containers (with *в*) or as surfaces (with *на*). However, since even in physical space many locations are not unambiguously either containers or surfaces, Russian uses conceptual conventions to choose between these two options. Thus any location that is understood as bounded is a potential container. Any location that is unbounded and/or has some vertical elevation can be construed as a surface. Time is usually understood as a container, whereas events are surfaces (at least when we attend them — however, we can talk about their contents with *в*). With the preposition *при* we see that the concept of physical contiguity is translated into the domain of time as simultaneity. Thinking and talking have their own domain, with topics serving as locations for pondering and discussing. The locative case demonstrates very clearly how agile Russian is in taking locational concepts derived from spatial relations and implementing them in other domains. Indeed, this is a recurrent theme all through the case system.

## APPENDIX

This Appendix is intended to serve as a general orientation tool for identifying the endings associated with the six cases. The paradigms, along with the notes and exceptions, should enable you to identify virtually all the case endings you are likely to encounter. These paradigms will not, however, provide you with a comprehensive guide to other features of Russian inflection, such as placement of stress and mobile vowels (some other books that will give you this information are listed among our suggestions for Further Reading; Levin 1978 is particularly recommended).

### Russian Spelling Rules

In order to properly interpret the paradigms, you need to keep in mind the spelling rules that apply to combining consonant and vowel letters and the spelling of [j] (which sounds like the *y* in *yes*). Note that these are rules for spelling case endings; they are not a complete guide to Russian spelling. Most Russian consonants can be hard or soft (and are therefore called "paired"), but instead of having separate consonant letters to show this, Russian uses vowel letters and the soft sign, *ь*. Here is how it is done:

---

#### in order to spell a hard paired consonant:

a consonant letter:	is combined with
б, в, з, л, м, н, п, р, с, т, ф	

---

#### in order to spell a soft paired consonant:

a consonant letter:	ined with	a soft vowel letter:
б, в, з, л, м, н, п, р, с, т, ф		я, е, и, ё, ю, о, ь

---

As a rule, if the last consonant in a word is hard, it will generally stay that way throughout its paradigm, and if it is soft it will stay soft. The only major exception will be in the LOC singular, which is *-e* and softens the final consonant for all hard type nouns (although a few hard masculine nouns can have a LOC singular of *-y*, which of course does not soften). Note also that *ë* is just *e* when it is not stressed, and both these letters stand in for *o* in position after a soft paired consonant.

Spelling rules are different for the consonants that are not paired. These consonants come in four types, and here are the rules that apply:

---

#### the velars г, к, х:

a velar consonant letter:	ined with
г, к, х	

---

#### the hushers ж, ч, ш, щ:

a husher consonant letter:	only the followi
ж, ч, ш, щ	а, е, и, у, ó (if stressed)/е (if unstressed)

---

---

ined wit                    only the followi  
a, e, ъ, y,  
ó (if stressed)/e (if unstressed)

---

**[j] (which sounds like y in yes) can be spelled in three ways:**

it or at the end of a wo

ined wit

a soft vowel letter:

я, е, и, ё, ю

---

If an ending has an o after a hard paired consonant, this vowel will appear after a husher or ц as ó if it is stressed, or as e if it is not stressed. Compare these examples of INST singular forms for двор 'courtyard', нож 'knife', and месяц 'month'.

o after hard paired consonant  
двор**ом**

ó if stressed after husher or ц  
нож**ом**

e if unstressed after husher or  
мес**я**ц

Understanding the spelling of [j] should make it easier for you to spell endings on words that have stems ending in [j]. For example, the NOM singular and GEN singular endings are the same for 'courtyard': NOM singular двор, GEN singular двор**а** as they are for 'genius': NOM singular гений, GEN singular гения ([j] is the final consonant of гений, and it is still there even when the ending is added, so the ending is actually -а). There are also noun stems that end in [j] after a consonant. Compare for example тюрь**м**а 'prison' (a hard type feminine) with семь**я** 'family' (a soft type feminine with [j] as its final consonant):

NOM singular  
тюрь**м**а  
семь**я**

NOM plural  
тюрь**м**ы  
семь**ь**

GEN plural  
тюрем  
семь**ей**

Both nouns have the same stem structure, since both stems end in two consonants: the stem of тюрь**м**а ends in soft рь + м, and the stem of семь**я** ends in soft мь + [j]. And both nouns have the same ending for the GEN plural: a zero ending (the removal of the vowel represented by a or я), which also motivates an inserted e for both words. Семья spells й in the GEN plural because [j] is at the end of the word.

### Declension of Nouns

Nouns come in three genders: feminine, masculine, and neuter. For each gender we will list the endings for both a stem ending in a hard paired consonant ("hard" type) and for a stem ending in a soft paired consonant ("soft" type). Using the spelling rules above, you can determine which ending (hard type or soft type) you will need for the unpaired consonants. Although all of the information you really need is in the paradigms and the special notes attached to them, there are a couple of global issues that are worth mentioning at the outset: animacy and the formation of the GEN plural.

All animate nouns (nouns referring to living beings of the animal kingdom, including ourselves) substitute the GEN plural form for the ACC plural. Masculine animate nouns make this substitution in the singular as well, using the GEN singular form for the ACC singular. This is mentioned in the paradigms (except in the case of neuter nouns, where animacy is rare), but here are some concrete examples for good measure. Note that for inanimates the ACC forms are the same as the NOM forms, but for animates the ACC forms are the same as the GEN forms:

The role of animacy

	feminine		masculine		neuter	
	inanimate	imate	inanimate	imate	inanimate	animate
	'room'	'actress'	'courtyard'	'actor'	'cemetery'	'monster'
NOMsg	кóмната	акт́р́са	дво́р	актёр	кля́дбище	чудови́ще
NOMpl	кóмнаты	акт́р́сы	дво́ры	актёры	кля́дбища	чудови́ща
ACCpl	кóмнаты	акт́р́сы	дво́ры	актёров	кля́дбища	чудови́щ
GENpl	кóмнат	акт́р́с	дво́ров	актёров	кля́дбищ	чудови́щ

For masculine nouns, note also animacy in the singular:

NOMsg	дво́р	актёр
ACCsg	дво́р	актёра
GENsg	дво́ра	актёра

The GEN plural has three endings: zero (the removal of a final vowel), *-ов/-ев* (spelling rules apply), and *-ей*. With very few exceptions, the choice of GEN plural ending can be decided by looking at the NOM singular form:

Rules for the distribution of the three genitive plural endings: zero, *-ов/-ев*, and *-ей*.

#### zero

If the NOM singular ends in a vowel, remove that vowel to get a zero ending. There are examples of this GEN plural ending for feminine and neuter nouns in the table directly above. Be sure to use *ь* or *й* to spell a soft paired consonant or [j] left at the end: NOM singular *неде́ля* 'week' gives GEN plural *неде́ль*; NOM singular *фа́ми́лия* 'last name' gives GEN plural *фа́ми́лий*.

#### *-ов/-ев*

If the NOM singular ends in a hard paired consonant (б, в, з, л, м, н, п, р, с, т, ф), a velar (г, к, х), ц, or й, spell *-ов/-ев*. This gives us not only the GEN plural *дво́ров* above, but also the GEN plural *не́мцев* 'Germans' from NOM singular *не́мец* and GEN plural *слоёв* 'layers' from NOM singular *сло́й*.

#### *-ей*

If the NOM singular ends in a soft paired consonant (in other words б, в, з, л, м, н, п, р, с, т, ф + *ь*) or a husher (ж, ч, ш, щ), the ending is *-ей*. For example: NOM singular *автомобы́ль* 'automobile' has GEN plural *автомобы́лей* and NOM singular *но́ж* 'knife' has GEN plural *но́жей*.



## Feminine Declension Nouns

	hard type: 'room'		soft type: 'week'		-ь: 'talent'	
	singular	plural	singular	plural	singular	plural
NOM	кóмната	кóмнаты	недéля	недéли	спóсoбнoсть	спóсoбнoсти
INST	кóмнатoй	кóмнатами	недéлей	недéлями	спóсoбнoстью	спóсoбнoстями
ACC	кóмнату	кóмнаты = GEN if animate кóмнатам	недéлю	недéлям = GEN if animate недéлям	спóсoбнoсть	спóсoбнoсти
GEN		кóмнат	недéли	недéль	спóсoбнoсти	спóсoбнoстей
LOC		кóмнатах	недéле -ия > -ии	недéлях недéль	спóсoбнoсти	спóсoбнoстях

The INST singular of hard type and soft type nouns has a variant (archaic/poetic) ending -oю/-eю. Soft type nouns ending in -ия use -ии in both the DAT singular and the LOC singular, so *истóрия* 'history' has the form *истóрии* for both. It is not uncommon for soft type feminine nouns ending in -ия to harden their final consonant in the GEN plural form: NOM singular *пéсня* 'song' has GEN plural *пéсен*.

Not all feminine declension nouns are feminine. There are many nouns of both the hard and soft type that refer to male human beings, such as *дéдушка* 'grandfather', *дéдя* 'uncle', and nicknames like *Кóстя* from *Константiн* or *Грiша* from *Григорiй*. Although these nouns and names decline as animate feminine declension nouns, any adjective that agrees with them uses masculine endings, which gives us *стáрый дéдушка* 'old grandfather'. There is also one masculine noun which follows the feminine type in -ь, *путь* 'way'; asserts its masculinity only in the INST singular, which is *путьём*.

### Exceptions:

- 1) *Мáть* 'mother' and *дóчь* 'daughter' follow the declension of *спóсoбнoсть*, but add -e before all endings: INST singular *мáтерью/дóчерью*, DAT/GEN/LOC singular and NOM plural *мáтери/дóчери*, etc. For the word 'daughter', the INST plural has two variants: *дóчерьями/дóчерьми*.
- 2) *Лóшадь* 'horse' has the exceptional INST plural *лóшадьями* alongside the expected *лóшадья*.
- 3) Some soft type nouns and some nouns with stem in *husher + a* have a GEN plural in -ей instead of zero: *вожжá* 'rein' has GEN plural *вожжéй*, *тётя* 'aunt' has GEN plural *тётей*, and the same goes for *дéдя* 'uncle' with GEN plural *дéдей*.

## Masculine Declension Nouns

	hard type: 'courtyard'		soft type:	
	singular	plural	singular	plural
NOM	двор	дворы́	гвоздь	гвозди
INST	дворoм	дворáми	гвоздём	гвоздья́ми
ACC	двор	дворы́ = GEN if animate	гвоздь = GEN if animate	гвозди = GEN if animate
DAT	двору́	дворáм	гвоздью́	гвоздья́м
GEN	дворá	дворoв	гвоздья́	гвоздья́й
LOC	дворé	дворáх	гвоздé	гвоздья́х

Some masculine declension nouns can also have the ending -y/-ю in the GEN singular and/or LOC singular, for example чаю '(some) tea' and в снегу 'in the snow' This is discussed in the chapters on the genitive and locative cases. There are also many masculine declension nouns that use the ending -á/-я for the NOM plural: NOM singular дом 'house' has NOM plural дома́, and NOM singular учитель has NOM plural учителя́. Inanimates use this ending for the ACC plural as well, so we have ACC plural дома́.

*Exceptions:*

1) Some words have a hard type declension in the singular, but a soft type declension throughout the plural, adding a [j] (spelled ь + soft vowel letter) to the stem. Compare the NOM singular and plural forms in these examples:

NOM singular	NOM plural
муж	мужья́
стул	стулья́
брат	бра́тья
сын	сыно́вья
друг	дру́зья

There are a few nouns that can have both a hard and soft plural of this type, depending upon their meaning: зуб 'tooth' usually has the NOM plural зу́бы, but if it refers to the teeth on a cogged wheel, its NOM plural is зу́бья.

2) A rarer case of a hard type singular and a soft type plural is represented by чёрт 'devil' and сосед 'neighbor', which have the NOM plural forms чёрти and соседи and follow the soft type declension throughout the plural.

3) Some nouns have a singular stem in -ин, but form their plural by removing -ин. All of these nouns refer to human beings, and most of them name members of a nationality. In the plural they continue to follow the hard type declension, but they can have a variety of NOM plural endings. By far the most common NOM plural ending is -е, but note variants also:

	NOM singular	NOM plural
'Englishman'	англича́нин	англича́не
'Bulgarian'	болга́рин	болга́ры
'master'	хозя́ин	хозя́ева

All of these nouns have a zero ending in the GEN-ACC plural: англича́н, болга́р, хозя́ев.

4) There are a number of nouns referring to the young of animals that have a singular stem ending in -енок/-ёнок which follows the masculine hard type declension, but a plural stem ending -ят/-ята which follows the neuter hard type declension. For example, NOM singular котёнок 'kitten' has the NOM plural котя́та, with an animate GEN-ACC plural of котя́т. Ребёнок 'child' has two plurals: one is the expected NOM plural ребя́та which however means 'fellows', whereas 'children' is expressed by the NOM plural де́ти (which follows the soft type declension and has the unusual INST plural детьми́).

5) One very common noun has a completely different stem in the plural than in the singular: человек 'person' (hard type masculine throughout the singular), with the NOM plural люди 'people' (soft stem masculine throughout the plural, but note that the GEN plural with numerals is usually человек instead of людей).

6) A few nouns have a zero ending in the GEN plural, which is therefore the same as the NOM singular: солдат 'soldier', сапог 'boot', глаз 'eye'.

7) The GEN plural of год 'year' is usually лет; годов is possible only when referring to a special set of years: мода девяностых годов 'fashion of the nineties'.

### Neuter Declension Nouns

	hard type: 'body'		soft type: 'schedule'	
	singular	plural	singular	plural
NOM	тѐло	телá	расписáние	расписáния
INST	тѐлом	телáми	расписáнием	расписáниями
ACC	тѐло	телáм	расписáние	расписáния
DAT	тѐлу	телáм	расписáнию	расписáниям
GEN	тѐла	тел	расписáния	расписáний
LOC	тѐле	телáх	расписáнии	расписáниях

The vast majority of soft type neuter nouns end in -ие; for those that do not, the LOC singular ending is -е, so NOM singular and LOC singular look alike for море 'sea'.

### Exceptions

1) A few common neuter nouns do not follow the usual rules for the GEN plural. Море 'sea' and поле 'field' have GEN plural forms морей and полей. Платье 'dress' and облако 'cloud' have GEN plural forms платьев and облаков.

2) There are ten neuter nouns that end in -мя: бремя 'burden', время 'time', вымя 'udder', знамя 'banner', имя 'name', пламя 'flame', племя 'tribe', семя 'seed', стрёмья 'stirrup', тёмья 'crown (of head)'. All of them decline like время, with the addition of -ен to the stem; the only exceptions are the GEN plural forms for семя and стрёмья, which are семян and стрёмьян.

	singular	plural
NOM	время	временá
INST	временем	временáми
ACC	время	временá
DAT	времениá	временáм
GEN	времениá	времен
LOC	времени	временáх

3) Чудо 'miracle' and небо 'heaven' both add -ес to their stems throughout the plural, giving NOM plural чудесá and небесá. Тѐло can use the alternate plural телесá in the special meaning 'heavenly bodies'.

4) A few nouns have a soft stem ending in [j] in the plural; the most common is *дерево* 'tree' (with the expected hard type neuter declension throughout the singular), which has NOM plural *деревья*. All such nouns have the unexpected GEN plural *-ев*.

5) A few nouns, most referring to paired parts of the body, have an unexpected NOM plural in *-я*:

	NOM singular	NOM plural
'knee'	колѣно	колѣни
'shoulder'	плечѣ	плечи
'ear'	ухо	уши
'apple'	яблоко	яблоки

There are also some borrowed nouns of all genders that do not decline at all, for example *сопрано* 'soprano' (feminine in reference to a singer, but neuter in reference to a musical part), and *кенгурѹ* 'kangaroo' (masculine).

### Adjectives

Adjectives, like nouns, come in hard and soft types, and they match their gender, number, and case to the noun they modify.

		hard type: 'first'		
	feminine	masculine	neuter	
NOM	пѣрвая	пѣрвый	пѣрвое	
INST	пѣрвой	пѣрвым	пѣрвым	пѣрвыми
ACC	пѣрвую	пѣрвый = GEN if animate	пѣрвое	пѣрвые = GEN if animate
DAT	пѣрвой	пѣрвому	пѣрвому	пѣрвым
GEN	пѣрвой	пѣрвого	пѣрвого	пѣрвых
LOC	пѣрвой	пѣрвом	пѣрвом	пѣрвых
		soft type: 'last'		
	feminine	masculine	neuter	plural
NOM	послѣдняя	послѣдний	послѣднее	послѣдние
INST	послѣдней	послѣдним	послѣдним	послѣдними
ACC	послѣднюю	послѣдний = GEN if animate	послѣднее	послѣдние = GEN if animate
DAT	послѣдней	послѣднему	послѣднему	послѣдним
GEN	послѣдней	послѣднего	послѣднего	послѣдних
LOC	послѣдней	послѣднем	послѣднем	послѣдних

Both hard and soft type adjectives have variant (archaic/poetic) endings *-ою/-ею* for the feminine INST singular. There are short adjectives, but these appear only in the nominative case (NOMINATIVE: AN IDENTITY), for example *я готова, он готов, мы все готовы* 'I am ready, he is ready, we are all ready'. In addition, there are some soft type adjectives that have short endings in the NOM and ACC; these are possessive adjectives like *волчий* 'wolf's' and the ordinal numeral *третий* 'third'. These adjectives have the following NOM and ACC endings (their endings for other cases contain *ь* followed by the soft type endings listed above, giving *третьей, третьего*, etc.):

	feminine	masculine	plural
NOM	трѣтья	трѣтій	трѣти
ACC	трѣтью	трѣтій	трѣтѣх
		трѣтѣго	if animate

## Pronouns

	'I'	'we'	'you' informal	'you'
NOM	я	мы	ты	вы
INST	мнѣй	на́ми	тобѣй	ва́ми
ACC	меня́	нас	тебѣ́	вас
DAT	мнѣ	нам	тебѣ́	вам
GEN	меня́	нас	тебѣ́	вас
LOC	мнѣ	нас	тебѣ́	вас

	'she'	'he'	'it'	'they'
NOM	она́	он	оно́	они́
INST	(н)еѣ	(н)им	(н)им	(н)и́ми
ACC	(н)еѣ	(н)его́	(н)его́	(н)их
DAT	(н)еѣ	(н)ему́	(н)ему́	(н)им
GEN	(н)еѣ	(н)его́	(н)его́	(н)их
LOC	ней	нѣм	нѣм	них

	'who'	'what'	
NOM	кто	что	
INST	кем	чем	собѣй
ACC	кого́	что́	себѣ́
DAT	кому́	чему́	себѣ́
GEN	кого́	чего́	себѣ́
LOC	ком	чѣм	себѣ́

	feminine	masculine	'this'	plural
NOM	ѣта	ѣтот	ѣто	ѣти
INST	ѣтой	ѣтѣм	ѣтѣм	ѣтѣми
ACC	ѣту	ѣтот	ѣто	ѣти
		ѣтого		ѣтѣх
		if animate		if animate
DAT	ѣтой	ѣтому	ѣтому	ѣтѣм
GEN	ѣтой	ѣтого	ѣтого	ѣтѣх
LOC	ѣтой	ѣтом	ѣтом	ѣтѣх

	feminine	masculi	neuter	plural
NOM	вѣя	вѣсь	вѣѣ	вѣе
INST	вѣей	вѣем	вѣем	вѣѣми
ACC	вѣю	вѣсь	вѣѣ	вѣе
		вѣего́		вѣех
		if animate		if animate
DAT	вѣей	вѣемѣу	вѣемѣу	вѣем
GEN	вѣей	вѣего́	вѣего́	вѣех
LOC	вѣей	вѣѣм	вѣѣм	вѣех

I, every'

Note the variant (archaic/poetic) INST forms *мною, тобою, (н)ею, собою*, and feminine *этою, всею*. Сам 'by oneself' looks exactly like *этот* except that it does not add -*от* in the masculine NOM singular. Тот 'that' looks just like *этот* except that (like *весь*) it uses the vowel *е* everywhere that *этот* uses *и* (so the plural is *те, теми*, etc.).

Notes on

## Possessives

	feminine	masculine	'my'	
NOM	мо́я	мо́й	мое́	мои́
INST	моёй	мои́м	мои́м	мои́ми
ACC	мою́	мо́й	моё	мои́
		моего́ if animate		мои́х if animate
		моему́	моему́	мои́м
		моего́	моего́	мои́х
		мои́м	мои́м	мои́х
NOM	на́ша	наш		на́ши
INST	на́шей	на́шим		на́шими
ACC	на́шу	наш		на́ши
		на́шего if animate		на́ших if animate
DAT	на́шей	на́шему	на́шему	на́шим
GEN	на́шей	на́шего	на́шего	на́ших
LOC	на́шей	на́шем	на́шем	на́ших

Твой 'your (informal)', and свой 'one's own' look just like *мой*. Ваш 'your' looks just like *наш*. And of course *её* 'her', *его́* 'his', and *их* 'their' do not decline. Aside from the NOM singular masculine form (which has the vowel *е* instead of *и*), *чей* 'whose' looks just like *третий* (for example, feminine forms are *чья, чьей, чью*, etc.). As with adjectives, the feminine INST singular of possessives has a variant ending -*ю*.

Possessives.

## Numerals

	feminine	masculine	'one'	
NOM	одна́	оди́н	оди́н	одни́
INST	одной	одни́м	одни́м	одни́ми
ACC	одну́	оди́н	оди́н	одни́
		одного́ if animate		одни́х if animate
DAT	одной	одному́	одному́	одни́м
GEN	одной	одного́	одной	одни́х
LOC	одной	одном	одном	одни́х

	'two'		
NOM	две (feminine) два (masc/neut)		
	двумя	четырьмя	пятью
	две / два	четыре	пять
	двух	четырёх	
	if animate	if animate	
DAT	двум	четырёх	
GEN	двух	четырёх	
LOC	двух	четырёх	

Note the feminine INST variant *однойю*. *Оба* 'both' has the following forms for masculine and neuter: INST *обоими*, ACC *оба*, DAT *обоим*, GEN *обоих*, LOC *обоих*. The feminine forms are the same, but the vowel *e* is substituted for *a*, giving *обе*, *обеими*, etc. When the numbers *оба/обе*, *два/две*, *три*, and *четыре* (also called the "paucal numerals") are used in the NOM or ACC cases, the adjectives and nouns they modify appear with a variety of endings. Adjectives use an ending that looks like the GEN plural (the only acceptable ending when the noun is masculine or neuter) or the NOM/ACC plural (preferred when the noun is feminine). Nouns use an ending that looks like the GEN singular, but sometimes has a unique stress (for example, in the phrase *два часа* 'two hours', *часá* has no equivalent anywhere in the paradigm for *час* 'hour'; the GEN singular is *чáса*). This book will follow the convention of treating the entire paucal numeral + adjective + noun phrase as NOM when the numeral is NOM, and ACC when the numeral is ACC, thus:

У меня *три красивых брата* и *две красивые/красивых сестры*.  
 [By me-GEN three handsome brothers-NOM and two beautiful sisters-NOM.]  
 I have *three handsome brothers* and *two beautiful sisters*.

Я ждалá *четыре долгих часа* и *четыре долгие/долгих минуты*.  
 [I-NOM waited four long hours-ACC and four long minutes-ACC.]  
 I waited *four long hours* and *four long minutes*.

Collective numerals have one form for the NOM and (inanimate) ACC, such as *двое* 'two-some', *трое* 'threesome', *четверо* 'foursome', *пятеро* 'fivesome', etc., and form all other cases with adjectival endings, giving for example the INST forms: *двойми*, *тройми*, *четырьми*, *пятерьми*, etc. *Ско́лько* 'how many' behaves like the collectives (INST: *ско́лькими*). *Сорок* 'forty', *девяно́сто* 'ninety', *сто* 'hundred' all have the ending -a in the INST, DAT, GEN, and LOC forms. For numerals from 'two hundred' to 'nine hundred', however, *сто* is declined like any hard type neuter noun, with the exception that 'two hundred' is *двéсти*. *Ты́сяча* 'thousand', *миллио́н* 'million', and *миллиа́рд* 'billion' are all declined just like ordinary nouns.

### Prepositions

Most prepositions that end in a consonant (*без* 'without', *из* 'from', *над* 'above', *об* 'about, against', *от* 'from', *пéред* 'before', *под* 'under') or consist only of a consonant (*в*

'to', к 'to', с 'with, from, approximately') will frequently add the vowel -o (creating безо, изо, надо, обо, ото, пёредо, подо, во, ко, со) preceding certain consonant clusters, i particular:

мн- (primarily in forms of много/многие 'many' and the pronoun я 'I'): во мно́гом 'in many ways', ко мне 'to me', пёредо мной 'before me'

вс- (primarily in forms of весь 'all'): изо всех сил 'with all one's might', 'to everyone'.

The addition of -o to prepositions is also common when the consonant cluster of the next word begins with the same (or similar) consonant as the one at the end of the preposition: во вто́рник 'on Tuesday', со стола́ 'from the table', со злóсти 'out of spite', со ща́ми 'with cabbage soup', со счёта 'from the bill'. Less predictable is the insertion of -o before words with other consonant clusters, such as во рту 'in one's mouth', ко дну́ 'to the bottom', обо что́ 'against what', подо льдом 'under the ice'.

The preposition о 'against, about' always adds -б (becoming об) before words beginning in a vowel (а, э, и, о, у), and frequently adds the -б even before consonants when used with the accusative case to indicate 'against', as in об стенку́ 'against the wall'. Regardless of the case used, об will further add -o (becoming обо) before most declined forms (containing мн- and вс-) of я and весь: обо мне 'about me', обо всё́м 'about everything'.

## Names

Russian first names and patronymics decline like nouns, but surnames follow a variety of patterns, depending upon their stem shape. There are five types of surnames: 1) Russian surnames ending in -ын, -ин, -ов, -ёв, or -ев; 2) Russian and foreign surnames ending in a consonant; 3) Surnames ending in unstressed -а or -я; 4) Russian surnames with adjectival stems ending in -ый, -ий, or -ой; 5) Russian surnames ending in -ых, -их, -аго, -яго, -ово, Ukrainian surnames ending in -ко, -енко, and all foreign surnames ending in a vowel (other than -а).

1) Russian surnames ending in -ын, -ин, -ов, -ёв, or -ев follow a mixed declension containing both nominal and pronominal endings.

	feminine singular	masculine singular	plural
NOM	Пу́шкина	Пу́шкин	Пу́шкины
INST	Пу́шкиной	Пу́шкиным	Пу́шкиными
ACC	Пу́шкину	Пу́шкина	Пу́шкиных
DAT	Пу́шкиной	Пу́шкину	Пу́шкиным
GEN	Пу́шкиной	Пу́шкина	Пу́шкиных
LOC	Пу́шкиной	Пу́шкине	Пу́шкиных

2) Russian and foreign surnames ending in a consonant are declined like masculine nouns when they refer to a male person, but are indeclinable when they refer to a female person. Compare: Я люблю́ Ді́ка Лонга́ 'I love Dick Long' vs. Я люблю́ Са́ру Лонг 'I love Sara Long'.



3) Surnames ending in unstressed -а or -я are declined like feminine nouns regardless of whether they refer to a man or woman: Я люблю Булата/Марию Окуджаву 'I love Bulat/Maria Okudzhava'.

4) Russian surnames with adjectival stems ending in -ый, -ий, or -ой are declined like adjectives and agree in gender and number with the person or persons that they refer to: Я люблю Андрея Бёлого/Маю Плесецкую 'I love Andrej Belyj/Maja Plesetskaja'.

5) Russian surnames ending in -ых, -их, -ого, -яго, -ово, Ukrainian surnames ending in -ко, -енко, and all foreign surnames ending in a vowel (other than -а) are indeclinable (although there is some tendency to decline the Ukrainian surnames ending in -ко, -енко like Russian surnames ending in unstressed -а, cf. 3 above): Я люблю Доктора Живаго/Шевчэнку (Шевчэнку).

## FURTHER READINGS

This is a list of particularly useful reference and theoretical materials that have inspired the *Case Book for Russian*, which interested students might wish to consult, but not a comprehensive bibliography on the topics of case meaning and morphology.

On Russian case meanings:

Brecht, Richard D. and James S. Levine, eds. 1986. *Case in Slavic*. Columbus: Slavica. [This is a compendium of articles on case in Slavic languages by leading scholars; about half of the articles deal specifically with Russian case usage. In addition to the articles, there is a very useful introduction on Case and Meaning by the editors and a thorough, if now somewhat outdated bibliography.]

Jakobson, Roman. 1984. "Contribution to the General Theory of Case: General Meanings of the Russian Cases", in Roman Jakobson. *Russian and Slavic Grammar. Studies 1931-1981*, ed. by Waugh, Linda R. and Morris Halle. Berlin/New York/Amsterdam: Mouton, pp. 59-103. [This is a translation from the German of the original article which was published in 1936 by the Prague Linguistic Circle and then again in 1971 in volume 2 of Jakobson's *Selected Writings*. This visionary article remains a landmark in the field of Russian case semantics.]

Wade, Terence. 1992. *A Comprehensive Russian Grammar*, ed. by Michael J. de K. Holman. Oxford/Cambridge, USA: Blackwell. [This is an excellent reference book, and can be used to supersede previous grammars of Russian by Pulkina and Unbegaun. See particularly the section on Case Usage, pp. 85-110 and the chapter on The Preposition, pp. 416-487.]

Wierzbicka, Anna. 1980. *The Case for Surface Case*. Ann Arbor: Karoma. [This book is devoted to the Russian instrumental as an illustration of Wierzbicka's reasons for objecting to certain aspects of Fillmore's theoretical writings — see Fillmore's "The Case for Case" cited below.]

On Russian case endings

Leed, Richard and Slava Paperno. 1987. *5000 Russian Words*. Columbus: Slavica. [This is a dictionary giving the complete stressed paradigms for 5000 of the most common nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and verbs of Russian. Leed's Appendix on Russian Endings at the back of the book is especially useful.]

Levin, Mauricc I. 1978. *Russian Declension and Conjugation: A Structural Description with Exercises*. Columbus: Slavica. [This book is devoted entirely to a systematic description of endings for nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and verbs. The system also handles stress and fill vowels, and there are enough exercises to enable students to fully master Russian inflection. Doing the exercises is tedious, but worthwhile.]

On meaning and metaphor in grammar:

- Dahl, Osten. 1985. *Case Grammar and Prototypes*. Duisburg: L.A.U.D. [*A brief and insightful work, much ahead of its time.*]
- Fillmore, Charles J. 1968. "The Case for Case", in: Emmon Bach and Robert T. Harms (eds.), *Universals in Linguistic Theory*. New York: Reinhart & Winston, pp. 1-88. [*This work is widely regarded as a pathbreaking article on case semantics. Fillmore revisited this topic in 1977, in "The Case for Case Reopened", in: Peter Cole and Jerrold M. Saddock (eds.), Grammatical Relations. Syntax & Semantics 8. New York: Academic Press, pp. 59-81 and also in 1982 in "Frame Semantics", in: Linguistic Society of Korea (eds.), Linguistics in the Morning Calm. Seoul: Hanshin, pp. 111-138.*]
- Johnson, Mark. 1987. *The Body in the Mind*. Chicago/London: U of Chicago Press. [*This book deals with the way in which perceptual experience serves as source material for deriving abstract relationships in human cognition. Chapters 2, 4, and 5 are particularly relevant to the relationships encoded in case.*]
- Lakoff, George. 1987. *Women, Fire, and Dangerous Things*. Chicago/London: U of Chicago Press. [*This book explores the relevance of metaphor, metonymy, and semantic category structure to grammar. It rambles quite a lot, but establishes the principles according to which the Case Book for Russian seeks to explain the cases as coherent semantic wholes.*]
- Langacker, Ronald. W. 1987. *Foundations of Cognitive Grammar: Theoretical Prerequisites, Vol. 1*, and 1991. *Foundations of Cognitive Grammar: Descriptive Application, Vol. 2*. Stanford: Stanford University Press. [*This work fleshes out the ideas suggested by Lakoff in serious detail, but is rather difficult to wade through.*]
- Talmy, Leonard. 1986. *The Relation of Grammar to Cognition*. Berkeley: Berkeley Cognitive Science Report. [*Also in: Proceedings of TINLAP-2, ed. by D. Waltz. Champaign, Ill: Coordinated Science Laboratory, University of Illinois. This article deals specifically with the distinctions between lexical and grammatical meaning.*]

## SOURCES

The examples in *The Case Book for Russian* have been culled from the following sources:

## PERIODICALS:

*Аргументы и факты* (1998)  
*Известия* (1994, 1995, 1997, 1998)  
*Итоги* (1998)  
*Коммерсант* (1998)  
*Комсомольская правда* (1998)  
*Красная звезда* (1998)  
*Литературная газета* (1997, 1998)  
*Московская правда* (1998)  
*Московский комсомолец* (1998)  
*Независимая газета* (1997, 1998)  
*Огонек* (1998)  
*Правда* (1998)  
*Российские вести* (1998)  
*Сегодня* (1998)

## BOOKS:

Баранская, Наталья. 1989. *Неделя как неделя*, ed. by Lora Paperno, Natalie Roklina, and Richard Leed. Columbus: Slavica.

Довлатов, Сергей. 1991. *Две повести*. Москва:

Довлатов, Сергей. 1993. *Собрание прозы в трех томах*. Петербург: Лимбус-пресс.

Маринина, Александра. 1997. *Иллюзия греха*. Москва: Эксмо.

Набатникова, Татьяна. 1995. *Не родись красивой*. Ростов-на-Дону: Изд-во Проф-пресс.

Петрушевская, Людмила. 1996. *Собрание сочинений в пяти томах. Том I*. Москва: ТКО АСТ.

imes, Natasha and Richard M. Robin. 1992. *Political Russian: An Intermediate Course in Russian Language for International Relations, National Security and Socio-Economics*. Dubuque: Kendall/Hunt.

Токарева, Виктория. 1996. *Летающие качели*. Москва: ЕКСМО.

Щербакова, Галина. 1996. *Вам и не снилось*. Москва: Издательский дом русанова.

Щербакова, Галина. 1996. *Год Алены*. Москва: Вагриус.

WEBSITES:

Хармс, Даниил. <http://sunsite.sut.ac.jp/asia/russia/russian-studies/Literature/Harms>.

Маканин, Владимир. "Кавказский пленный" Новы́  
[partners.org/~afarber/makanin/index.html](http://partners.org/~afarber/makanin/index.html)

Новодворская, Валерия. *По ту сторону отчаяния*. Москва: Издательство новости  
1993. <http://mech.math.msu.su/~gmk/ds/side088.htm>

Солженицын, Александр. [://sunsite.sut.ac.jp/asia/russia/russian-studies/Literature/Gulag](http://sunsite.sut.ac.jp/asia/russia/russian-studies/Literature/Gulag).

Сорокин, Владимир. "Очередь". [://www.sparc.spb.su/Avz/lit/Sorokin/ocheder.html](http://www.sparc.spb.su/Avz/lit/Sorokin/ocheder.html)

## Notes on the Exercises

### *Three Levels of Exercises*

Exercises for *The Case Book for Russian* are divided into three levels of increasing difficulty. Level I exercises contain short sentences with vocabulary that is common to first-year courses. Level II exercises contain longer, more difficult sentences and vocabulary. Level III exercises contain the most complex sentences and the most difficult vocabulary. Sentences with participles or verbal adverbs are almost exclusively limited to Level III. It is highly recommended that you work through the exercises using the accompanying software package, *The Case Book for Russian INTERACTIVE*, but the exercises are also provided here for easy use in the classroom.

### *Three Types of Exercises*

For each level, there are three different types of exercises. There are separate exercise sets for each case individually, in which the task is to identify the instances of the case in question and explain why the case is used. Following the single-case exercises are mixed-case exercises of the same type. These mixed-case exercises ask the student to identify all the cases in a sentence and explain why the case is used. A second type of mixed case exercise presents all case items in the nominative case and requires the student to reconstruct the original sentence. Translation from Russian to English is also featured in the exercises. For questions on specific constructions in the exercises, consult the index for the relevant section of the book.

### *The Answer Key*

An answer key is available for instructors using *The Case Book for Russian*. However, all answers to the exercises may be found by using *The Case Book for Russian INTERACTIVE*. The answer key contains all the original sentences where the Russian example is given in full followed by the sentence parsing and a smooth English translation. Numbers following each sentence in the exercises correspond to the sentence number in the key.

### *Additional Activities*

In addition to working through these exercises, students may apply the knowledge gained from this book in analyzing any readings, dialogues, or other speech contexts. In order to facilitate active case use, instructors may wish to have students write Russian sentences using selected vocabulary from the various tables throughout the book.



## Level I Exercises

## Nominative Exercise 1, Level I

Identify the instances of the NOMINATIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the NOMINATIVE is used.

То положение, в котором я находилась, было абсолютно простым и ясным.  
[That situation-\_\_\_\_, in which-\_\_\_\_ I-\_\_\_\_ was-found, was absolutely simple-\_\_\_\_ and clear-\_\_\_\_.] (I-4)

Онi всегда были хулиганами, только вначале маленькие хулиганы, юные, а теперь старые.  
[They-\_\_\_\_ always were hooligans-\_\_\_\_, just at-first little hooligans-\_\_\_\_, then young-\_\_\_\_, and now old-\_\_\_\_.] (I-10)

В этом году Россию, возможно, посетит глава управления национальной обороны Японии.  
[In this year-\_\_\_\_ Russia-\_\_\_\_, possibly, visits head-\_\_\_\_ administration-\_\_\_\_ national defense-\_\_\_\_ Japan-\_\_\_\_.] (I-17)

Вот из третьего подъезда выходит с портфелем мой сосед.  
[Here from third doorway-\_\_\_\_ walks-out with briefcase-\_\_\_\_ my neighbor-\_\_\_\_.] (I-28)

—Кто это подходил? —Уборщица...Женщина лет шестидесяти пяти.  
[-Who-\_\_\_\_ that-\_\_\_\_ came? -Maid-\_\_\_\_...Woman-\_\_\_\_ years-\_\_\_\_ sixty five-\_\_\_\_.] (I-42)

Мой брат — раб своего организма.  
[My brother-\_\_\_\_ — slave-\_\_\_\_ own body-\_\_\_\_.] (I-56)

Кому оно нужно сейчас, моё самолюбие?  
[Who-\_\_\_\_ it-\_\_\_\_ needed-\_\_\_\_ now, my narcissism-\_\_\_\_?] (I-59)

Потом из окна вывалилась третья старуха, потом четвертая, потом пятая.  
[Then from window-\_\_\_\_ tumbled-out third old-woman-\_\_\_\_, then fourth-\_\_\_\_, then fifth-\_\_\_\_.] (I-72)

Интересно, попадет ли в руки мэра Лужкова этот номер "Литгазеты"?  
[Interesting, fall if in hands-\_\_\_\_ mayor Luzhkov-\_\_\_\_ this issue-\_\_\_\_ "Litgazeta-\_\_\_\_"?] (I-85)

Буквально через час к ней придет "расстрельная бригада".  
[Literally in hour-\_\_\_\_ to her-\_\_\_\_ comes "execution brigade-\_\_\_\_".] (I-91)



Более того, по мысли автора, Солженицын велик независимо от того, прав он или не прав в своих суждениях.

[More that-\_\_\_\_, along thought-\_\_\_\_ author-\_\_\_\_, Solzhenitsyn-\_\_\_\_ great-\_\_\_\_ irrespective from that-\_\_\_\_, right-\_\_\_\_ he-\_\_\_\_ or not right-\_\_\_\_ in own judgments-\_\_\_\_.] (I-95)

А здесь вообще здорово спать. Уютный уголок. Я сто лет на природе не спал, а ты?

[And here generally cool sleep. Comfortable corner-\_\_\_\_. I-\_\_\_\_ hundred-\_\_\_\_ years-\_\_\_\_ in nature-\_\_\_\_ not slept, and you-\_\_\_\_?] (I-136)

Nominative  
Exercise 2  
Level

Nominative Exercise 2, Level I

*Identify the instances of the NOMINATIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the NOMINATIVE is used.*

Таким образом, всё выглядело совершенно нормально, если не считать тот факта, что я ещё не была женой Георгия.

[This image-\_\_\_\_, all-\_\_\_\_ looked completely normal, if not consider that fact-\_\_\_\_, that I-\_\_\_\_ still not was wife-\_\_\_\_ Georgij-\_\_\_\_.] (I-5)

Вероника вылезла из кустов и стала так, чтобы Вадим её заметил.

[Veronika-\_\_\_\_ crawled-out from bushes-\_\_\_\_ and stood so, so-that Vadim-\_\_\_\_ her-\_\_\_\_ noticed.] (I-11)

В наше время роль исповедника выполняют друзья и знакомые.

[In our time-\_\_\_\_ role-\_\_\_\_ confessor-\_\_\_\_ fill friends-\_\_\_\_ and acquaintances-\_\_\_\_.] (I-22)

Я должна была спросить насчёт талантов, но воздержалась.

[I-\_\_\_\_ should-\_\_\_\_ was ask about talents-\_\_\_\_, but held-back.] (I-30)

Круг её знакомых составляли адвокаты, врачи, журналисты, художники.

[Circle-\_\_\_\_ her acquaintances-\_\_\_\_ composed lawyers-\_\_\_\_, doctors-\_\_\_\_, journalists-\_\_\_\_, artists-\_\_\_\_.] (I-43)

Я сочиняю стихи. Это моё основное занятие в жизни.

[I-\_\_\_\_ compose verses-\_\_\_\_. That-\_\_\_\_ my principle occupation-\_\_\_\_ in life-\_\_\_\_.] (I-57)

Я дал ей лапу, как собака, и так же посмотрел в глаза.

[I-\_\_\_\_ her-\_\_\_\_ gave paw-\_\_\_\_, like dog-\_\_\_\_, and thus also looked in eyes-\_\_\_\_.] (I-64)

8 Он просит меня к себе, спрашивает, как идёт работа.

[He-\_\_\_\_ asks me-\_\_\_\_ to self-\_\_\_\_, asks, how goes work-\_\_\_\_.] (I-74)

Пóхороны состоялись на слéдующий день, при учáстии президента Белорýссии.

[Funeral-\_\_\_\_\_ took-place on next day-\_\_\_\_\_, at participation-\_\_\_\_\_ presi-  
\_\_\_\_\_ Belorussia-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-86)

Надо иметь в виду, что она человек глубоко верующий.

[Necessary have in view-\_\_\_\_\_, that she-\_\_\_\_\_ person-\_\_\_\_\_ deeply believi-  
\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-92)

Что же произошло на самом деле, и каковы мотивы шестнадцатилетней теннисистки?

[What-\_\_\_\_\_ EMPH happened in actual matter-\_\_\_\_\_, and what-kind-of-\_\_\_\_\_  
motives-\_\_\_\_\_ parents-\_\_\_\_\_ sixteen-year-old tennis-player-\_\_\_\_\_ ?] (I-119)

А при Сталине разве творилось такое?

[And under Stalin-\_\_\_\_\_ really made such-\_\_\_\_\_ ?] (I-138)

### Nominative Exercise 3, Level I

Identify the instances of the NOMINATIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the NOMINATIVE is used.

### Nominative Exercise 3 Level I

Наша первая встреча прошла тем не менее без излишних восторгов.

[Our first meeting-\_\_\_\_\_ passed that-\_\_\_\_\_ not less without excess enthusiasm-  
\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-6)

Фигура у неё была как цифра “восемь,” один круг на другом.

[Figure-\_\_\_\_\_ by her-\_\_\_\_\_ was like number-\_\_\_\_\_ “eight”-\_\_\_\_\_,  
\_\_\_\_\_ on other-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-14)

С первых же страниц в его книге чувствуется проблематика необычная и трудная.

[From first-\_\_\_\_\_ very pages-\_\_\_\_\_ i is book-\_\_\_\_\_ is-felt problems unusual-  
\_\_\_\_\_ and difficult-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-26)

Эмиграция есть “лаборатория свободы”.

[Emigration-\_\_\_\_\_ is “laboratory-\_\_\_\_\_ freedom-\_\_\_\_\_ ”.] (I-41)

Один из моих старых знакомых, работающий в столице, решил сделать мне подарок.

[One-\_\_\_\_\_ from my old friends-\_\_\_\_\_, working-\_\_\_\_\_ in capitol-\_\_\_\_\_,  
cided make me-\_\_\_\_\_ present-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-54)

Третью неделю идёт борьба за жизнь.

[Third week-\_\_\_\_\_ goes battle-\_\_\_\_\_ for life-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-58)

Только актёры могут играть один спектакль по десять раз. А мы не актёры, а люди. И не играем, а живём.

[Only actors-\_\_\_\_\_ can play one show-\_\_\_\_\_ along ten-\_\_\_\_\_ times-\_\_\_\_\_. But we-\_\_\_\_\_ not actors-\_\_\_\_\_, but people-\_\_\_\_\_. And not play, but live.] (I-67)

Мне вот дадут план, и тогда — прощай моя диссертация!

[Me-\_\_\_\_\_ look give plan-\_\_\_\_\_ and then — goodbye my dissertation-\_\_\_\_\_ !] (I-80)

Какое же впечатление на вас производит начало судебного процесса?

[What impression-\_\_\_\_\_ on you-\_\_\_\_\_ make initiation-\_\_\_\_\_ judicial process-\_\_\_\_\_ ?] (I-90)

Известно, что юность доверчива и любопытна, а потому и бесстрашна.

[Known, that youth-\_\_\_\_\_ gullible-\_\_\_\_\_ and curious-\_\_\_\_\_ and for-that-reason also fearless-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-93)

Нет, он не пьяный. Просто обалдел от жары.

[No, he-\_\_\_\_\_ not drunk-\_\_\_\_\_. Simply became-woozy from heat-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-135)

Вера пела в полный голос, и было слышно по этому голосу, что у неё хорошее настроение.

[Vera-\_\_\_\_\_ sang in full voice-\_\_\_\_\_, and was audible by this voice-\_\_\_\_\_, that by her-\_\_\_\_\_ good mood-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-146)

Instrumental  
Exercise  
Level I

Instrumental Exercise 1, Level I

*Identify the instances of the INSTRUMENTAL case in the following sentences and explain why the INSTRUMENTAL is used.*

И как раз в этот момент с лестницы стали нашу комнату открывать ключом.

[And how time in that moment -\_\_\_\_\_ from stairwell-\_\_\_\_\_ began our room-\_\_\_\_\_ open key-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-1)

Наша первая встреча прошла тем не менее без излишних восторгов.

[Our first meeting-\_\_\_\_\_ passed that-\_\_\_\_\_ not less without excess enthusiasm-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-6)

Чтобы попасть к дяде, надо спуститься ниже этажом.

[So-that arrive to uncle-\_\_\_\_\_, necessary descend lower floor-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-24)

Мой прадед был русским.

[My great-grandfather-\_\_\_\_\_ was Russian-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-61)

Я ёхал в троллэйбусе, а он столкнўлся с автобусом, и мне пришлось идти пешкѡм.

[I-\_\_\_\_\_ rode in trolleybus-\_\_\_\_\_, but it-\_\_\_\_\_ colli \_\_\_\_\_ ith bus-\_\_\_\_\_, and me-\_\_\_\_\_ was-necessary go by-foot-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-83)

Не бывать тебе американцем. И не уйти от своего прѡшлого.

[Not be you-\_\_\_\_\_ American-\_\_\_\_\_. And not leave from own past-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-99)

Вчера я над ним не работала.

[Yesterday I-\_\_\_\_\_ over it-\_\_\_\_\_ not worked.] (I-107)

Я открываю кран и умываю лицо холодной водой.

[I-\_\_\_\_\_ open faucet-\_\_\_\_\_ and wash face-\_\_\_\_\_ cold water-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-111)

Из-за того, что он обладает огромными финансовыми ресурсами, он имеет весьма серьёзное влияние на конгресс США.

[Because-of that-\_\_\_\_\_, that he-\_\_\_\_\_ controls huge financial resources-\_\_\_\_\_, he-\_\_\_\_\_ has very serious influence-\_\_\_\_\_ on Congress-\_\_\_\_\_ USA-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-120)

Вѡле рынка должнй квасом торговать.

[Alongside market-\_\_\_\_\_ should-\_\_\_\_\_ kvass-\_\_\_\_\_ trade.] (I-137)

Маша босикѡм, голая, пошла на кухню, чтобы попить воды.

[Masha-\_\_\_\_\_ barefoot-\_\_\_\_\_, naked-\_\_\_\_\_, went to kitchen-\_\_\_\_\_, drink water-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-149)

Вся жизнь после сорока — чем ты занимаешься, что ешь и какую книгу читаешь — всё это на лице и на руках.

[All life-\_\_\_\_\_ after forty-\_\_\_\_\_ — what-\_\_\_\_\_ you-\_\_\_\_\_ occupy-self, what-\_\_\_\_\_ eat and what-kind-of book-\_\_\_\_\_ read — all-\_\_\_\_\_ this-\_\_\_\_\_ on face-\_\_\_\_\_ and on hands-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-158)

### Instrumental Exercise 2, Level I

*Identify the instances of the INSTRUMENTAL case i plain why the INSTRUMENTAL is used.*

То положение, в котором я находилась, было абсолютно простым и ясным.

[That situation-\_\_\_\_\_, in which-\_\_\_\_\_ I-\_\_\_\_\_ was-found, was absolutely simple-\_\_\_\_\_ and clear-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-4)

Её комната была огромной и темноватой, с красивой старинной мебелью, с почти чёрным паркетом.

[Her room-\_\_\_\_\_ was enormous-\_\_\_\_\_ and rather-dark-\_\_\_\_\_, with beautiful antique furniture-\_\_\_\_\_, with almost black parquet-floor-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-7)

Я сижу́ перед зёркалом и рабóтаю над собо́й.

[I-\_\_\_\_\_ sit before mirror-\_\_\_\_\_ and work above self-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-165)

Подо мнóй и позади́ меня́ — гóры.

[Under me-\_\_\_\_\_ and behind me-\_\_\_\_\_ — mountains-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-66)

Корóче, я пропу́скал одну́ лекци́ю за друго́й. Лúчше всего́, таки́м óбразом, мне запо́мнились универси́тетские коридóры.

[Shorter, I-\_\_\_\_\_ skipped one lecture-\_\_\_\_\_ beyond another-\_\_\_\_\_. Better all-\_\_\_\_\_, such form-\_\_\_\_\_, me-\_\_\_\_\_ get-memorized university corridors-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-97)

Ба́йрон поги́б сравни́тельно молодóм челове́ком.

[Byron-\_\_\_\_\_ died relatively young man-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-101)

Су́ю егó под дива́н со слова́ми <<сиди́ и молчи́>>.

[I-shove him-\_\_\_\_\_ under couch-\_\_\_\_\_ with words-\_\_\_\_\_ "sit and be-quiet".] (I-109)

Реба́та сра́зу же усели́сь за сто́л и смóтрят на огóнь под кастрióлями.

[Kids-\_\_\_\_\_ immediately EMPHATIC sat behind table-\_\_\_\_\_ and look to fire-\_\_\_\_\_ under pots-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-114)

Она́ предпо́читала́ ти́хую жи́знь с му́жем и двумя́ детьми́.

[She-\_\_\_\_\_ preferred quiet life-\_\_\_\_\_ with husband-\_\_\_\_\_ and two children-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-122)

В ту óсень Людми́ла Серге́евна бро́сила кóрмить грудью́ сы́на.

[In that fall-\_\_\_\_\_ Ludmila Sergeevna-\_\_\_\_\_ quit feed breast-\_\_\_\_\_ son-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-143)

Ма́ша воо́бще счита́ла себя́ интеллиге́нткой. Она́ ест ле́вой. Хлеб берёт ру́кой, а не ви́лкой.

[Masha-\_\_\_\_\_ in-general considered self-\_\_\_\_\_ intellectual-\_\_\_\_\_. She-\_\_\_\_\_ eats left-\_\_\_\_\_. Bread-\_\_\_\_\_ takes hand-\_\_\_\_\_, and not fork-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-150)

Талант деньга́ми слома́ть нельзя́.

[Talent-\_\_\_\_\_ money-\_\_\_\_\_ break not-allowed.] (I-159)

#### Instrumental Exercise 3, Level I

*Identify the instances of the INSTRUMENTAL case in the following sentences and explain why the INSTRUMENTAL is used.*

Таким образом, всё выглядело совершенно нормально, если не считать того факта, что я ещё не была женой Георгия.

[This image-\_\_\_\_, all-\_\_\_\_ looked completely normal, if not consider that fact-\_\_\_\_, that I-\_\_\_\_ still not was wife-\_\_\_\_ Georgij-\_\_\_\_.] (I-5)

Лётчик улыбнулся какой-то неопределённой, очень вежливой улыбкой.

[Pilot-\_\_\_\_ smiled some indefinite-\_\_\_\_, very polite smile-\_\_\_\_ and went.] (I-12)

И теперь я тебя спрошу: чем мои дети хуже других?

[And now I-\_\_\_\_ you-\_\_\_\_ ask: what-\_\_\_\_ my children-\_\_\_\_ worse others-\_\_\_\_?] (I-39)

Смотрю на Люсю и делаю ей знак глазами — «выйдем».

[Look at Lyusya-\_\_\_\_ and make her-\_\_\_\_ sign-\_\_\_\_ eyes-\_\_\_\_ — “go-out”.] (I-78)

Я помахал рукой знакомому художнику.

[I-\_\_\_\_ waived hand-\_\_\_\_ acquaintance artist-\_\_\_\_.] (I-98)

Чем же ты накормил детей?

[What-\_\_\_\_ EMPHATIC you-\_\_\_\_ fed children-\_\_\_\_?] (I-105)

Потом отправляю детей с Димой гулять, а сама принимаюсь за дела.

[Then send children-\_\_\_\_ with Dima-\_\_\_\_ walk, and self-\_\_\_\_ get-set for business-\_\_\_\_.] (I-110)

Эти декларации не подтверждались какими-либо фактами.

[These declarations-\_\_\_\_ not backed-up some-kind-of facts-\_\_\_\_.] (I-18)

Ночной клуб пользуется популярностью, в выходные сюда приходят по двести-триста человек — в том числе шахтёры.

[Night club-\_\_\_\_ enjoys popularity-\_\_\_\_, in days-off-\_\_\_\_ here come by 200-300-\_\_\_\_ people-\_\_\_\_ — in that number-\_\_\_\_ miners-\_\_\_\_.] (I-131)

А мама весёлая, с некоторой излишней лихостью. Это у неё всегда от вина.

[And mama-\_\_\_\_ happy-\_\_\_\_, with certain excessive spirit-\_\_\_\_. This-\_\_\_\_ by her-\_\_\_\_ always from wine-\_\_\_\_.] (I-144)

Домой шёл ночной поезд, мать всегда им приезжала, если ездила в город.

[Homewards went night train-\_\_\_\_, mother-\_\_\_\_ always it-\_\_\_\_ arrived, if went to city-\_\_\_\_.] (I-152)

Accusative Exercise 1, Level I

Identify the instances of the ACCUSATIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the ACCUSATIVE is used.

И как раз в этот момент с лестницы стали нашу комнату открывать ключом.  
[And how time in that moment - \_\_\_\_\_ from stairwell- \_\_\_\_\_ began our room- \_\_\_\_\_ open key- \_\_\_\_\_.] (I-1)

Вероника вылезла из кустов и стала так, чтобы Вадим её заметил.  
[Veronika- \_\_\_\_\_ crawled-out from bushes- \_\_\_\_\_ and stood so, so-that Vadim- \_\_\_\_\_ her- \_\_\_\_\_ noticed.] (I-11)

Есть у нас такая традиция — отмечать все советские и церковные праздники.  
[There-is by us- \_\_\_\_\_ such tradition- \_\_\_\_\_ —celebrate all Soviet- \_\_\_\_\_ and church holidays- \_\_\_\_\_.] (I-23)

За каждый номер в отеле мы платим больше ста долларов.  
[For each room- \_\_\_\_\_ in hotel- \_\_\_\_\_ we- \_\_\_\_\_ pay more hundred dollars- \_\_\_\_\_.] (I-48)

Каждая пара должна родить двоих или, кажется, даже троих, а у нас только по одному.  
[Each couple- \_\_\_\_\_ should- \_\_\_\_\_ give-birth two- \_\_\_\_\_ or, seems, even three- \_\_\_\_\_, but by us- \_\_\_\_\_ only along one- \_\_\_\_\_.] (I-79)

Белорусская оппозиция провела в столице республики шествие и митинг.  
[Belorussian opposition- \_\_\_\_\_ led in capital- \_\_\_\_\_ republic- \_\_\_\_\_ procession- \_\_\_\_\_ and meeting- \_\_\_\_\_.] (I-96)

Я открываю кран и умываю лицо холодной водой.  
[I- \_\_\_\_\_ open faucet- \_\_\_\_\_ and wash face- \_\_\_\_\_ cold water- \_\_\_\_\_.] (I-111)

Разве мы можем прожить на твою зарплату?  
[Really we- \_\_\_\_\_ can live-through on your salary- \_\_\_\_\_?] (I-115)

Она предпочитала тихую жизнь с мужем и двумя детьми.  
[She- \_\_\_\_\_ preferred quiet life- \_\_\_\_\_ with husband- \_\_\_\_\_ and two children- \_\_\_\_\_.] (I-122)

Так будет через час, и через сутки, и через месяц.  
[Thus will-be in hour-ACC, and in day-ACC, and in month-ACC.] (I-166)

Когда он приходил? ... Ну с неделю ... может, с пять дней...  
[When he- \_\_\_\_\_ arrived? ... Well about week- \_\_\_\_\_...maybe about five- \_\_\_\_\_ days- \_\_\_\_\_...] (I-141)

В дежурные идут пожилые женщины, пенсионёрки.  
[In attendants-\_\_\_\_\_ go elderly women-\_\_\_\_\_, pensioners-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-156)

### Accusative Exercise 2, Level I

Identify the instances of the ACCUSATIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the ACCUSATIVE is used.

### Accusative Exercise 2 Level I

Жить на литературные заработки трудно.  
[Live on literary earnings-\_\_\_\_\_ hard.] (I-3)

В наш век всё можно спросить и узнать по телефону.  
[In our era-\_\_\_\_\_ everything-\_\_\_\_\_ possible ask and find-out along telephone-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-19)

Моя мачеха мечтает, чтобы я вышла замуж за первого встречного.  
[My stepmother-\_\_\_\_\_ dreams, so-that I-\_\_\_\_\_ went married behind first person-met-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-27)

Я сочиняю стихи. Это моё основное занятие в жизни.  
[I-\_\_\_\_\_ compose verses-\_\_\_\_\_. That-\_\_\_\_\_ my principle occupation-\_\_\_\_\_ i life-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-57)

Очень грустную картину про "Российскую Атлантиду" нарисовал нам А. Деряин.  
[Very sad picture-\_\_\_\_\_ about "Russian Atlantis-\_\_\_\_\_" drew us-\_\_\_\_\_ A. Deryain-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-84)

Нефть с Каспия пойдёт через Турцию, а не Новороссийск.  
[Oil-\_\_\_\_\_ from Caspian-\_\_\_\_\_ will-go through Turkey-\_\_\_\_\_, Novorossiysk-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-103)

Я сдаю — отодвину свои дела на после обеда.  
[I-\_\_\_\_\_ give-up — put-off own matters-\_\_\_\_\_ to after lunch-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-113)

Снаряжаемся, берём санки и отправляемся на канал кататься с гор.  
[Get-ready, take sled-\_\_\_\_\_ and set-off to canal-\_\_\_\_\_ ride from mountains-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-117)

Ведь, помимо хоккея на траве, на новом стадионе можно играть в регби, бейсбол, софтбол...  
[Know, besides hockey-\_\_\_\_\_ on grass-\_\_\_\_\_, on new stadium-\_\_\_\_\_ possible play in rugby-\_\_\_\_\_, baseball-\_\_\_\_\_, softball-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-124)

Неделю дождя не было.  
[Week-\_\_\_\_\_ rain-\_\_\_\_\_ not was.] (I-77)



В ту осень Людмила Сергеевна бросила кормить грудью сына.  
 [In that fall-\_\_\_\_\_ Ludmila Sergeevna-\_\_\_\_\_ quit feed breast-\_\_\_\_\_ son-\_\_\_\_\_.]  
 (I-143)

— Вы родом из Смоленска?

— Да.

— Ёздите на родину?

["You-\_\_\_\_\_ birth-\_\_\_\_\_ from Smolensk-\_\_\_\_\_?"

"Yes."

"Go to homeland-\_\_\_\_\_?" ] (I-160)

Accusative  
Exercise  
Level

Accusative Exercise 3, Level I

*Identify the instances of the ACCUSATIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the ACCUSATIVE is used.*

Вадим тоже ничего не сказал, прошёл в комнату и лёг на диван лицом к стене.

[Vadim-\_\_\_\_\_ also nothing-\_\_\_\_\_ not said, went in room-\_\_\_\_\_ and lay on couch-\_\_\_\_\_ face-\_\_\_\_\_ to wall-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-8)

То, что он делает, он делает хорошо, но ему достаточно знать это одному.  
 [That-\_\_\_\_\_, which-\_\_\_\_\_ he-\_\_\_\_\_ does, he-\_\_\_\_\_ does well, but him-\_\_\_\_\_ enough know that-\_\_\_\_\_ one-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-20)

Она держит зонтик при себе на случай дождя или жары.

[She-\_\_\_\_\_ keeps umbrella-\_\_\_\_\_ at her-\_\_\_\_\_ on case-\_\_\_\_\_ rain-\_\_\_\_\_ or heat-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-32)

Третью неделю идёт борьба за жизнь.

[Third week-\_\_\_\_\_ goes battle-\_\_\_\_\_ for life-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-58)

Похороны состоялись на следующий день, при участии президента Белоруссии.

[Funeral-\_\_\_\_\_ took-place on next day-\_\_\_\_\_, at participation-\_\_\_\_\_ presi-\_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_ Belorussia-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-86)

Через две минуты я сплю.

[Through two-\_\_\_\_\_ minutes-\_\_\_\_\_ I-\_\_\_\_\_ sleep.] (I-104)

Ребята сразу же уселись за стол и смотрят на огонь под кастрюлями.

[Kids-\_\_\_\_\_ immediately EMPHATIC sat behind table-\_\_\_\_\_ and look to fire-\_\_\_\_\_  
 under pots-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-114)

8 Лежу и вслушиваюсь в тишину.

[I-lie and listen-intently to silence-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-118)

Вы помните себя в шестнадцать лет?

[You-\_\_\_\_\_ remember self-\_\_\_\_\_ in 16-\_\_\_\_\_ years-\_\_\_\_\_?] (I-125)

Поездка в Экспрессе длится четверо суток и стоит 4,5 тысячи долларов.

[Trip-\_\_\_\_\_ on Express-\_\_\_\_\_ lasts four-\_\_\_\_\_ days-\_\_\_\_\_ and costs 4.5-\_\_\_\_\_ thousand-\_\_\_\_\_ dollars-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-139)

Вера пела в полный голос, и было слышно по этому голосу, что у неё хорошее настроение.

[Vera-\_\_\_\_\_ sang in full voice-\_\_\_\_\_, and was audible by this voice-\_\_\_\_\_, that by her-\_\_\_\_\_ good mood-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-146)

Англичане сотню лет оккупировали Индию, погибла великая индийская культура?

[English-\_\_\_\_\_ hundred-\_\_\_\_\_ years-\_\_\_\_\_ occupied India-\_\_\_\_\_, perished great Indian culture-\_\_\_\_\_?] (I-163)

#### Dative Exercise 1, Level I

*Identify the instances of the DATIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the DATIVE is used.*

Ей ещё надо было забежать в магазин, купить продукты, потом поехать в больницу к своей маме, потом вернуться и взять из детского сада свою маленькую дочку.

[Her-\_\_\_\_\_ still necessary was run in store-\_\_\_\_\_, buy groceries-\_\_\_\_\_, then go in hospital-\_\_\_\_\_ to own mother-\_\_\_\_\_, then return and take from childrens' garden-\_\_\_\_\_ own small daughter-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-13)

Алёна старше Дашки на три года, значит, ей двадцать два.

[Alyona-\_\_\_\_\_ older Dashka-\_\_\_\_\_ to three-\_\_\_\_\_ years-\_\_\_\_\_, means, her-\_\_\_\_\_ twenty-two-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-155)

Если я когда-нибудь кому-нибудь понравлюсь, то такой человек покажется мне и умным и красивым.

[If I-\_\_\_\_\_ ever anyone-\_\_\_\_\_ please, then that person-\_\_\_\_\_ seem me-\_\_\_\_\_ and smart-\_\_\_\_\_ and attractive-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-29)

Галка всех подруг разогнала, никто ей не нужен.

[Galka-\_\_\_\_\_ all girlfriends-\_\_\_\_\_ chased-away, no-one-\_\_\_\_\_ her-\_\_\_\_\_ not needed-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-40)

Сахаров вам этого не простит.

[Sakharov-\_\_\_\_\_ you-\_\_\_\_\_ that-\_\_\_\_\_ not forgive.] (I-52)

Я дал ей лапу, как собака, и так же посмотрел в глаза.

[I-\_\_\_\_\_ gave her-\_\_\_\_\_ paw-\_\_\_\_\_, like dog-\_\_\_\_\_, and thus also looked i  
\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-64)

Он просит меня к себе, спрашивает, как идёт работа.

[He-\_\_\_\_\_ asks me-\_\_\_\_\_ to self-\_\_\_\_\_, asks, how goes work-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-74)

8 Смотрю на Люсю и делаю ей знак глазами — <<выйдем>>.

[Look at Lyusya-\_\_\_\_\_ and make her-\_\_\_\_\_ sign-\_\_\_\_\_ eyes-\_\_\_\_\_ — “go-out”.] (I-78)

Очень грустную картину про “Российскую Атлантиду” нарисовал нам А. Дерягин.

[Very sad picture-\_\_\_\_\_ about “Russian Atlantis-\_\_\_\_\_” drew us-\_\_\_\_\_ A. Deryain-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-84)

10 Не бывать тебе американцем. И не уйди от своего прошлого.

[Not be you-\_\_\_\_\_ American-\_\_\_\_\_. And not leave from own past-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-99)

От этой мысли мне становится грустно.

[From this thought-\_\_\_\_\_ me-\_\_\_\_\_ becomes sad.] (I-112)

Нельзя поддаваться панике.

[Not-allowed give-in panic-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-140)

#### Dative Exercise 2, Level I

*Identify the instances of the DATIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the DATIVE is used.*

Вера пела в полный голос, и было слышно по этому голосу, что у неё хорошее настроение.

[Vera-\_\_\_\_\_ sang in full voice-\_\_\_\_\_, and was audible by this voice-\_\_\_\_\_, that by her-\_\_\_\_\_ good mood-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-146)

С другой стороны, домофон только помогает квартирному вору.

[From other side-\_\_\_\_\_, intercom-\_\_\_\_\_ only helps apartment thief-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-157)

В наш век всё можно спросить и узнать по телефону.

[In our era-\_\_\_\_\_ everything-\_\_\_\_\_ possible ask and find-out along telephone-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-19)

Лилия смотрела по сторонам с наивным и рассеянным выражением.

[Lilya-\_\_\_\_\_ looked along sides-\_\_\_\_\_ with naive-\_\_\_\_\_ and absent-minded expression-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-31)

У меня не было тогда влечения к литературе.

[By me-\_\_\_\_\_ not was then attraction-\_\_\_\_\_ to literature-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-49)

Кому оно нужно сейчас, моё самолюбие?

[Who-\_\_\_\_\_ it-\_\_\_\_\_ needed-\_\_\_\_\_ now, my narcissism-\_\_\_\_\_?] (I-59)

И вам её не жалко?

[And you-\_\_\_\_\_ her-\_\_\_\_\_ not sorry?] (I-65)

От этой сделанной улыбки мне становится не по себе.

[From that fake smile-\_\_\_\_\_ me-\_\_\_\_\_ becomes not along self-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-75)

Каждая пара должна родить двоих или, кажется, даже троих, а у нас только по одному.

[Each couple-\_\_\_\_\_ should-\_\_\_\_\_ give-birth two-\_\_\_\_\_ or, seems, even three-\_\_\_\_\_, but by us-\_\_\_\_\_ only along one-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-79)

Напрягаюсь — не верю ушам своим.

[Strain — not believe ears own-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-89)

Правде вообще труднее противиться, чем лжи.

[Truth-\_\_\_\_\_ generally more-difficult oppose, than-\_\_\_\_\_ lie-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-100)

Дим, я тебя прошу, дай мне кончить.

[Dima-\_\_\_\_\_, I-\_\_\_\_\_ you-\_\_\_\_\_ ask, let me-\_\_\_\_\_ finish.] (I-116)

### Dative Exercise 3, Level I

Identify the instances of the DATIVE case i  
the DATIVE is used.

ing sentences and explain

Dative  
Exercise  
Level

Чехова она знает только благодаря телевизионной пропаганде. Считает его нудным.

[Chekhov-\_\_\_\_\_ she-\_\_\_\_\_ knows only thanks-to television propaganda-\_\_\_\_\_.  
Considers him-\_\_\_\_\_ boring-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-148)

Я ведь жил там лет до шести, по аллеям учился ходить!

[I-\_\_\_\_\_ after-all lived there years-\_\_\_\_\_ to six-\_\_\_\_\_, along paths-\_\_\_\_\_ learned walk!] (I-161)

То, что он делает, он делает хорошо, но ему достаточно знать это одному.

[That-\_\_\_\_\_, which-\_\_\_\_\_ he-\_\_\_\_\_ does, he-\_\_\_\_\_ does well, but him-\_\_\_\_\_ enough know that-\_\_\_\_\_ one-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-20)

Катерина всё завещала нескольким музеям.

[Katerina-\_\_\_\_\_ everything-\_\_\_\_\_ bequeathed few museums-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-35)

Я должен был кому́-то показáть свой рукописи. Но кому́?  
 [I-\_\_\_\_\_ should-\_\_\_\_\_ was someone-\_\_\_\_\_ show own manuscripts-\_\_\_\_\_. But whom-\_\_\_\_\_?] (I-50)

Кроме того, он помогает юным регбистам команды из одного небольшого города Франции.  
 [Aside that-\_\_\_\_\_, he-\_\_\_\_\_ helps young rugby-players-\_\_\_\_\_ team-\_\_\_\_\_ from one small city-\_\_\_\_\_ France-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-62)

Мы успели привыкнуть друг к другу.  
 [We-\_\_\_\_\_ managed get-used friend-\_\_\_\_\_ to friend-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-68)

А вдруг он хочет передать ей мою работу?  
 [And suddenly he-\_\_\_\_\_ wants transfer her-\_\_\_\_\_ my work-\_\_\_\_\_?] (I-76)

Мне вот дадут план, и тогда — прощай моя диссертация!  
 [Me-\_\_\_\_\_ look give plan-\_\_\_\_\_ and then — goodbye my dissertation-\_\_\_\_\_!] (I-80)

Знаете, вам очень эта причёска идёт.  
 [Know, you-\_\_\_\_\_ very this hairdo-\_\_\_\_\_ goes.] (I-94)

Я помахал рукой знакомому художнику.  
 [I-\_\_\_\_\_ waived hand-\_\_\_\_\_ acquaintance artist-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-98)

Я знаю, ни у кого не будет столько дней по болезни, как у меня.  
 [I-\_\_\_\_\_ know, not by who-\_\_\_\_\_ not will-be so-many days-\_\_\_\_\_ along sickness-\_\_\_\_\_, as by me-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-106)

#### Genitive Exercise 1, Level I

*Identify the instances of the GENITIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the GENITIVE is used.*

И как раз в этот момент с лестницы стали нашу комнату открывать ключом.  
 [And how time in that moment -\_\_\_\_\_ from stairwell-\_\_\_\_\_ began our room-\_\_\_\_\_ open key-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-1)

Вокруг костра стояли люди и смотрели с задумчивыми лицами.  
 [Around campfire-\_\_\_\_\_ stood people-\_\_\_\_\_ and looked with pensive faces-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-15)

Вскоре рабочие принесли новый ковёр взамен испорченного.  
 [Soon workers-\_\_\_\_\_ brought new carpet-\_\_\_\_\_ in-place ruined-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-34)

Мы шли вдоль клеток.

[We-\_\_\_\_\_ walked along cages-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-46)

Грѳхот колѳс тотчас же заглушил джазовую мелѳдию.

[Clattering-\_\_\_\_\_ wheels-\_\_\_\_\_ suddenly drowned-out jazz melody-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-53)

Когда я черѳ-то жду, я не могу при ѳтом ни думать ни читать.

[When I-\_\_\_\_\_ something-\_\_\_\_\_ wait, I-\_\_\_\_\_ not can at this-\_\_\_\_\_ neither think nor read.] (I-63)

Чуковскй сохранил бѳлее ста писем от Рѳпина за 1907-1929 годы.

[Chukovsky-\_\_\_\_\_ kept more hundred letters-\_\_\_\_\_ from Repin-\_\_\_\_\_ for 1907-1929 years-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-73)

Я знаю, ни у коѳ не бѳдет стѳлько дней по болѳзни, как у меня.

[I-\_\_\_\_\_ know, not by who-\_\_\_\_\_ not will-be so-many days-\_\_\_\_\_ along sickness-\_\_\_\_\_, as by me-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-106)

Из-за того, что он обладает огромными финансовыми ресурсами, он имеет весьма серьезное влияние на конгресс США.

[Because-of that-\_\_\_\_\_, that he-\_\_\_\_\_ controls huge financial resources-\_\_\_\_\_, he-\_\_\_\_\_ has very serious influence-\_\_\_\_\_ on Congress-\_\_\_\_\_ USA-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-120)

Из Москвы можно дѳехать за день.

[From Moscow-\_\_\_\_\_ possible get-to in day-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-129)

—У них перерыв скоро?

—Наверно с часу до двух.

[— By them-\_\_\_\_\_ break-\_\_\_\_\_ soon?

—Probably from hour-\_\_\_\_\_ to two-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-36)

А мама веселая, с некоторой излишней лихостью. ѳто у нее всегда от вина.

[And mama-\_\_\_\_\_ happy-\_\_\_\_\_, with certain excessive spirit-\_\_\_\_\_. This-\_\_\_\_\_ by her-\_\_\_\_\_ always from wine-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-144)

## Genitive Exercise 2, Level I

Identify the instances of the GENITIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the GENITIVE is used.

Политического решения курдской проблемы пока не видно.

[Political solution-\_\_\_\_\_ Kurdish problem-\_\_\_\_\_ still not visible.] (I-2)

В ѳтом году Россию, возможно, посетит глава управления национальной обороны Японии.

[In this year-\_\_\_\_\_ Russia-\_\_\_\_\_, possibly, visits head-\_\_\_\_\_ administration-\_\_\_\_\_ national defense-\_\_\_\_\_ Japan-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-17)

У неё нет родственников, которым ей хотелось бы оставить всё это.  
[By her-\_\_\_\_\_ not relatives-\_\_\_\_\_, who-\_\_\_\_\_ her-\_\_\_\_\_ wanted would leave all  
this-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-37)

Я помню тесноту около досок с расписаниями.  
[I-\_\_\_\_\_ remember crush-\_\_\_\_\_ around board-\_\_\_\_\_ with schedules-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-47)

Один из моих старых знакомых, работающий в столице, решил сделать мне подарок.  
[One-\_\_\_\_\_ from my old friends-\_\_\_\_\_, working-\_\_\_\_\_ in capital-\_\_\_\_\_, decided  
make me-\_\_\_\_\_ present-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-54)

Подо мной и позади меня — горы.  
[Under me-\_\_\_\_\_ and behind me-\_\_\_\_\_ — mountains-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-66)

От этой сделанной улыбки мне становится не по себе.  
[From that fake smile-\_\_\_\_\_ me-\_\_\_\_\_ becomes not along self-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-75)

8 Я сдаюсь — отодвину свой дела на после обеда.  
[I-\_\_\_\_\_ give-up — put-off own matters-\_\_\_\_\_ to after lunch-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-113)

С тех пор его собственные материалы, как и статьи других кубинских журналистов, публиковались в различных газетах США и Латинской Америки.  
[From this time-\_\_\_\_\_ his personal materials-\_\_\_\_\_, as also articles-\_\_\_\_\_ other  
Cuban journalists-\_\_\_\_\_, publicized in various newspapers-\_\_\_\_\_ USA-\_\_\_\_\_ and  
Latin America-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-121)

Цена булки хлеба больше доллара.  
[Price-\_\_\_\_\_ loaf-\_\_\_\_\_ bread-\_\_\_\_\_ more dollar-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-130)

Неделю дождя не было.  
[Week-\_\_\_\_\_ rain-\_\_\_\_\_ not was.] (I-77)

Я ради тебя живу, а ты говоришь — учись...  
[I-\_\_\_\_\_ for-sake you-\_\_\_\_\_ live, and you-\_\_\_\_\_ say — study...] (I-145)

### Genitive Exercise 3, Level I

*Identify the instances of the GENITIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the GENITIVE is used.*

Таким образом, всё выглядело совершенно нормально, если не считать того факта, что я ещё не была женой Георгия.

[This image-\_\_\_\_, all-\_\_\_\_ looked completely normal, if not consider that fact-\_\_\_\_, that I-\_\_\_\_ still not was wife-\_\_\_\_ Georgiy-\_\_\_\_.] (I-5)

Вот из третьего подъезда выходит с портфелем мой сосед.

[Here from third doorway-\_\_\_\_ walks-out with briefcase-\_\_\_\_ my neighbor-\_\_\_\_.] (I-28)

И теперь я тебя спрошу: чем мои дети хуже других?

[And now I-\_\_\_\_ you-\_\_\_\_ ask: what-\_\_\_\_ my children-\_\_\_\_ worse others-\_\_\_\_?] (I-39)

У меня не было тогда влечения к литературе.

[By me-\_\_\_\_ not was then attraction-\_\_\_\_ to literature-\_\_\_\_.] (I-49)

Делай как можно больше ошибок, и ты выиграешь!

[Do as possible more mistakes-\_\_\_\_ and you-\_\_\_\_ win!] (I-55)

Единственная надежда — два космических корабля <<Вояджер>>, которые продолжают путешествие среди звезд Млечного пути.

[Only hope-\_\_\_\_ — two-\_\_\_\_ space ships-\_\_\_\_ “Voyager-\_\_\_\_”, which-\_\_\_\_ continue travel-\_\_\_\_ among stars-\_\_\_\_ Milky Way-\_\_\_\_.] (I-69)

У гроба покойного президент говорил в основном о себе.

[By grave-\_\_\_\_ deceased-\_\_\_\_ president-\_\_\_\_ talked in principle-\_\_\_\_ about self-\_\_\_\_.] (I-87)

От этой мысли мне становится грустно.

[From this thought-\_\_\_\_ me-\_\_\_\_ becomes sad.] (I-112)

Ведь, помимо хоккея на траве, на новом стадионе можно играть в регби, бейсбол, софтбол...

[You-know, besides hockey-\_\_\_\_ on grass-\_\_\_\_, on new stadium-\_\_\_\_ possi play in rugby-\_\_\_\_, baseball-\_\_\_\_, softball-\_\_\_\_...] (I-124)

Нет, он не пьяный. Просто обалдел от жары.

[No, he-\_\_\_\_ not drunk-\_\_\_\_. Simply became-woozy from heat-\_\_\_\_.] (I-135)

Сейчас чаю попьём.

[Now tea-\_\_\_\_ drink.] (I-81)

Хочется домашней еды, не в том смысле, что здесь плохо кормят, а в том, что хочется любимой пищи.

[Wants home food-\_\_\_\_, not in that sense-\_\_\_\_, that here poorly feed, but in that-\_\_\_\_, that wants favorite food-\_\_\_\_.] (I-153)



Locative  
Exercise  
Level I

## Locative Exercise 1, Level I

Identify the instances of the LOCATIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the LOCATIVE is used.

То положение, в котором я находилась, было абсолютно простым и ясным.  
[That situation-\_\_\_\_, in which-\_\_\_\_ I-\_\_\_\_ was-found, was absolutely simple-\_\_\_\_ and clear-\_\_\_\_.] (I-4)

В московской жизни наш японец чувствует себя комфортно.  
[In Moscow life-\_\_\_\_ our Japanese-\_\_\_\_ feel self-\_\_\_\_ comfortable.] (I-16)

Она держит зонтик при себе на случай дождя или жары.  
[She-\_\_\_\_ keeps umbrella-\_\_\_\_ at her-\_\_\_\_ on case-\_\_\_\_ rain-\_\_\_\_ or heat-\_\_\_\_.] (I-32)

Был запах дорогого одеколона в лифте.  
[Was smell-\_\_\_\_ expensive eau-de-cologne-\_\_\_\_ in elevator-\_\_\_\_.] (I-45)

Когда я чего-то жду, я не могу при этом ни думать ни читать.  
[When I-\_\_\_\_ something-\_\_\_\_ wait, I-\_\_\_\_ not can at this-\_\_\_\_ neither think nor read.] (I-63)

У гроба покойного президент говорил в основном о себе.  
[By grave-\_\_\_\_ deceased-\_\_\_\_ president-\_\_\_\_ talked in principle-\_\_\_\_ about self-\_\_\_\_.] (I-87)

Она работает медсестрой в той же больнице, что и муж.  
[She-\_\_\_\_ works nurse-\_\_\_\_ in that same hospital-\_\_\_\_, that and husband-\_\_\_\_.] (I-123)

8 А здесь вообще здорово спать. Уютный уголок. Я сто лет на природе не спал, а ты?

[And here generally great sleep. Comfortable corner-\_\_\_\_. I-\_\_\_\_ hundred-\_\_\_\_ years-\_\_\_\_ in nature-\_\_\_\_ not slept, and you-\_\_\_\_?] (I-136)

Хочется домашней еды, не в том смысле, что здесь плохо кормят, а в том, что хочется любимой пищи.

[Wants home food-\_\_\_\_, not in that sense-\_\_\_\_, that here poorly feed, but in that-\_\_\_\_, that wants favorite food-\_\_\_\_.] (I-153)

## Locative Exercise 2, Level I

Locative  
Exercise 2  
Level I

Identify the instances of the LOCATIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the LOCATIVE is used.

В молодости не ценишь то, что у тебя есть, и всё время хочется чего-то другого.

[In youth-\_\_\_\_\_ not value that-\_\_\_\_\_, what-\_\_\_\_\_ by you-\_\_\_\_\_ is, and all time-\_\_\_\_\_ want something else-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-9)

В хоре я всегда стояла в последнем ряду.

[In choir-\_\_\_\_\_ I-\_\_\_\_\_ always stood in last row-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-25)

В этом доме она жила дольше всех его обитателей.

[In that house-\_\_\_\_\_ she-\_\_\_\_\_ lived longer all its inhabitants-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-33)

За каждый номер в отеле мы платим больше ста долларов.

[For each room-\_\_\_\_\_ in hotel-\_\_\_\_\_ we-\_\_\_\_\_ pay more hundred dollars-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-48)

Я ехал в троллейбусе, а он столкнулся с автобусом, и мне пришлось идти пешком.

[I-\_\_\_\_\_ rode in trolleybus-\_\_\_\_\_, but it-\_\_\_\_\_ collided with \_\_\_\_\_, and me-\_\_\_\_\_ was-necessary go by-foot-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-83)

Недавно в Вене открыли крупную выставку с экспонатами на тему "Искусство и бред"

[Recently in Vienna-\_\_\_\_\_ opened major exhibition-\_\_\_\_\_ with pieces-\_\_\_\_\_ on theme-\_\_\_\_\_ "Art-\_\_\_\_\_ and delirium-\_\_\_\_\_".] (I-88)

Ведь, помимо хоккея на траве, на новом стадионе можно играть в регби, бейсбол, софтбол...

[You know, besides hockey-\_\_\_\_\_ on grass-\_\_\_\_\_, on new stadium-\_\_\_\_\_ possible play in rugby-\_\_\_\_\_, baseball-\_\_\_\_\_, softball-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-124)

А при Сталине разве творилось такое?

[And at Stalin-\_\_\_\_\_ really made such-\_\_\_\_\_?] (I-138)

Спросите у десяти человек об их любимом герое, писателе и композиторе.

[Ask by ten people-\_\_\_\_\_ about their favorite hero-\_\_\_\_\_, writer-\_\_\_\_\_ and composer-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-162)

Locative  
Exercise 3  
Level I

Locative Exercise 3, Level I

Identify the instances of the LOCATIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the LOCATIVE is used.

Фигура у неё была как цифра “восемь,” один круг на другом.

[Figure-\_\_\_\_\_ by her-\_\_\_\_\_ was like number-\_\_\_\_\_ “eight”-\_\_\_\_\_, one circle-\_\_\_\_\_ on other-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-14)

С первых же страниц в его книге чувствуется проблематика необычная и трудная.

[From first-\_\_\_\_\_ very pages-\_\_\_\_\_ in his book-\_\_\_\_\_ is-felt problems unusual-\_\_\_\_\_ and difficult-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-26)

Я посылал ему свои заметки о людях труда.

[I-\_\_\_\_\_ sent him-\_\_\_\_\_ own observations-\_\_\_\_\_ about people-\_\_\_\_\_ labor-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-44)

В романе не упоминалось имени Сталина.

[In novel-\_\_\_\_\_ not mentioned name-\_\_\_\_\_ Stalin-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-51)

Похороны состоялись на следующий день, при участии президента Белоруссии.

[Funeral-\_\_\_\_\_ took-place on next day-\_\_\_\_\_, at participation-\_\_\_\_\_ presi-\_\_\_\_\_  
Belorussia-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-86)

Что же произошло на самом деле, и каковы мотивы шестнадцатилетней теннисистки?

[What-\_\_\_\_\_ EMPH happened in actual matter-\_\_\_\_\_, and what-kind-of-\_\_\_\_\_  
motives-\_\_\_\_\_ parents-\_\_\_\_\_ sixteen-year-old tennis-player-\_\_\_\_\_ ?] (I-119)

Тогда Яна начала танцевать в одежде — в купальнике.

[Then Jana-\_\_\_\_\_ began dance in clothes-\_\_\_\_\_ — in bathing-suit-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-132)

Даже чайник лежал на боку.

[Even teapot-\_\_\_\_\_ lay on side-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-151)

Вся жизнь после сорока — чем ты занимаешься, что ешь и какую книгу читаешь — всё это на лице и на руках.

[All life-\_\_\_\_\_ after forty-\_\_\_\_\_ — what-\_\_\_\_\_ you-\_\_\_\_\_ occupy-self, what-\_\_\_\_\_  
eat and what book-\_\_\_\_\_ read — all this-\_\_\_\_\_ on face-\_\_\_\_\_ and on hands-\_\_\_\_\_.] (I-158)

## Mixed Case Exercise 1, Level I

Identify the cases in the sentences below and explain why those cases are used. Provide your own English translation of the sentence and compare it with the translation in the key.

Mixed Case  
Exercise 1  
Level I

И как раз в этот момент с лестницы стали нашу комнату открывать ключом.  
[And how time in that moment - \_\_\_\_\_ from stairwell- \_\_\_\_\_ began our room- \_\_\_\_\_ open key- \_\_\_\_\_.] (I-1)

Они всегда были хулиганами, только вначале маленькие хулиганы, потом юные, а теперь старые.  
[They- \_\_\_\_\_ always were hooligans- \_\_\_\_\_, just at-first little hooligans- \_\_\_\_\_, then young- \_\_\_\_\_, and now old- \_\_\_\_\_.] (I-10)

В этом году Россию, возможно, посетит глава управления национальной обороны Японии.  
[In this year- \_\_\_\_\_ Russia- \_\_\_\_\_, possibly, visits head- \_\_\_\_\_ administration- \_\_\_\_\_ national defense- \_\_\_\_\_ Japan- \_\_\_\_\_.] (I-17)

Смысл этой жизни состоял в том, чтобы заработать как можно больше денег.  
[Meaning- \_\_\_\_\_ this life- \_\_\_\_\_ consisted in that- \_\_\_\_\_ so-that earn as possi more money- \_\_\_\_\_.] (I-38)

Я должен был кому-то показать свой рукописи. Но кому?  
[I- \_\_\_\_\_ should- \_\_\_\_\_ someone- \_\_\_\_\_ show own manuscripts- \_\_\_\_\_. But whom- \_\_\_\_\_?] (I-50)

Только актёры могут играть один спектакль по десять раз. А мы не актёры, а люди. И не играем, а живём.  
[Only actors- \_\_\_\_\_ can play one show- \_\_\_\_\_ along ten- \_\_\_\_\_ times- \_\_\_\_\_. But we- \_\_\_\_\_ not actors- \_\_\_\_\_, but people- \_\_\_\_\_. And not play, but live.] (I-67)

Интересно, попадёт ли в руки мэра Лужкова этот номер "Литгазеты"?  
[Interesting, fall if in hands- \_\_\_\_\_ mayor Luzhkov- \_\_\_\_\_ this issue- \_\_\_\_\_ "Litgazeta- \_\_\_\_\_"?] (I-85)

Короче, я пропускал одну лекцию за другой. Лучше всего, таким образом, мне запомнились университетские коридоры.  
[Shorter, I- \_\_\_\_\_ skipped one lecture- \_\_\_\_\_ beyond another- \_\_\_\_\_. Better all- \_\_\_\_\_, such form- \_\_\_\_\_, me- \_\_\_\_\_ get-memorized university corridors- \_\_\_\_\_.] (I-97)

Денег, которые она тут зарабатывает, ей хватает на шпильки.  
[Money- \_\_\_\_\_, which- \_\_\_\_\_ she- \_\_\_\_\_ here earns, her- \_\_\_\_\_ suffices for hairpins- \_\_\_\_\_.] (I-133)

- 10 Домой шёл ночной поезд, мать всегда им приезжала, если ездила в город.  
[Homewards went night train-\_\_\_\_, mother-\_\_\_\_ always it-\_\_\_\_ arrived, if went to city-\_\_\_\_.] (I-152)

Mixed Case  
Exercise 2  
Level I

Mixed Case Exercise 2, Level I

*Identify the cases in the sentences below and explain why those cases are used. Provide your own English translation of the sentence and compare it with the translation in the key.*

Ей ещё надо было забежать в магазин, купить продукты, потом поехать в больницу к своей маме, потом вернуться и взять из детского сада свою маленькую дочку.

[Her-\_\_\_\_ still necessary was run in store-\_\_\_\_, buy groceries-\_\_\_\_, then go in hospital-\_\_\_\_ to own mother-\_\_\_\_, then return and take from childrens' garden-\_\_\_\_ own small daughter-\_\_\_\_.] (I-13)

Есть у нас такая традиция — отмечать все советские и церковные праздники.  
[There is by us-\_\_\_\_ such tradition-\_\_\_\_ — celebrate all Soviet-\_\_\_\_ and church holidays-\_\_\_\_.] (I-23)

Галка всех подруг разогнала, никто ей не нужен.

[Galka-\_\_\_\_ all girlfriends-\_\_\_\_ chased-away, no-one-\_\_\_\_ her-\_\_\_\_ not needed-\_\_\_\_.] (I-40)

Сахаров вам этого не простит.

[Sakharov-\_\_\_\_ you-\_\_\_\_ that-\_\_\_\_ not forgive.] (I-52)

Один из моих старых знакомых, работающий в столице, решил сделать мне подарок.

[One-\_\_\_\_ from my old friends-\_\_\_\_, working-\_\_\_\_ in capitol-\_\_\_\_, decided make me-\_\_\_\_ present-\_\_\_\_.] (I-54)

То положение, в котором я находилась, было абсолютно простым и ясным.  
[That situation-\_\_\_\_, in which-\_\_\_\_ I-\_\_\_\_ was-found, was absolutely simple-\_\_\_\_ and clear-\_\_\_\_.] (I-4)

Похороны состоялись на следующий день, при участии президента Белоруссии.

[Funeral-\_\_\_\_ took-place on next day-\_\_\_\_, at participation-\_\_\_\_ president-\_\_\_\_ Belorussia-\_\_\_\_.] (I-86)

Цена компромисса была непомерно высокой.

[Cost-\_\_\_\_ compromise-\_\_\_\_ was inordinately high-\_\_\_\_.] (I-102)

У меня прямо пересохло во рту.

[By me-\_\_\_\_\_ right-away dried-up in mouth-\_\_\_\_\_] (I-134)

У Щербакóвой есть редкий дар — она чувствует, чем пахнет ветер времени.

[By Shcherbakova-\_\_\_\_\_ there-is rare gift-\_\_\_\_\_ — she-\_\_\_\_\_ senses, what-\_\_\_\_\_ smells wind-\_\_\_\_\_ time-\_\_\_\_\_] (I-164)

Алёна старше Дашки на три года, значит, ей двадцать два.

[Alyona-\_\_\_\_\_ older Dashka-\_\_\_\_\_ to three-\_\_\_\_\_ years-\_\_\_\_\_, means, her-\_\_\_\_\_ twenty-two-\_\_\_\_\_] (I-155)

Единственная надежда — два космических корабля <<Вояджер>>, которые продолжают путешествие среди звёзд Млечного пути.

[Only hope-\_\_\_\_\_ — two-\_\_\_\_\_ space ships-\_\_\_\_\_ “Voyager-\_\_\_\_\_”, which-\_\_\_\_\_ continue travel-\_\_\_\_\_ among stars-\_\_\_\_\_ Milky Way-\_\_\_\_\_] (I-69)

### Mixed Case Exercise 3, Level I

*Put the underlined words and phrases into the correct cases. Provide your own English translation of the sentence and compare it with the translation in the key.*

Такой образ, всё выглядело совершенно нормально, если не считать тот факт, что я ещё не была женой Георгия. (I-5)

Вадим тоже ничто не сказал, прошёл в комнату и лёг на диван лицом к стене. (I-8)

В московская жизнь наш японец чувствует себя комфортно. (I-16)

Вскоре рабочие принесли новый ковёр взамен испорченный. (I-34)

Круг её знакомые составляли адвокаты, врачи, журналисты, художники. (I-43)

И вы она не жалко? (I-65)

Из толпы выделяется человек средний рост и спрашивает Петров, что он записал у себя в записная книжка. (I-70)

Мы стояли по разные стороны пруда и смотрели друг на друг. (I-82)

Недавно в Вена открыли крупная выставка с экспонаты на тема “Искусство и бред”. (I-88)

Более то, по мысль автор, Солженицын велик независимо от то, прав он или не прав в свой суждения. (I-95)

Mixed Case  
Exercise  
Level I

Снаряжа́емся, берём санки и отпра́вляемся на канал кататься с горы. (I-117)

И он полюбил свои́ боле́знь больше себя́, больше Вера́, больше сын... (I-142)

Mixed Case  
Exercise  
Level I

Mixed Case Exercise 4, Level I

*Put the underlined words and phrases into the correct cases. Provide your own English translation of the sentence and compare it with the translation in the key.*

Наша́ пе́рвая встреча́ прошла́ то не ме́нее без изли́шние восторги́. (I-6)

Вокру́г костёр стоя́ли люди́ и смотре́ли с задумчи́вые ли́ца. (I-15)

У она́ нет ро́дственники́, кото́рые она́ хотелось бы оста́вить всё это́. (I-37)

И тепе́рь я ты спрошу́: что мои́ де́ти хуже́ други́е? (I-39)

Я посыла́л он свои́ заме́тки о лю́ди труд. (I-44)

За ка́ждый но́мер в оте́ль мы пла́тим больше сто до́ллара. (I-48)

Предполагает́ся, что компенса́ция мо́гут получи́ть пятна́дцать ты́сяча челове́к. (I-60)

Одна́жды вы́шел он из дом, поше́л в да́вочка купи́ть столя́рный клеи́. (I-71)

Како́е же впеча́тление́ на вы производи́т нача́ло суде́бный процесс? (I-90)

Зарпла́та нау́чные сотру́дники со сте́пени была́, наве́рное, раз в пять выше́ сре́дняя. (I-127)

Гото́в ли вы проли́ть свои́ кровь ради́ сча́стье наро́дный? (I-128)

Слу́шай моя́ таблиц́а умно́жение. Два́жды два бу́дет четы́ре, а три́жды три — де́вять. А я ты люблю́. (I-147)

Ма́ша босико́м, го́лая, пошла́ на ку́хня, чтобы́ попа́ть во́да. (I-149)

Multi-Case Preposition Exercise 1, Level I

Choose the correct preposition and case combinations from the choices below.

И как раз в этот момент/в этом моменте с лестницу/с лестницы/с лестницей стали нашу комнату открывать ключом.

Just at that moment they began to open our room from the stairwell with a key. (I-1)

Её комната была огромной и темноватой, с красивую старинную мебель/с красивой старинной мебели/с красивой старинной мебелью, с почти чёрный паркет/с почти чёрного паркета/с почти чёрным паркетом.

Her room was enormous and rather dark, with beautiful antique furniture, and a nearly black parquet floor. (I-7)

Ей ещё надо было забежать в магазин/в магазине, купить продукты, потом поехать в больницу/в больнице к своей маме, потом вернуться и взять из детского сада свою маленькую дочку.

She still had to run by the store and buy groceries, then drive to the hospital to see her mom, then return and get her little girl from day care. (I-13)

В хор/В хоре я всегда стояла в последний ряд/в последнем ряду.

I always stood in the last row in the choir. (I-25)

Вот из третьего подъезда выходит с портфель/с портфеля/с портфелем мой сосед.

And here my neighbor walks out of the third doorway with his briefcase. (I-28)

Я посыла́л ему́ свои́ за́метки о людѣй/о лю́дях трудá.

I sent him my observations about working people. (I-44)

Третью неделю идёт борьба за жизнь/за жизнью.

The battle for life has been going on for three weeks. (I-58)

Каждая пара должна родить двоих или, кажется, даже троих, а у нас только по одного/по одному.

Each couple should have two children or perhaps even three, but each. (I-79)

Короче, я пропускал одну лекцию за другую/за другой. Лучшее всего, таким образом, мне запомнились университетские коридоры.

In brief, I skipped one lecture after another. Best of all, in this way I memorized the university corridors. (I-97)

Сюю его́ под диван/под диваном со слова́/со слов/со словами <<сиди́ и молчи́>>.

I shove him under the couch with the words "sit and be quiet". (I-109)



Сте поры́/С тех пор/С теми́ поря́ми его́ собстве́нные матери́алы, как и статьи́ други́х кубинских журнали́стов, публикováлись в различны́х газeты́/в различны́х газeтах США и Латинской Аме́рики.

From this point his personal materials, just like the articles of other Cuban journalists, were publicized in various newspapers of the USA and Latin America. (I-121)

Надо сказа́ть, что за последние́ не́сколько лет/за последние́ми не́сколькими́ года́ми пла́та за проeзд/за проeздом до Москвы́ практиче́ски не вы́росла.

One must say that for the last several years, the cost of a trip to Moscow has not really gone up. (I-126)

Multi-Case  
Preposition  
Exercise  
Level I

Multi-Case Preposition Exercise 2, Level I

*Choose the correct preposition and case combinations from the choices below.*

Жить на литерату́рные за́работки/на литерату́рных за́работках трудно́.  
It is hard to live on a writer's wages. (I-3)

Вади́м то́же ниче́го не сказа́л, прошёл в ко́мнату/в ко́мнате и лёг на дива́н/на дива́не лицом к стене́.

Vadim also said nothing, he walked into the room and lay down on the couch with his face towards the wall. (I-8)

В моско́вскую жи́знь/В моско́вской жи́зни папш япо́нец чу́вствует себя́ комфoртно́.

Our Japanese friend feels comfortable in Moscow life. (I-16)

С первые́ же страни́цы/С первых же страни́ц/С первыми́ же страни́цами в его́ кни́гу/в его́ кни́ге чу́вствуется пробле́матика необы́чная и трудно́я.

From the very first pages of his book one can sense unusual and difficult problems. (I-26)

Я помню́ тесноту́ о́коло доскы́ с расписа́ния/с расписа́ний/с расписа́ниями.  
I remember the crush around the schedule board. (I-47)

То́лько актёры́ мо́гут игра́ть один спекта́кль подеся́ть раз/подеся́ти́ ра́зам.  
А мы не актёры́, а лю́ди. И не игра́ем, а живём.

Only actors can perform the same show ten times. But we aren't actors, we're people. And we aren't performing, we're living. (I-67)

Нефть с Ка́спий/с Ка́спия/с Ка́спием пойдёт че́рез Ту́рцию, а не Новоросси́йск.

Oil from the Caspian will go through Turkey, not Novorossiysk. (I-103)

8 Потом отпра́вляю дете́й с Диму́/с Димы́/с Димой гуля́ть, а сама́ принима́юся́ за дела́/за дела́ми.

Then I send the kids off for a walk with Dima, and I myself get ready for business. (I-110)

Она рабáтает медсестрой в ту же больни́цу/в той же больни́це, что и муж. She works as a nurse in the same hospital as her husband. (I-123)

Ночной клуб пользуется популярностью, в выходные/в выходные сюда приходят по двести-триста человек/по двумстам-трёмстам человекaм — то число/в том числе шахтёры.

The night club enjoys popularity, around two-three hundred people come here on days off, miners among them. (I-131)

Вечером они соберутся попить травяного чаю, или пойдут в театр/в театре. In the evening they will gather to drink some herbal tea or to go to the theater. (I-154)

Спросите у десяти человек об их любимого героя, писателя и композитора/об их любимом герое, писателе и композиторе.

Ask ten people about their favorite hero, writer, and composer. (I-162)

#### Multi-Case Preposition Exercise 3, Level I

*Choose the correct preposition and case combinations from the choices below.*

То положение, в которое/в котором я находилась, было абсолютно простым и ясным.

The situation in which I found myself was absolutely simple and clear. (I-4)

В молодость/В молодости не ценишь то, что у тебя есть, и всё время хочется чего-то другого.

In youth you never value what you have, but the whole time you want something else. (I-9)

Она действительно с некоторые порЫ/с некоторых пор/с некоторыми порами перестала звонить и появляться.

Come time ago she really had stopped calling and stopping by. (I-21)

Моя мачеха мечтает, чтобы я вышла замуж за первый встречный/за первого встречного/за первым встречным.

My stepmother's dream is that I will get married to the first man I meet. (I-27)

Она держит зонтик при себе на случай/на случае дождя или жары.

She keeps an umbrella with her in case of rain or hot weather. (I-32)

---

За каждый номер/За каждым номером в отеле/в отеле мы платим больше ста долларов.

For each room in the hotel we are paying more than one hundred dollars. (I-48)

Более того, по мысли/по мыслям автора, Солженицын велик независимо от того, прав он или не прав в своём суждении/в своих суждениях.

Furthermore, in the author's opinion, Solzhenitsyn is great irrespective of whether or not he is right in his judgments. (I-95)

Позавчера положила его в свой ящик/в своём ящике — под дневник/под дневником.

The day before yesterday, I put it in my box under the journal. (I-108)

Ребята сразу же уселись за стол/за столом и смотрят на огонь/на огне под кастрюли/под кастрюлями.

The kids immediately sat down at the table and were looking at the fire under the pots. (I-114)

Ведь, помимо хоккея на траву/на траве, на новый стадион/на новом стадионе можно играть в регби, бейсбол, софтбол.../в регби, бейсболе, софтболе...

You know, in addition to field hockey, in the new stadium you can play rugby, baseball, softball... (I-124)

Когда он приходил? ...Ну с неделю/с неделей/с неделей... может, с пять дней/с пяти дней/с пятью днями...

When did he come? ...Well about a week...maybe, about five days...

## Level II Exercises

Identify the instances of the NOMI  
why the NOMINATIVE is used.

ing sentences and explain

Для собравшихся был устроен концерт, во время которого среди музыкантов появился сам президент.

[For gathered-\_\_\_\_\_ was organized-\_\_\_\_\_ concert-\_\_\_\_\_, in time-\_\_\_\_\_ which-\_\_\_\_\_ among musicians-\_\_\_\_\_ appeared himself president-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-3)

Дюк смотрел на пламя, и ему казалось, что это огненный олень бежит и не может вырваться в небо.

[Duke-\_\_\_\_\_ looked at flame-\_\_\_\_\_, and him-\_\_\_\_\_ seemed, that this-\_\_\_\_\_ fiery deer-\_\_\_\_\_ runs and not can tear-away to sky-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-17)

У неё выражение птицы, которой хочется пить, ей не дадут, и похуже, она скоро отбудет из этого мира.

[By her-\_\_\_\_\_ expression-\_\_\_\_\_ bird-\_\_\_\_\_, who-\_\_\_\_\_ wants drink, her-\_\_\_\_\_ not give, and appears, she-\_\_\_\_\_ soon will-leave from this world-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-29)

Именно здесь, среди этой стерильной белизны, рождались идеи, приходили разочарования, ставились эксперименты.

[Precisely here, among this sterile whiteness-\_\_\_\_\_, were-born ideas-\_\_\_\_\_, came disappointments-\_\_\_\_\_, were-performed experiments-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-42)

— Я не говорю вам — что писать. Я только скажу вам — чего мы писать категорически не должны.

[— I-\_\_\_\_\_ not tell you-\_\_\_\_\_ what-\_\_\_\_\_ write. I-\_\_\_\_\_ only tell you-\_\_\_\_\_ — what-\_\_\_\_\_ we-\_\_\_\_\_ write categorically not should-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-55)

Моё восприятие существовало вокруг меня, как туман, а я сидел как бы в центре собственного восприятия.

[My perception-\_\_\_\_\_ existed around me-\_\_\_\_\_, like fog-\_\_\_\_\_, and I-\_\_\_\_\_ sat as if in center-\_\_\_\_\_ own perception-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-78)

Содѣствует ли душевная болѣзнь развитию творческих способностей, в частности художника?

[Contribute whether mental illness-\_\_\_\_\_ development-\_\_\_\_\_ creative ability-\_\_\_\_\_, in particular-\_\_\_\_\_ artist-\_\_\_\_\_?] (II-97)

Латы нужны тем, у кого нет фигуры.

[Armor-\_\_\_\_\_ needed-\_\_\_\_\_ those-\_\_\_\_\_, by whom-\_\_\_\_\_ not figures-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-114)

Набóр предлагаемых сообщений не óчень ширóк, к примéру <<Порá обедать>> или <<Я зайду за тобóй в шкóлу>>.

[Set-\_\_\_\_\_ offered messages-\_\_\_\_\_, not very broad-\_\_\_\_\_, to example-\_\_\_\_\_ "Time eat" or "I-\_\_\_\_\_ will-drop-by behind you-\_\_\_\_\_ to school-\_\_\_\_\_."] (II-131)

Сельские люди вдруг начинают понимать: их никому не нужна земля на самом деле имеет большую ценность...

[Village people-\_\_\_\_\_ suddenly begin understand: their no-one-\_\_\_\_\_ not needed land-\_\_\_\_\_ in actual fact-\_\_\_\_\_ has big value-\_\_\_\_\_...] (II-145)

## Nominative Exercise 2, Level II

Identify the instances of the *NOMI*  
why the *NOMINATIVE* is used.

ing sentences and explain

Nominative  
Exercise 2  
Level II

Она действительно была горожанка, никогда не жила в деревне, никогда не пивалась до болезни, и её интересовало всё, чего она не могла постичь собственным опытом.

[She-\_\_\_\_\_ really was city-woman-\_\_\_\_\_, never not lived in country-\_\_\_\_\_, not drunk to illness-\_\_\_\_\_, a her-\_\_\_\_\_ interested everything-\_\_\_\_\_, what-\_\_\_\_\_ she-\_\_\_\_\_ not was-able grasp own experience-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-6)

На его жизненном столе, как в китайском ресторане, стояло столько блюд, что смешно было наесться чем-то одним и не попробовать другого.

[On his life table-\_\_\_\_\_, as in Chinese restaurant-\_\_\_\_\_, stood so-many-\_\_\_\_\_ dishes-\_\_\_\_\_, that absurd was fill-up something one-\_\_\_\_\_ and not try another-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-18)

Томас Манн однажды заметил, что в истории романа веками чаще всего становятся книги, о которых при их появлении особенно уверенно говорилось: это не роман.

[Thomas Mann-\_\_\_\_\_ once remarked, that in history-\_\_\_\_\_ novel-\_\_\_\_\_ landmarks-\_\_\_\_\_ more-frequently all-\_\_\_\_\_ become books-\_\_\_\_\_, about which-\_\_\_\_\_ at their appearance-\_\_\_\_\_ especially confidently said: this-\_\_\_\_\_ not novel-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-30)

Меня всегда угнетало противоестественное скопление редкостей.

[Me-\_\_\_\_\_ always depressed unnatural accumulation-\_\_\_\_\_ rare-objects-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-43)

Дело в том, что наши средства ограничены. А значит, ограничено число наших дорогих гостей.

[Thing-\_\_\_\_\_ in that-\_\_\_\_\_, that our means-\_\_\_\_\_ limited-\_\_\_\_\_. But means, limited-\_\_\_\_\_ number-\_\_\_\_\_ our dear guests-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-57)

Дети безработных берут пример с родителей — каждый четвёртый юный поляк говорит о своих планах так: <<Буду безработным>>.

[Children-\_\_\_\_\_ unemployed-\_\_\_\_\_ take example-\_\_\_\_\_ from parents-\_\_\_\_\_ — every fourth young Pole-\_\_\_\_\_ talks about own plans-\_\_\_\_\_ thus: “Will-be unemployed-\_\_\_\_\_”.] (II-80)

К счастью, М. Цветаевой вся эта запутанная и неприятная история, видимо, не коснулась.

[To happiness-\_\_\_\_\_, M. Tsvetaeva-\_\_\_\_\_ all that tangled-\_\_\_\_\_ and unpleasant story-\_\_\_\_\_, evidently, not touched.] (II-100)

На занятия собирается вся лаборатория — человек двадцать; проходят они в большой, соседней с нашей комнате.

[To classes-\_\_\_\_\_ gathers all laboratory-\_\_\_\_\_ — people-\_\_\_\_\_ 20-\_\_\_\_\_; go-through they-\_\_\_\_\_ in big, neighboring-\_\_\_\_\_ with ours-\_\_\_\_\_ room-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-118)

Вашингтонская администрация оправдывается тем, что якобы опоздала с подачей конгрессу на продление злополучного закона.

[Washington administration-\_\_\_\_\_ justifies-self that-\_\_\_\_\_, that supposedly were-late with sending-\_\_\_\_\_ Congress-\_\_\_\_\_ to extension-\_\_\_\_\_ unfortunate law-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-134)

— Ты самая очаровательная женщина Москвы.

— Ха, ха, ха! Вадим, выпейте лучше ещё чаю.

[— You-\_\_\_\_\_ most charming woman-\_\_\_\_\_ city-\_\_\_\_\_ Moscow-\_\_\_\_\_.]

— Ha ha ha! Vadim-\_\_\_\_\_, drink better more tea-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-99)

Главное — не приотворить на звонок дверь, не поддаться минутной слабости.

[Main-thing-\_\_\_\_\_ — not open to ring-\_\_\_\_\_ door-\_\_\_\_\_, weakness-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-163)

### Nominative Exercise 3, Level II

*Identify the instances of the NOMINATIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the NOMINATIVE is used.*

Он встретил её взгляд — сам смутился её смущением, и они несколько длинных, нескончаемых секунд смотрели друг на друга.

[He-\_\_\_\_\_ met her gaze-\_\_\_\_\_ — self-\_\_\_\_\_ was-embarrassed her embarrassment-\_\_\_\_\_, and they-\_\_\_\_\_ several-\_\_\_\_\_ long, endless seconds-\_\_\_\_\_ looked other-\_\_\_\_\_ on other-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-7)

Посёл подбросил в камин берёзовых дров и заметил: “  
такая уж злая.”

[Ambassador-\_\_\_\_\_ threw-on in fireplace-\_\_\_\_\_ birch logs-\_\_\_\_\_ and remarked:  
“But winter-\_\_\_\_\_ in Russia-\_\_\_\_\_ not such already evil-\_\_\_\_\_.”] (II-19)

А сейчас этот артист разжирел как свинья, и просто диву даёшься, что время  
делает с людьми.

[And now that artist-\_\_\_\_\_ got-fat like pig-\_\_\_\_\_, and just marvel-\_\_\_\_\_ give, what-  
\_\_\_\_\_ time-\_\_\_\_\_ does with people-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-34)

В те годы я ещё не знал, что деньги — бремя. Что эlegantность — массовая  
уличная форма красоты. Что вечная ирония — любимое, а главное —  
единственное оружие незащищённых.

[In those years-\_\_\_\_\_ I-\_\_\_\_\_ still not knew, that money-\_\_\_\_\_ — burden-\_\_\_\_\_.  
That elegance-\_\_\_\_\_ — mass pedestrian form-\_\_\_\_\_ beauty-\_\_\_\_\_. That eternal  
irony-\_\_\_\_\_ — favorite-\_\_\_\_\_, and importantly — only weapon-\_\_\_\_\_ defense-  
less-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-44)

Не повышайте тона, мистер Большаков.

[Not raise tone-\_\_\_\_\_, mister Bolshakov-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-58)

Он тоже беседовал со мной, только днём, интересовался, какие журналы,  
каталоги — американские, английские — я просмотрела.

[He-\_\_\_\_\_ also talked with me-\_\_\_\_\_, only day-\_\_\_\_\_, interested, what magazines-  
\_\_\_\_\_, catalogs-\_\_\_\_\_ — American-\_\_\_\_\_, English-\_\_\_\_\_ — I-\_\_\_\_\_ looked-  
through.] (II-84)

Из окон здания Мурманской областной администрации виден рыбный порт.

[From windows-\_\_\_\_\_ building-\_\_\_\_\_ Murmansk regional administration-\_\_\_\_\_  
visible-\_\_\_\_\_ fishing port-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-101)

“Вот какие у нас красивые дети,” говорю я и зову их на кухню накрывать  
вместе на стол.

[“There what-kind-of by us-\_\_\_\_\_ pretty children-\_\_\_\_\_,” say I-\_\_\_\_\_ and call them-  
\_\_\_\_\_ to kitchen-\_\_\_\_\_ cover together on table-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-122)

Вся семья срочно занимается оформлением необходимых документов, и  
Надежда Антоновна больше всего боится, что не успеет всё оформить до  
поездки.

[All family-\_\_\_\_\_ urgently does filling-out-\_\_\_\_\_ necessary papers-\_\_\_\_\_, and  
Nadezhda Antonovna-\_\_\_\_\_ more all-\_\_\_\_\_ is-afraid, that not have-time all-\_\_\_\_\_  
fill-out before trip-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-137)



Президент подчеркнул, что России нужно самой разобраться и понять, что происходит в экономике страны.

[President-\_\_\_\_\_ emphasized, that Russia-\_\_\_\_\_ necessary self-\_\_\_\_\_ understand and understand, what-\_\_\_\_\_ happens in economics-\_\_\_\_\_ country-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-149)

Instrumental  
Exercise 1  
Level II

Instrumental Exercise 1, Level II

*Identify the instances of the INSTRUMENTAL case in the following sentences and explain why the INSTRUMENTAL is used.*

Обитатели гнезда с сердитым жужжанием набросились на обидчика целы роем и стали жалить его.

[Inhabitants-\_\_\_\_\_ nest-\_\_\_\_\_ with angry buzz-\_\_\_\_\_ threw-selves-on offender-\_\_\_\_\_ whole swarm-\_\_\_\_\_ and began sting him-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-1)

Он закрыл глаза, чтобы проникало как можно меньше раздражителей, и тут же увидел взгляд Светланы и понял, что такими одинаковыми взглядами он мог обменяться только со своей женой, и больше ни с одним человеком на всём свете.

[He-\_\_\_\_\_ closed eyes-\_\_\_\_\_, so-that penetrated as possible less irritations-\_\_\_\_\_, and here already saw look-\_\_\_\_\_ Svetlana-\_\_\_\_\_ and understood, that such identical looks-\_\_\_\_\_ he-\_\_\_\_\_ could exchange only with own wife-\_\_\_\_\_, and more not with one person-\_\_\_\_\_ on whole world-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-10)

Обучение будет идти с применением совершенной компьютерной и лингвистической техники.

[Instruction-\_\_\_\_\_ will go with application-\_\_\_\_\_ complete computer-\_\_\_\_\_ and language laboratory technology-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-24)

Конечно, в её возрасте смешно называть кого-то дядей или тётей, поря уже переходить на имена-отчества, но Стасов всегда был для неё дядей Владиком.

[Of-course, in her age-\_\_\_\_\_ silly call someone-\_\_\_\_\_ uncle-\_\_\_\_\_ or aunt-\_\_\_\_\_, time already switch-over to names-patronymics-\_\_\_\_\_, but Stasov-\_\_\_\_\_ always was for her-\_\_\_\_\_ uncle Vladik-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-40)

Студенты запасали спиртное на вечер. Причём держали его не в холодильниках, а между оконными рамами.

[Students-\_\_\_\_\_ stocked-up alcohol-\_\_\_\_\_ for evening-\_\_\_\_\_. Moreover kept it-\_\_\_\_\_ not in refrigerators-\_\_\_\_\_, but between window frames-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-69)

Это предупреждение принадлежит учёному, который последние годы активно занимается созданием научно-популярных телепрограмм по космосу, пишет книги и киносценарии.

[This warning-\_\_\_\_\_ belongs scholar-\_\_\_\_\_, who-\_\_\_\_\_ last years-\_\_\_\_\_ actively

is-occupied creation-\_\_\_\_\_ scientific-popular television-shows-\_\_\_\_\_ along space-\_\_\_\_\_, writes books-\_\_\_\_\_ and screenplays-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-81)

Осенью 1923 года в Прагу приехал хорошо знавший Цветаеву поэт В. Ф. Ходасевич.

[Fall-\_\_\_\_\_ 1923 year-\_\_\_\_\_ in Prague-\_\_\_\_\_ arrived well knew-\_\_\_\_\_ Tsvetaev-\_\_\_\_\_ poet V. F. Khodasevich-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-98)

Мы не располагаем такими средствами.

[We-\_\_\_\_\_ not have-at-disposal such means-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-116)

Вашингтонская администрация оправдывается тем, что якобы опоздала с подачей конгрессу на продление злополучного закона.

[Washington administration-\_\_\_\_\_ justifies-self that-\_\_\_\_\_, that supposedly were-late with sending-\_\_\_\_\_ Congress-\_\_\_\_\_ to extension-\_\_\_\_\_ unfortunate law-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-134)

К счастью, оба пилота успели катапультироваться за несколько секунд перед тем, как реактивный самолёт врезался в землю.

[To fortune-\_\_\_\_\_, both-\_\_\_\_\_ pilots-\_\_\_\_\_ had time eject within several-\_\_\_\_\_ seconds-\_\_\_\_\_ before that-\_\_\_\_\_, as jet airplane-\_\_\_\_\_ dug-into to ground-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-154)

Понимаете, только по молодости возможно с утра до вечера заниматься хозяйством, а вечером играть королеву.

[You-understand, only along youth-\_\_\_\_\_ possible from morning-\_\_\_\_\_ to evening-\_\_\_\_\_ occupy-self domestic-work-\_\_\_\_\_, and evening-\_\_\_\_\_ play queen-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-164)

#### Instrumental Exercise 2, Level II

*Identify the instances of the INSTRUMENTAL case in the following sentences and explain why the INSTRUMENTAL is used.*

Эта страна считается довольно бедной по части природных ископаемых.

[That country-\_\_\_\_\_ is-considered quite poor-\_\_\_\_\_ along portion-\_\_\_\_\_ natural resources-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-2)

И вдруг утро наполнилось мяукающими звуками электрогитары.

[And suddenly morning-\_\_\_\_\_ filled mewung sounds-\_\_\_\_\_ electric-guitar-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-12)

Балкон был маленький, заснеженный, весь заставлен хламом.

[Balcony-\_\_\_\_\_ was small-\_\_\_\_\_, snow-covered-\_\_\_\_\_, all-\_\_\_\_\_ crammed-\_\_\_\_\_ trash-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-26)

Не успел профессор закончить, как в проход между рядами шагнула американка средних лет.

[Not managed professor-\_\_\_\_\_ finish, how in aisle-\_\_\_\_\_ between rows-\_\_\_\_\_ stepped American-\_\_\_\_\_ middle years-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-45)

В мире есть немало лидеров, которые не могут искупить перед народами своей собственной вины.

[In world-\_\_\_\_\_ is not-few-\_\_\_\_\_ leaders-\_\_\_\_\_, who-\_\_\_\_\_ not can redeem before nations-\_\_\_\_\_ own own guilt-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-70)

Он тоже беседовал со мной, только днём, интересовался, какие журналы, каталоги — американские, английские — я просмотрела.

[He-\_\_\_\_\_ also talked with me-\_\_\_\_\_, only day-\_\_\_\_\_, interested, what magazines-\_\_\_\_\_, catalogs-\_\_\_\_\_ — American-\_\_\_\_\_, English-\_\_\_\_\_ — I-\_\_\_\_\_ looked through.] (II-84)

Я предлагаю вам посмотреть на мир и моими глазами, глазами русской женщины из ближнего зарубежья.

[I-\_\_\_\_\_ suggest you-\_\_\_\_\_ look at world-\_\_\_\_\_ also my eyes-\_\_\_\_\_, eyes-\_\_\_\_\_ Russian woman-\_\_\_\_\_ from near abroad-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-104)

Выпалив это, она хлопает дверью.

[Having-blurted-out this-\_\_\_\_\_, she-\_\_\_\_\_ slams door-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-117)

Вся семья срочно занимается оформлением необходимых документов, и Надежда Антоновна больше всего боится, что не успеет всё оформить до поездки.

[All family-\_\_\_\_\_ urgently does filling-out-\_\_\_\_\_ necessary papers-\_\_\_\_\_, and Nadezhda Antonovna-\_\_\_\_\_ more all-\_\_\_\_\_ is-afraid, that not have-time all-\_\_\_\_\_ fill-out before trip-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-137)

Это обычная практика — делить счёт за телефон поровну между проживающими в номере.

[This-\_\_\_\_\_ usual practice-\_\_\_\_\_ — divide bill-\_\_\_\_\_ for telephone-\_\_\_\_\_ evenly between living-together-\_\_\_\_\_ in room-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-155)

Россией всегда правила аристократия, и он по своему образу мышления аристократ до мозга костей.

[Russia-\_\_\_\_\_ always ruled aristocracy-\_\_\_\_\_, and he-\_\_\_\_\_ along own form-\_\_\_\_\_ thinking-\_\_\_\_\_ aristocrat-\_\_\_\_\_ to marrow-\_\_\_\_\_ bones-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-165)

Instrumental Exercise 3, Level II

Identify the instances of the INSTRUMENTAL case in the following sentences and explain why the INSTRUMENTAL is used.

По мнению специалистов, пока нельзя считать японское лекарство препаратом, способным помочь больным рассеянным склерозом в тяжёлом состоянии.

[Along opinion-\_\_\_\_\_ specialists-GEN, at-present must-not consider Japanese medicine-\_\_\_\_\_ preparation-\_\_\_\_\_, capable-\_\_\_\_\_ help patients-\_\_\_\_\_ multiple sclerosis-\_\_\_\_\_ in serious condition-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-4)

Режиссёр пил чай и звонил по телефону, придерживая трубку плечом.

[Director-\_\_\_\_\_ drank tea-\_\_\_\_\_ and called along telephone-\_\_\_\_\_, holding receiver-\_\_\_\_\_ shoulder-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-14)

Когда человек испытывает стресс или средней силы выбрасывается гормон под названием адреналин.

[When person-\_\_\_\_\_ experiences stress-\_\_\_\_\_, or average force-GEN annoyance-\_\_\_\_\_, in blood-\_\_\_\_\_ is-released hormone-\_\_\_\_\_ under name-\_\_\_\_\_ adrenaline-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-27)

Газетная работа поныне является для меня источником существования.

[Newspaper work-\_\_\_\_\_ up-to-present is for me-GEN source-\_\_\_\_\_ livelihood-GEN.] (II-46)

Случай этот специалисты до сих пор считают небывалым.

[Case this-\_\_\_\_\_ specialists-\_\_\_\_\_ to this time-GEN consider unprecedented-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-72)

Каким-то не своим, охрипшим, голосом прошу я извинить меня, обещаю стать собраннее и выскакиваю в коридор.

[Some not own, hoarse, voice-\_\_\_\_\_ ask I-\_\_\_\_\_ excuse me-\_\_\_\_\_, promise become more-organized and jump-out in hall-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-87)

Старался отвечать банальным идеалам мужества, руководствовался в те годы.

[Tried answer banal ideals-\_\_\_\_\_ courage-GEN, which-\_\_\_\_\_ was-guided i years-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-111)

Я чуть прикасаюсь к её руке щекой.

[I-\_\_\_\_\_ hardly touch to her hand-\_\_\_\_\_ cheek-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-120)

Когда в пятидесятые годы создавалось телевидение, туда шли неудачники кино и театра, а также люди, которые чувствовали: за этим делом — будущее.

[When in fifties years-\_\_\_\_\_ created television-\_\_\_\_\_, there went unfortunate-ones-\_\_\_\_\_ movies-GEN and theater-GEN, but also people-\_\_\_\_\_, which-\_\_\_\_\_ felt: beyond this thing-\_\_\_\_\_ — future-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-142)

Я сама себя казалась противной оттого, что когда-то с ним целовалась.

[I-\_\_\_\_\_ self-\_\_\_\_\_ self-\_\_\_\_\_ seemed nasty-\_\_\_\_\_ from-that, that sometime with him-\_\_\_\_\_ kissed.] (II-156)

#### Accusative Exercise 1, Level II

*Identify the instances of the ACCUSATIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the ACCUSATIVE is used.*

Обитатели гнезда с сердитым жужжанием набросились на обидчика целы роем и стали жалить его.

[Inhabitants-\_\_\_\_\_ nest-\_\_\_\_\_ with angry buzz-\_\_\_\_\_ threw-selves-on offender-\_\_\_\_\_ whole swarm-\_\_\_\_\_ and began sting him-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-1)

Дюк смотрел на пламя, и ему казалось, что это огненный олень бежит и не может вырваться в небо.

[Duke-\_\_\_\_\_ looked at flame-\_\_\_\_\_, and him-\_\_\_\_\_ seemed, that this-\_\_\_\_\_ fiery deer-\_\_\_\_\_ runs and not can tear-away to sky-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-17)

Владислав выпил свой чай в три больших глотка и решительно поднялся.

[Vladislav-\_\_\_\_\_ drank own tea-\_\_\_\_\_ in three-\_\_\_\_\_ big gulps-\_\_\_\_\_ and decisively got-up.] (II-38)

Мистер Хиггинс дал нам всевозможные инструкции.

[Mister Higgins-\_\_\_\_\_ gave us-\_\_\_\_\_ all-kinds instructions-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-51)

Это предупреждение принадлежит учёному, который последние годы активно занимается созданием научно-популярных телепрограмм по космосу, пишет книги и киносценарии.

[This warning-\_\_\_\_\_ belongs scholar-\_\_\_\_\_, who-\_\_\_\_\_ last years-\_\_\_\_\_ actively is-occupied creation-\_\_\_\_\_ scientific-popular television-shows-\_\_\_\_\_ along space-\_\_\_\_\_, writes books-\_\_\_\_\_ and screenplays-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-81)

Душевнобольные художники продают свои картины за пятьдесят тысяч марок и более.

[Mentally-ill artists-\_\_\_\_\_ sell own pictures-\_\_\_\_\_ for fifty-\_\_\_\_\_ thousands-\_\_\_\_\_ marks-\_\_\_\_\_ and more.] (II-93)

Подобрал воин с земли незрелую фи́гу, кинул её в певца́, и угодил ему́ прямо в рот.

[Picked-up warrior-\_\_\_\_\_ from earth-\_\_\_\_\_ unripe fig-\_\_\_\_\_, threw it-\_\_\_\_\_ i singer-\_\_\_\_\_, and hit him-\_\_\_\_\_ straight in mouth-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-110)

Дим, давай не будем обсуждать́ это, прошу́ тебя, поглядь сегодня́ свой брюки́ сам, мне надо́ дошить.

[Dima-\_\_\_\_\_, let's not will discuss this-\_\_\_\_\_, ask you-\_\_\_\_\_, iron today own pants-\_\_\_\_\_ self-\_\_\_\_\_, me-\_\_\_\_\_ need finish-up-sewing.] (II-123)

Соба́к ко́рмят посто́ронние же́нщины, на свои́ де́ньги покупа́ют им е́ду, по́тому соба́ки их лю́бят и призна́ют.

[Dogs-\_\_\_\_\_ feed outside women-\_\_\_\_\_, to own money-\_\_\_\_\_ buy them-\_\_\_\_\_ food-\_\_\_\_\_, therefore dogs-\_\_\_\_\_ them-\_\_\_\_\_ love and recognize.] (II-132)

Зимо́й из-за по́лярной но́чи невозмо́жно просну́ться, ле́том невозмо́жно усну́ть по друго́й причи́не: в три часа́ но́чи в окно́ лу́пит со́лнце.

[Winter-\_\_\_\_\_ because-of polar night-\_\_\_\_\_ impossible wake-up, summer-\_\_\_\_\_ impossible fall-asleep along other reason-\_\_\_\_\_; in three-\_\_\_\_\_ hours-\_\_\_\_\_ night-\_\_\_\_\_ to window-\_\_\_\_\_ thrashes sun-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-146)

Был слу́чай, когда́ престу́пника на́шли по отпеча́ткам зубо́в — он был голо́дный и надху́сил кусо́к ма́сла.

[Was incident-\_\_\_\_\_, when criminal-\_\_\_\_\_ found along imprints-\_\_\_\_\_ teeth-\_\_\_\_\_ — he-\_\_\_\_\_ was hungry-\_\_\_\_\_ and took-bite piece-\_\_\_\_\_ butter-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-162)

## Accusative Exercise 2, Level II

*Identify the instances of the ACCUSATIVE case i why the ACCUSATIVE is used.*

## Exercise 2 Level II

Георги́й сел и написа́л письмо́, и я не сказа́ла ему́ в отве́т ничего́, просто́ взяла́ э́тот листо́к и ушла́ к себе́ на ку́хню.

[Georgi-\_\_\_\_\_ sat-down and wrote letter-\_\_\_\_\_, and I-\_\_\_\_\_ not said him-\_\_\_\_\_ in answer-\_\_\_\_\_ nothing-\_\_\_\_\_, just took that paper-\_\_\_\_\_ and went to self-\_\_\_\_\_ to kitchen-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-5)

Росси́я должна́ игра́ть боле́е за́ме́тную ро́ль в динами́чном азиа́тском регио́не, и Япо́ния мо́жет оказа́ть ей в э́том соде́йствие.

[Russia-\_\_\_\_\_ should play more noticeable role-\_\_\_\_\_ in dynamic Asian region-\_\_\_\_\_, and Japan-\_\_\_\_\_ can give her-\_\_\_\_\_ in this-\_\_\_\_\_ assistance-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-22)

Мужа она́ тоже не по́мнила, но понима́ла, что раз у неё было́ четы́веро дете́й, то, наве́рное, и муж был.

[Husband-\_\_\_\_\_ she-\_\_\_\_\_ also not remembered, but understood, that if by her-\_\_\_\_\_ was foursome-\_\_\_\_\_ children-\_\_\_\_\_, then, surely, and husband-\_\_\_\_\_ was.] (II-39)

Свою́ речь он посвята́л твóрчеству Достоёвского.

[His speech-\_\_\_\_\_ he-\_\_\_\_\_ dedicated works-\_\_\_\_\_ Dostoevsky-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-59)

Муж чита́ет письмо́ и волну́ется до тако́й стéпени, что роня́ет из рук стака́н с водо́й, кото́рый па́дает на́ пол и разби́вается.

[Husband-\_\_\_\_\_ reads letter-\_\_\_\_\_ and gets-upset to such level-\_\_\_\_\_, that drops from hands-\_\_\_\_\_ glass-\_\_\_\_\_ with water-\_\_\_\_\_, which-\_\_\_\_\_ falls on floor-\_\_\_\_\_ and breaks.] (II-83)

Психиáтр причисля́ет себя́ тоже́ к худо́жникам, его́ гигáнтские пла́стиковые фигу́ры украша́ют мно́гие амери́канские па́рки.

[Psychiatrist-\_\_\_\_\_ counts self-\_\_\_\_\_ also to artists-\_\_\_\_\_, his gigantic sculptural figures-\_\_\_\_\_ decorate many American parks-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-95)

Старáлся отве́чать бана́льным идеа́лам му́жества, руководи́ствовал в те го́ды.

[Tried answer banal ideals-\_\_\_\_\_ courage-\_\_\_\_\_, ich-\_\_\_\_\_ was-guided in those years-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-111)

О Го́споди, он, ка́жется, ду́мает, что ра́ди э́той встре́чи я реши́ла укороти́ть ю́бку!

[O Lord-\_\_\_\_\_, he-\_\_\_\_\_, it-seems, thinks, that for this date-\_\_\_\_\_ I-\_\_\_\_\_ decided shorten skirt-\_\_\_\_\_!] (II-124)

Правите́льство Египта́, опира́ясь на старода́вний и полузабы́ты́ реши́ло ликви́дировать в стране́ службу́ телохраните́лей.

[Government-\_\_\_\_\_ Egypt-\_\_\_\_\_, relying on ancient and half-forgotten law-\_\_\_\_\_, decided liquidate in country-\_\_\_\_\_ service-\_\_\_\_\_ bodyguards-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-135)

Живёт она́ на сре́дства “спóнсора” — жена́того бизне́смэна, кото́рый снима́ет для неё кварта́ру и перио́дически про́сит её броси́ть э́ту дура́цкую рабо́ту в клубе́ и вари́ть до́ма пельме́ни.

[Lives she-\_\_\_\_\_ on means-\_\_\_\_\_ “sponsor”-\_\_\_\_\_ — married businessman-\_\_\_\_\_, who-\_\_\_\_\_ rents for her-\_\_\_\_\_ apartment-\_\_\_\_\_ and periodically asks her-\_\_\_\_\_ quit this foolish work-\_\_\_\_\_ in club-\_\_\_\_\_ and cook at-home pelmeni-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-147)

Главное — не приотворить на звонок дверь, не поддаться минутной слабости.

[Main-thing-\_\_\_\_\_ — not open to ring-\_\_\_\_\_ door-\_\_\_\_\_,  
weakness-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-163)

### Accusative Exercise 3, Level II

*Identify the instances of the ACCUSATIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the ACCUSATIVE is used.*

Exercise  
Level II

Он встретил её взгляд — сам смутился её смущением, и они несколько длинных, нескончаемых секунд смотрели друг на друга.

[He-\_\_\_\_\_ met her gaze-\_\_\_\_\_ — self-\_\_\_\_\_ was-embarrassed her embarrassment-\_\_\_\_\_, and they-\_\_\_\_\_ several-\_\_\_\_\_ long, endless seconds-\_\_\_\_\_ looked other-\_\_\_\_\_ on other-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-7)

Я захохоталась в первое мгновение, как будто меня толкнули с моста в холодную речку в октябре месяце.

[I-\_\_\_\_\_ gasped in first moment-\_\_\_\_\_, as if me-\_\_\_\_\_ pushed-off from bridge-\_\_\_\_\_ to cold river-\_\_\_\_\_ in October month-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-25)

Он любил здесь работать, и вообще, была бы его воля, проводил бы здесь большую часть времени.

[He-\_\_\_\_\_ loved here work, and in-general, was would his will-\_\_\_\_\_, spend would here larger part-\_\_\_\_\_ time-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-41)

И через минуту греческий певец скончался от удушья.

[And across minute-\_\_\_\_\_ Greek singer-\_\_\_\_\_ died from asphyxiation-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-60)

Он тоже беседовал со мной, только днём, интересовался, какие журналы, каталоги — американские, английские — я просмотрела.

[He-\_\_\_\_\_ also talked with me-\_\_\_\_\_, only day-\_\_\_\_\_, interested, what magazines-\_\_\_\_\_, catalogs-\_\_\_\_\_ — American-\_\_\_\_\_, English-\_\_\_\_\_ — I-\_\_\_\_\_ looked-through.] (II-84)

Он остался врачом, а не превратился в мецената от искусства.

[He-\_\_\_\_\_ remained doctor-\_\_\_\_\_, and not turned into patron-\_\_\_\_\_ art-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-96)

Инна оглядела цветы, вернула их бабушке, востребовала деньги обратно и купила на них яблоки у соседней старухи.

[Inna-\_\_\_\_\_ examined flowers-\_\_\_\_\_, returned them-\_\_\_\_\_ woman-\_\_\_\_\_, demanded money-\_\_\_\_\_ back and bought for them-\_\_\_\_\_ apples-\_\_\_\_\_ by neighboring old-woman-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-8)



Ребята пьют молоко, две минуты мы решаем, идти ли ещё гулять, и — отказываемся.

[Kids-\_\_\_\_\_ drink milk-\_\_\_\_\_, two-\_\_\_\_\_ minutes-\_\_\_\_\_ we-\_\_\_\_\_ decide whether still walk, and — decline.] (II-126)

Три труднейших года я прожил в холоде и темноте.

[Three-\_\_\_\_\_ quite-difficult year-\_\_\_\_\_ I-\_\_\_\_\_ lived-through in cold-\_\_\_\_\_ and dark-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-136)

Вон у нас во дворе за три года — два убийства было. С ограблением.

[There by us-\_\_\_\_\_ in courtyard-\_\_\_\_\_ in three-\_\_\_\_\_ years-\_\_\_\_\_ — two-\_\_\_\_\_ murders-\_\_\_\_\_ were. With robbery-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-79)

#### Dative Exercise 1, Level II

*Identify the instances of the DATIVE case in the following sentences and explain the DATIVE is used.*

Эта страна считается довольно бедной по части природных ископаемых.

[That country-\_\_\_\_\_ is-considered quite poor-\_\_\_\_\_ along portion-\_\_\_\_\_ natural resources-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-2)

Режиссёр пил чай и звонил по телефону, придерживая трубку плечом.

[Director-\_\_\_\_\_ drank tea-\_\_\_\_\_ and called along telephone-\_\_\_\_\_, holding receiver-\_\_\_\_\_ shoulder-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-14)

У него язва желудка, и она диктует ему свой режим, а режим навязывает положительный образ жизни.

[By him-\_\_\_\_\_ ulcer-\_\_\_\_\_ stomach-\_\_\_\_\_, and it-\_\_\_\_\_ dictates him-\_\_\_\_\_ own regime-\_\_\_\_\_, and regime-\_\_\_\_\_ imposes positive mode-\_\_\_\_\_ life-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-28)

Свою речь он посвятил творчеству Достоевского.

[His speech-\_\_\_\_\_ he-\_\_\_\_\_ dedicated works-\_\_\_\_\_ Dostoevsky-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-59)

Это предупреждение принадлежит учёному, который последние годы активно занимается созданием научно-популярных телепрограмм по космосу, пишет книги и киносценарии.

[This warning-\_\_\_\_\_ belongs scholar-\_\_\_\_\_, who-\_\_\_\_\_ last years-\_\_\_\_\_ actively is-occupied creation-\_\_\_\_\_ scientific-popular television-shows-\_\_\_\_\_ along space-\_\_\_\_\_, writes books-\_\_\_\_\_ and screenplays-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-81)

К счастью, М. Цветаевой вся эта запутанная и неприятная история, видимо, не коснулась.

[To happiness-\_\_\_\_\_, M. Tsvetaeva-\_\_\_\_\_ all that tangled-\_\_\_\_\_ and unpleasant story-\_\_\_\_\_, evidently, not touched.] (II-100)

Все мы по очереди делились новой информацией.

[All we-\_\_\_\_\_ along turn-\_\_\_\_\_ shared new information-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-115)

Оплачивает компания иногородним студентам и приезд в Москву на вручение стипендии, два дня проживания в столице.

[Pays-for company-\_\_\_\_\_ out-of-town students-\_\_\_\_\_ and trip-\_\_\_\_\_ to Moscow-\_\_\_\_\_ to handing-out-\_\_\_\_\_ stipend-\_\_\_\_\_, two-\_\_\_\_\_ days-\_\_\_\_\_ stay-\_\_\_\_\_ in capital-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-127)

Президент подчеркнул, что России нужно самой разобраться и понять, что происходит в экономике страны.

[President-\_\_\_\_\_ emphasized, that Russia-\_\_\_\_\_ necessary self-\_\_\_\_\_ understand and understand, what-\_\_\_\_\_ happens in economics-\_\_\_\_\_ country-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-149)

Мне сказали, что в январе было совершено 435 квартирных краж.

[Me-\_\_\_\_\_ told, that in January-\_\_\_\_\_ was committed 435-\_\_\_\_\_ apartment robberies-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-161)

#### Dative Exercise 2, Level II

*Identify the instances of the DATIVE case in the DATIVE is used.*

#### Dative Exercise 2 Level II

По мнению специалистов, пока нельзя считать японское лекарство препаратом, способным помочь больным рассеянным склерозом в тяжёлом состоянии.

[Along opinion-\_\_\_\_\_ specialists-\_\_\_\_\_, at-present must-not consider Japanese medicine-\_\_\_\_\_ preparation-\_\_\_\_\_, capable-\_\_\_\_\_ help patients-\_\_\_\_\_ multiple sclerosis-\_\_\_\_\_ in serious condition-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-4)

Все сидели тихо и смотрели на Дюка, и начинали верить Нине Георгиевне в том, что Дюк действительно нуль, пустое место.

[All-\_\_\_\_\_ sat quietly and looked at Duke-\_\_\_\_\_, and started believe Nina Georgievna-\_\_\_\_\_ in that-\_\_\_\_\_, that Duke-\_\_\_\_\_ really zero-\_\_\_\_\_, empty place-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-15)

У неё выражение птицы, которой хочется пить, ей не дадут, и похоже, она скоро отбудет из этого мира.

[By her-\_\_\_\_\_ expression-\_\_\_\_\_ bird-\_\_\_\_\_, who-\_\_\_\_\_ wants drink, her-\_\_\_\_\_ not give, and appears, she-\_\_\_\_\_ soon will-leave from this world-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-29)

Двадцать шесть процентов опрошенных не смогли ответить на вопрос: “Какие из скульптурных памятников вам больше всего нравятся?” Не смотрят четверть москвичей по сторонам, даже по выходным дням, не до монументов им.

[Twenty six-\_\_\_\_ percent-\_\_\_\_ questioned-\_\_\_\_ not could answer on question-\_\_\_\_ : “Which-\_\_\_\_ from sculptural monuments-\_\_\_\_ you-\_\_\_\_ more all-\_\_\_\_ please?” Not look fourth-\_\_\_\_ Muscovites-\_\_\_\_ along sides-\_\_\_\_, even along weekend days-\_\_\_\_, not to monuments-\_\_\_\_ them-\_\_\_\_.] (II-61)

Тетрадка, в которой мы расписываемся в лаборатории по утрам, лежала тогда у него на столе, и он посматривал на неё, но ничего не сказал.

[Notebook-\_\_\_\_, in which-\_\_\_\_ we-\_\_\_\_ log-in in laboratory-\_\_\_\_ along mornings-\_\_\_\_, lay then by him-\_\_\_\_ on table-\_\_\_\_, and he-\_\_\_\_ looked at it-\_\_\_\_, but nothing-\_\_\_\_ not said.] (II-85)

Я предлагаю вам посмотреть на мир и моими глазами, глазами русской женщины из ближнего зарубежья.

[I-\_\_\_\_ suggest you-\_\_\_\_ look at world-\_\_\_\_ also my eyes-\_\_\_\_, eyes-\_\_\_\_ Russian woman-\_\_\_\_ from near abroad-\_\_\_\_.] (II-104)

Я чуть прикасаюсь к её руке щёкой.

[I-\_\_\_\_ hardly touch to her hand-\_\_\_\_ cheek-\_\_\_\_.] (II-120)

Вице-президент попросил меня, чтобы я отправился в Среднюю Азию для укрепления наших двухсторонних связей и демонстрации нашей поддержки странам этого региона.

[Vice-president-\_\_\_\_ asked me-\_\_\_\_, in-order-to I-\_\_\_\_ set-off to Central Asi\_\_\_\_ for strengthening-\_\_\_\_ our bilateral ties-\_\_\_\_ and demonstration-\_\_\_\_ our support-\_\_\_\_ countries-\_\_\_\_ this region-\_\_\_\_.] (II-128)

Верховная власть должна принадлежать президенту, считают тридцать три процента российских граждан.

[Supreme power-\_\_\_\_ should-\_\_\_\_ belong president-\_\_\_\_, consider 33-\_\_\_\_ percent-\_\_\_\_ Russian citizens-\_\_\_\_.] (II-150)

Был случай, когда преступника нашли по отпечаткам зубов — он был голодный и надкусил кусок масла.

[Was incident-\_\_\_\_, when criminal-\_\_\_\_ found along imprints-\_\_\_\_ teeth-\_\_\_\_ — he-\_\_\_\_ was hungry-\_\_\_\_ and took-bite piece-\_\_\_\_ butter-\_\_\_\_.] (II-162)

## Dative Exercise 3, Level II

Identify the instances of the DATIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the DATIVE is used.

Dative  
Exercise 3  
Level II

Георгий сел и написал письмо, и я не сказала ему в ответ ничего, просто взяла этот листок и ушла к себе на кухню.

[Georgi-\_\_\_\_\_ sat-down and wrote letter-\_\_\_\_\_, and I-\_\_\_\_\_ not said him-\_\_\_\_\_ in answer-\_\_\_\_\_ nothing-\_\_\_\_\_, just took that paper-\_\_\_\_\_ and went to self-\_\_\_\_\_ to kitchen-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-5)

Дюк смотрел на свой пояс, и ему было так его жаль, будто он расставался не с вещью, а с близким другом.

[Duke-\_\_\_\_\_ looked at own belt-\_\_\_\_\_, and him-\_\_\_\_\_ was so him-\_\_\_\_\_ sorry, as-if he-\_\_\_\_\_ parted not with thing-\_\_\_\_\_, but with close friend-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-16)

Я мечтаю, чтобы мои родители постарели и растолстели, тогда — кому они будут нужны?

[I-\_\_\_\_\_ dream, so-that my parents-\_\_\_\_\_ got-old and got-fat, then — who-\_\_\_\_\_ they-\_\_\_\_\_ will-be needed-\_\_\_\_\_?] (II-36)

Это следующая по значимости задача после выплаты учителям.

[That-\_\_\_\_\_ next-\_\_\_\_\_ along significance-\_\_\_\_\_ task-\_\_\_\_\_ after payment-\_\_\_\_\_ pensions-\_\_\_\_\_ and wages-\_\_\_\_\_ teachers-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-68)

Мы вправе надеяться, что вы будете дорожить доверием, которое мы оказываем молодому специалисту.

[We-\_\_\_\_\_ have-right hope, that you-\_\_\_\_\_ will value trust-\_\_\_\_\_, that-\_\_\_\_\_ we-\_\_\_\_\_ give young specialist-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-86)

По данным Министерства здравоохранения Российской Федерации, 20,3 процента мальчиков-подростков пробовали наркотики, каждый пятый.

[Along data-\_\_\_\_\_ Ministry-\_\_\_\_\_ health-\_\_\_\_\_ Russian Federation-\_\_\_\_\_, 20.3-\_\_\_\_\_ percent-\_\_\_\_\_ boys-adolescents-\_\_\_\_\_ tried narcotics-\_\_\_\_\_, every fifth-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-105)

Для ребят это поздно, но надо же им хоть в выходной погулять как следует.

[For kids-\_\_\_\_\_ this-\_\_\_\_\_ late, but necessary EMPHATIC them-\_\_\_\_\_ even to day-off-\_\_\_\_\_ walk as follows.] (II-121)

Вашингтонская администрация оправдывается тем, что якобы опоздала с подачей конгрессу на продление злополучного закона.

[Washington administration-\_\_\_\_\_ justifies-self that-\_\_\_\_\_, that supposedly were-late with sending-\_\_\_\_\_ Congress-\_\_\_\_\_ to extension-\_\_\_\_\_ unfortunate law-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-134)

Свежую чернику, к примеру, принимают по 3-4 рубля за килограмм, сушёную — от 20 до 40 рублей (в каждом районе свои цены).

[Fresh bilberry-\_\_\_\_, to example-\_\_\_\_, takes around 3-4-\_\_\_\_ rubles-\_\_\_\_ for kilogram-\_\_\_\_, dried-\_\_\_\_ — from 20-\_\_\_\_ to 40-\_\_\_\_ rubles-\_\_\_\_ (in each region-\_\_\_\_ own prices-\_\_\_\_).] (II-151)

Главное — не приотворить на звонок дверь, не поддаться минутной слабости.

[Main-thing-\_\_\_\_ — not open to ring-\_\_\_\_ door-\_\_\_\_, not give-in minute's weakness-\_\_\_\_.] (II-163)

## Genitive Exercise 1, Level II

*Identify the instances of the GENITIVE case in the following sentences and explain the GENITIVE is used.*

Эта страна считается довольно бедной по части природных ископаемых.

[That country-\_\_\_\_ is-considered quite poor-\_\_\_\_ along portion-\_\_\_\_ natural resources-\_\_\_\_.] (II-2)

Он закрыл глаза, чтобы проникло как можно меньше раздражителей, и тут же увидел взгляд Светланы и понял, что такими одинаковыми взглядами он мог обменяться только со своей женой, и больше ни с одним человеком на всём свете.

[He-\_\_\_\_ closed eyes-\_\_\_\_, so-that penetrated as possible less irritations-\_\_\_\_, and here already saw look-\_\_\_\_ Svetlana-\_\_\_\_ and understood, that such identical looks-\_\_\_\_ he-\_\_\_\_ could exchange only with own wife-\_\_\_\_, and more not with one person-\_\_\_\_ on whole world-\_\_\_\_.] (II-10)

Правительство Японии до сих пор оказывало поддержку усилиям президента в проведении экономических и политических реформ.

[Government-\_\_\_\_ Japan-\_\_\_\_ to this time-\_\_\_\_ gave support-\_\_\_\_ efforts-\_\_\_\_ president-\_\_\_\_ in conducting-\_\_\_\_ economic and political reforms-\_\_\_\_.] (II-23)

У неё выражение птицы, которой хочется пить, ей не дают, и похоже, она скоро отбудет из этого мира.

[By her-\_\_\_\_ expression-\_\_\_\_ bird-\_\_\_\_, who-\_\_\_\_ wants drink, her-\_\_\_\_ not give, and appears, she-\_\_\_\_ soon will-leave from this world-\_\_\_\_.] (II-29)

Владислав выпил свой чай в три больших глотка и решительно подвинулся.

[Vladislav-\_\_\_\_ drank own tea-\_\_\_\_ in three-\_\_\_\_ big gulps-\_\_\_\_ and decisively got-up.] (II-38)

Не успел профессор закончить, как в проход между рядами шагнула американка средних лет.

[Not managed professor-\_\_\_\_\_ finish, how in aisle-\_\_\_\_\_ between rows-\_\_\_\_\_ stepped American-\_\_\_\_\_ middle years-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-45)

Актёр, будучи с гастрóлями во Фрáнкфурте, добился там политического убежища.

[Actor-\_\_\_\_\_, being with tour-\_\_\_\_\_ in Frankfurt-\_\_\_\_\_, got there political asylum-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-52)

Дело в том, что наши средства ограничены. А значит, ограничено число наших дорогих гостей.

[Thing-\_\_\_\_\_ in that-\_\_\_\_\_, that our means-\_\_\_\_\_ limited-\_\_\_\_\_. But means, limited-\_\_\_\_\_ number-\_\_\_\_\_ our dear guests-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-57)

Будем писать так же гениально — но без его нелепостей и ошибок.

[Will write thus brilliantly — but without his absurdities-\_\_\_\_\_ and errors-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-64)

Случай этот специалисты до сих пор считают небывалы

[Case this-\_\_\_\_\_ specialists-\_\_\_\_\_ to this time-\_\_\_\_\_ consi-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-72)

Я не вижу ничего плохого в том, что Щербáковой удаётся угадать желание читателя ровно за минуту до того, как сам читатель это желание чётко осознаёт.

[I-\_\_\_\_\_ not see nothing-\_\_\_\_\_ bad-\_\_\_\_\_ in that-\_\_\_\_\_, that Shcherbakova-\_\_\_\_\_ is-successful guess desire-\_\_\_\_\_ reader-\_\_\_\_\_ exactly to minute-\_\_\_\_\_ until that-\_\_\_\_\_, as self-\_\_\_\_\_ reader-\_\_\_\_\_ this desire-\_\_\_\_\_ clearly realizes.] (II-167)

## Genitive Exercise 2, Level II

*Identify the instances of the GENITIVE case in the followi  
the GENITIVE is used.*

Для собравшихся был устроен концерт, во время которого среди музыкантов появился сам президент.

[For gathered-\_\_\_\_\_ was organized-\_\_\_\_\_ concert-\_\_\_\_\_, in time-\_\_\_\_\_ which-\_\_\_\_\_ among musicians-\_\_\_\_\_ appeared himself president-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-3)

Эти луна, река, плакучая ива были всегда в её жизни, и никогда не было так, чтобы их не было.

[These moon-\_\_\_\_\_, river-\_\_\_\_\_, weeping willow-\_\_\_\_\_ always in her life-\_\_\_\_\_, and never not been so, so-that they-\_\_\_\_\_ not was.] (II-11)

Обучение будет идти с применением совершенной компьютерной и лингафонной техники.

[Instruction-\_\_\_\_\_ will go with application-\_\_\_\_\_ complete computer-\_\_\_\_\_ and language laboratory technology-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-24)

От них веет такой убедительной скукой, что эта скука достигает седьмого этажа, проникает через стекло и касается моего лица.

[From them-\_\_\_\_\_ blows such convincing boredom-\_\_\_\_\_, that this boredom-\_\_\_\_\_ reaches seventh floor-\_\_\_\_\_, penetrates through glass-\_\_\_\_\_ and touches my face-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-31)

Мужа она тоже не помнила, но понимала, что раз у неё было четверо детей, то, наверное, и муж был.

[Husband-\_\_\_\_\_ she-\_\_\_\_\_ also not remembered, but understood, that if by her-\_\_\_\_\_ was foursome-\_\_\_\_\_ children-\_\_\_\_\_, then, surely, and husband-\_\_\_\_\_ was.] (II-39)

Певец обладал красивым низким баритоном удивительного тембра.

[Singer-\_\_\_\_\_ possessed beautiful deep baritone-\_\_\_\_\_ amazing timbre-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-47)

Любой из них мог разгорячиться безо всякого повода.

[Any-\_\_\_\_\_ from them-\_\_\_\_\_ could get-excited without any reason-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-53)

Не повышайте тона, мистер Большаков.

[Not raise tone-\_\_\_\_\_, mister Bolshakov-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-58)

Тогда литературу преподавали хорошо, и мы наелись великих писателей уже в школе.

[Then literature-\_\_\_\_\_ taught well, and we-\_\_\_\_\_ got-fed-up great already in school-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-65)

— Ну пока, — вдруг соглашается Мisha. — Счастливого отдыха.

[—Well so-long, — suddenly acquieses Misha-\_\_\_\_\_. — Happy vacation-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-74)

Обитатели этого дома — лауреаты различных премий, представляли свои картины в Кельне, Париже и Сан-Пауло.

[Residents-\_\_\_\_\_ this house-\_\_\_\_\_ — laureates-\_\_\_\_\_ various prizes-\_\_\_\_\_, exhibited own pictures-\_\_\_\_\_ in Cologne-\_\_\_\_\_, Paris-\_\_\_\_\_ and San Paulo-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-94)

itive Exercise 3, Level II

Identify the instances of the GENITIVE case i  
the GENITIVE is used.

ing sentences and explain

Она действительно была горожанка, никогда не жила в деревне, никогда не спивалась до болезни, и её интересовало всё, чего она не могла постичь собственным опытом.

[She-\_\_\_\_\_ really was city-woman-\_\_\_\_\_, never not lived in country-\_\_\_\_\_, not drunk to illness-\_\_\_\_\_, a her-\_\_\_\_\_ interested everything-\_\_\_\_\_, what-\_\_\_\_\_ she-\_\_\_\_\_ not was-able grasp own experience-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-6)

Тогда она надела юбку-мини, босоножки на платформе и вышла из дому.

[Then she-\_\_\_\_\_ put-on mini-skirt-\_\_\_\_\_, sandals-\_\_\_\_\_ on platform-\_\_\_\_\_ and left from house-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-13)

Я задохнулась в первое мгновение, как будто меня толкнули с моста в холодную речку в октябре месяце.

[I-\_\_\_\_\_ gasped in first moment-\_\_\_\_\_, as if me-\_\_\_\_\_ pushed-off from bridge-\_\_\_\_\_ to cold river-\_\_\_\_\_ in October month-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-25)

Её вывели из Испании в тридцать шестом году, и она тут жила и росла, чтобы однажды встретить русского парня и в звездный час зачать сына.

[Her-\_\_\_\_\_ brought from Spain-\_\_\_\_\_ in thirty sixth year-\_\_\_\_\_, and she-\_\_\_\_\_ here lived and grew, so-that once meet Russian guy-\_\_\_\_\_ and in star hour-\_\_\_\_\_ conceive son-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-32)

Конечно, в её возрасте смешно называть кого-то дядей или тётей, пора уже переходить на имена-отчества, но Стасов всегда был для неё дядей Владиком.

[Of-course, in her age-\_\_\_\_\_ silly call someone-\_\_\_\_\_ uncle-\_\_\_\_\_ or aunt-\_\_\_\_\_, time already switch-over to names-patronymics-\_\_\_\_\_, but Stasov-\_\_\_\_\_ always was for her-\_\_\_\_\_ uncle Vladik-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-40)

Среди эмигрантских писателей я занимаю какое-то место.

[Among emigrant writers-\_\_\_\_\_ I-\_\_\_\_\_ occupy some place-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-49)

Финансовой поддержки её родителей стыдился.

[Financial support-\_\_\_\_\_ her parents-\_\_\_\_\_ was-ashamed.] (II-54)

И через минуту греческий певец скончался от удущья.

[And across minute-\_\_\_\_\_ Greek singer-\_\_\_\_\_ died from asphyxiation-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-60)

Без преувеличения, можно сказать, что сейчас вся российская медицина работает на президента.

[Without exaggeration-\_\_\_\_\_, possible say, that now all Russian medical-profession-\_\_\_\_\_ works on president-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-67)



Елене звонить было нѣкуда: онѣ с мужем жили за городом без телефона и прочих удобств.

[Elena-\_\_\_\_\_ call was nowhere: they-\_\_\_\_\_ with husband-\_\_\_\_\_ lived beyond city-\_\_\_\_\_ without telephone-\_\_\_\_\_ and other comforts-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-76)

#### Locative Exercise 1, Level II

*Identify the instances of the LOCATIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the LOCATIVE is used.*

По мнѣнию специалистов, пока нельзя считать японское лекарство препаратом, способным помочь больным рассеянным склерозом в тяжѣлом состоянии.

[Along opinion-\_\_\_\_\_ specialists-\_\_\_\_\_, at-present must-not consider Japanese medicine-\_\_\_\_\_ preparation-\_\_\_\_\_, capable-\_\_\_\_\_ help patients-\_\_\_\_\_ multiple sclerosis-\_\_\_\_\_ in serious condition-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-4)

Тогда она надела юбку-мини, босоножки на платформе и вышла из дому.

[Then she-\_\_\_\_\_ put-on mini-skirt-\_\_\_\_\_, sandals-\_\_\_\_\_ on platform-\_\_\_\_\_ and left from house-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-13)

Правительство Японии до сих пор оказывало поддержку усилиям президента в проведении экономических и политических реформ.

[Government-\_\_\_\_\_ Japan-\_\_\_\_\_ to this time-\_\_\_\_\_ gave support-\_\_\_\_\_ efforts-\_\_\_\_\_ president-\_\_\_\_\_ in conducting-\_\_\_\_\_ economic and political reforms-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-23)

Больше всего на свете он любит ходить в походы, спать в палатках, варить уху в закопченном котелке.

[More everything-\_\_\_\_\_ on world-\_\_\_\_\_, he-\_\_\_\_\_ loves go in hikes-\_\_\_\_\_, sleep in tents-\_\_\_\_\_, cook fish-soup-\_\_\_\_\_ in sooty pot-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-33)

Недаром же среди московских журналистов ходят слухи о баснословных зарплатах работников этого печатного органа.

[Not-without-reason among Moscow journalists-\_\_\_\_\_ go rumors-\_\_\_\_\_ about legendary wages-\_\_\_\_\_ workers-\_\_\_\_\_ that press organ-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-62)

Тетрадка, в которой мы расписываемся в лаборатории по утрам, лежала тогда у него на столе, и он поглядывал на неё, но ничего не сказал.

[Notebook-\_\_\_\_\_, in which-\_\_\_\_\_ we-\_\_\_\_\_ log-in in laboratory-\_\_\_\_\_ along mornings-\_\_\_\_\_, lay then by him-\_\_\_\_\_ on table-\_\_\_\_\_, and he-\_\_\_\_\_ looked at it-\_\_\_\_\_, but nothing-\_\_\_\_\_ not said.] (II-85)

Обитатели этого дома — лауреаты различных премий, представляли свои картины в Кельне, Париже и Сан-Пауло.

[Residents-\_\_\_\_\_ this house-\_\_\_\_\_ — laureates-\_\_\_\_\_ various prizes-\_\_\_\_\_, exhibited own pictures-\_\_\_\_\_ in Cologne-\_\_\_\_\_, Paris-\_\_\_\_\_ and San Paulo-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-94)

Свою борьбу против Кастро фонд целиком проводит в рамках пропагандистской войны.

[Own struggle-\_\_\_\_\_ against Castro-\_\_\_\_\_ fund completely leads in frames-\_\_\_\_\_ propaganda war-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-133)

Я участвовал в пяти войнах, ходил в атаку, так что было море крови.

[I-\_\_\_\_\_ participated in five wars-\_\_\_\_\_, went in attack-\_\_\_\_\_, so that was sea-\_\_\_\_\_ blood-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-144)

Президент подчеркнул, что России нужно самой разобраться и понять, что происходит в экономике страны.

[President-\_\_\_\_\_ emphasized, that Russia-\_\_\_\_\_ necessary self-\_\_\_\_\_ understand and understand, what-\_\_\_\_\_ happens in economics-\_\_\_\_\_ country-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-149)

А повести Галины Щербаковой где-то посерединке: мелодрамы к бытовой драме.

[But stories-\_\_\_\_\_ Galina Shcherbakova-\_\_\_\_\_ somewhere in-middle: on half-path-\_\_\_\_\_ from melodrama-\_\_\_\_\_ to domestic drama-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-166)

#### Locative Exercise 2, Level II

*Identify the instances of the LOCATIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the LOCATIVE is used.*

Она действительно была горожанка, никогда не жила в деревне, никогда не спивалась до болезни, и её интересовало всё, чего она не могла постичь собственным опытом.

[She-\_\_\_\_\_ really was city-woman-\_\_\_\_\_, never not lived in country-\_\_\_\_\_, not drunk to illness-\_\_\_\_\_, a her-\_\_\_\_\_ interested everything-\_\_\_\_\_, what-\_\_\_\_\_ she-\_\_\_\_\_ not was-able grasp own experience-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-6)

На его жизненном столе, как в китайском ресторане, стояло столько блюд, что смешно было пасться чем-то одним и не попробовать другого.

[On his life table-\_\_\_\_\_, as in Chinese restaurant-\_\_\_\_\_, stood so-many-\_\_\_\_\_ dishes-\_\_\_\_\_, that absurd was fill-up something one-\_\_\_\_\_ and not try another-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-18)

Я захохоталась в первое мгновение, как будто меня столкнули с моста в холодную речку в октябре месяце.

[I-\_\_\_\_\_ gasped in first moment-\_\_\_\_\_, as if me-\_\_\_\_\_ pushed-off from bridge-\_\_\_\_\_ to cold river-\_\_\_\_\_ in October month-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-25)

Если мы и говорили о Боге, то в состоянии позы, кокетства.

[If we-\_\_\_\_\_ even spoke about God-\_\_\_\_\_, then in state-\_\_\_\_\_ pose-\_\_\_\_\_, coquetry-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-48)

Цыганка заметила следы борьбы на моём лице.

[Gypsy-woman-\_\_\_\_\_ noticed traces-\_\_\_\_\_ struggle-\_\_\_\_\_ on my face-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-66)

Мы на свободе! Мы дышим полной грудью! Говорим всё, что думаем! Уверенно смотрим в будущее!

[We-\_\_\_\_\_ on freedom-\_\_\_\_\_. We-\_\_\_\_\_ breathe full chest-\_\_\_\_\_. Say everything-\_\_\_\_\_, that-\_\_\_\_\_ think! Confidently look in future-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-89)

Трудно было разобраться в том дыму.

[Difficult was understand in that smoke-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-107)

Три труднейших года я прожил в холоде и темноте.

[Three-\_\_\_\_\_ quite-difficult year-\_\_\_\_\_ I-\_\_\_\_\_ lived-through in cold-\_\_\_\_\_ and dark-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-136)

Сельские люди вдруг начинают понимать: их никому не нужна земля на самом деле имеет большую ценность...

[Village people-\_\_\_\_\_ suddenly begin understand: their no-one-\_\_\_\_\_ not needed land-\_\_\_\_\_ in actual fact-\_\_\_\_\_ has big value-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-145)

Заметно ухудшилось самочувствие, вплоть до того, что врачи настаивают на скорейшем уходе в отпуск не менее чем на 30 дней.

[Noticeably worsened condition-\_\_\_\_\_, right-up to that-\_\_\_\_\_, that doctors-\_\_\_\_\_ insist on immediate departure-\_\_\_\_\_ to leave-\_\_\_\_\_ not less than to 30-\_\_\_\_\_ days-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-153)

### Locative Exercise 3, Level II

*Identify the instances of the LOCATIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the LOCATIVE is used.*

Он закрыл глаза, чтобы проникало как можно меньше раздражителей, и тут же увидел взгляд Светланы и понял, что такими одинаковыми взглядами он мог обмениваться только со своей женой, и больше ни с одним человеком на всём свете.

[He-\_\_\_\_\_ closed eyes-\_\_\_\_\_, so-that penetrated as possible less irritations-\_\_\_\_\_, and here already saw look-\_\_\_\_\_ Svetlana-\_\_\_\_\_ and understood, that such identical looks-\_\_\_\_\_ he-\_\_\_\_\_ could exchange only with own wife-\_\_\_\_\_, and more not with one person-\_\_\_\_\_ on whole world-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-10)

Он признаёт, что в условиях внутривнутриполитической обстановки в России трудно говорить о решении завтра или послезавтра.

[He-\_\_\_\_\_ admits, that in conditions-\_\_\_\_\_ internal-political situation-\_\_\_\_\_ in Russia-\_\_\_\_\_ hard talk about solution-\_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow or day-after-tomorrow.] (II-20)

Томас Мэнн однажды заметил, что в истории романа веками чаще всего становятся книги, о которых при их появлении особенно уверенно говорилось: это не роман.

[Thomas Mann-\_\_\_\_\_ once remarked, that in history-\_\_\_\_\_ novel-\_\_\_\_\_ landmarks-\_\_\_\_\_ more-frequently all-\_\_\_\_\_ become books-\_\_\_\_\_, about which-\_\_\_\_\_ at their appearance-\_\_\_\_\_ especially confidently said: this-\_\_\_\_\_ not novel-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-30)

Пороки его заключались в отсутствии недостатков.

[Flaws his-\_\_\_\_\_ consisted in absence-\_\_\_\_\_ shortcomings-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-56)

Студенты запасали спиртное на вечер. Причём держали его не в холодильниках, а между оконными рамами.

[Students-\_\_\_\_\_ stocked-up alcohol-\_\_\_\_\_ for evening-\_\_\_\_\_. Moreover kept it-\_\_\_\_\_ not in refrigerators-\_\_\_\_\_, but between window frames-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-69)

Семь минут профессор обвинял молодого писателя в хулиганстве, порнографии и забвении русских гуманистических традиций.

[Seven-\_\_\_\_\_ minutes-\_\_\_\_\_ professor-\_\_\_\_\_ accused young writer-\_\_\_\_\_ in hooliganism-\_\_\_\_\_, pornography-\_\_\_\_\_ and neglect-\_\_\_\_\_ Russian humanistic traditions-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-90)

Это была радиопередача о мужественном хореографе, который сохранил на Западе верность любимой профессии.

[This was radio-broadcast-\_\_\_\_\_ about courageous choreographer-\_\_\_\_\_, who-\_\_\_\_\_ preserved in West-\_\_\_\_\_ faithfulness-\_\_\_\_\_ beloved profession-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-109)

Все производители товаров на выставке утверждали, что ввозить товары из-за границы намного проще, чем выпускать их в России.

[All producers-\_\_\_\_\_ goods-\_\_\_\_\_ at exhibition-\_\_\_\_\_ confirmed, that import goods-\_\_\_\_\_ from-beyond border-\_\_\_\_\_ much simpler, than-\_\_\_\_\_ produce them-\_\_\_\_\_ in Russia-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-138)

Вон у нас во дворе за три года — два убийства было. С ограблением.  
[There by us-\_\_\_\_\_ in courtyard-\_\_\_\_\_ in three-\_\_\_\_\_ years-\_\_\_\_\_ — two-\_\_\_\_\_ murders-\_\_\_\_\_ were. With robbery-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-79)

О роли домофона в жизни московского подъезда мы говорили с сотрудниками Отдела по борьбе с кражами чужого имущества.  
[About role-\_\_\_\_\_ intercom-\_\_\_\_\_ in life-\_\_\_\_\_ Moscow entryway-\_\_\_\_\_ we-\_\_\_\_\_ spoke with employee-\_\_\_\_\_ Department-\_\_\_\_\_ along struggle-\_\_\_\_\_ with robberies-\_\_\_\_\_ other's property-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-160)

#### Mixed Case Exercise 1, Level II

*Identify the cases in the sentences below and explain why those cases are used. Provide your own English translation of the sentence and compare it with the translation in the key.*

Инна всё время ждала, что Адам проявит какие-то знаки заинтересованности: коснётся локтем локтя или мизинцем мизинца.  
[Inna-\_\_\_\_\_ all time-\_\_\_\_\_ waited, that Adam-\_\_\_\_\_ show some signs-\_\_\_\_\_ interest-\_\_\_\_\_ : touches elbow-\_\_\_\_\_ elbow-\_\_\_\_\_ or pinky-finger-\_\_\_\_\_ pinky-finger-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-9)

Когда через полтора часа труп увезли, следственная группа отправилась во Дворец молодёжи, где накануне закончился конкурс красоты.  
[When after one-and-a-half-\_\_\_\_\_ hour-\_\_\_\_\_ corpse-\_\_\_\_\_ took-away, investigation team-\_\_\_\_\_ headed to Palace-\_\_\_\_\_ youth-\_\_\_\_\_, where day-before finished contest-\_\_\_\_\_ beauty-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-37)

Газетная работа поныне является для меня источником существования.  
[Newspaper work-\_\_\_\_\_ up-to-present is for me-\_\_\_\_\_ source-\_\_\_\_\_ livelihood-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-46)

В том же году американский журнал «Пипл» избирает француза «человеком года».  
[In that year-\_\_\_\_\_ American magazine-\_\_\_\_\_ “People-\_\_\_\_\_” chooses Frenchman-\_\_\_\_\_ “Man-\_\_\_\_\_ year-\_\_\_\_\_” .] (II-73)

Муж Люси — доктор наук, недавно построили большую кооперативную квартиру, денег хватает, у пятилетнего Миши есть няня.  
[Husband-\_\_\_\_\_ Lyusa-\_\_\_\_\_ — doctor-\_\_\_\_\_ sciences-\_\_\_\_\_, recently built large cooperative apartment-\_\_\_\_\_, money-\_\_\_\_\_ is-enough, by five-year-old Misha-\_\_\_\_\_ is nanny-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-88)

- 6 Осенью 1923 года в Прагу приехал хорошо знавший Цветаеву поэт В. Ф. Ходасевич.

[Fall-\_\_\_\_\_ 1923 year-\_\_\_\_\_ in Prague-\_\_\_\_\_ arrived well knew-\_\_\_\_\_ Tsvetaev-  
\_\_\_\_\_ poet V. F. Khodasevich-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-98)

Все мы по очереди делились новой информацией.

[All we-\_\_\_\_\_ along turn-\_\_\_\_\_ shared new information-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-115)

Ребята пьют молоко, две минуты мы решаем, идти ли ещё гулять, и — отказываемся.

[Kids-\_\_\_\_\_ drink milk-\_\_\_\_\_, two-\_\_\_\_\_ minutes-\_\_\_\_\_ we-\_\_\_\_\_ deci  
whether still walk, and — decline.] (II-126)

Когда в пятидесятые годы создавалось телевидение, туда шли неудачники кино и театра, а также люди, которые чувствовали: за этим делом — будущее.

[When in fifties years-\_\_\_\_\_ created television-\_\_\_\_\_, there went unfortunate-ones-  
\_\_\_\_\_ movies-\_\_\_\_\_ and theater-\_\_\_\_\_, but also people-\_\_\_\_\_, which-\_\_\_\_\_ felt:  
beyond this thing-\_\_\_\_\_ — future-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-142)

Я сама себе казалась противной оттого, что когда-то с ним целовалась.

[I-\_\_\_\_\_ self-\_\_\_\_\_ self-\_\_\_\_\_ seemed nasty-\_\_\_\_\_ from-that, that sometime with  
him-\_\_\_\_\_ kissed.] (II-156)

### Mixed Case Exercise 2, Level II

*Identify the cases in the sentences below and explain why those cases are used. Provide your own English translation of the sentence and compare it with the translation in the key.*

### Mixed Case Exercise 2 Level II

Важно, например, довести до сведения россиян тот факт, что до третьего сентября 1945 года Россия никогда не владела этими четырьмя островами.  
[Important, for-example, bring to attention-\_\_\_\_\_ Russians-\_\_\_\_\_ that fact-\_\_\_\_\_,  
that until third-\_\_\_\_\_ September-\_\_\_\_\_ 1945 year-\_\_\_\_\_ Russia-\_\_\_\_\_ never owned  
those four islands-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-21)

Мужа она тоже не помнила, но понимала, что раз у неё было четверо детей, то, наверное, и муж был.

[Husband-\_\_\_\_\_ she-\_\_\_\_\_ also not remembered, but understood, that if by her-  
\_\_\_\_\_ was foursome-\_\_\_\_\_ children-\_\_\_\_\_, then, surely, and husband-\_\_\_\_\_ was.]  
(II-39)

Певец обладал красивым низким баритоновым удивительного тембра.

[Singer-\_\_\_\_\_ possessed beautiful deep baritone-\_\_\_\_\_ amazing timbre-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-47)

Выражение лица такое, будто ей рассказали что-то интересное и просили больше никому не передавать.

[Expression-\_\_\_\_\_ face-\_\_\_\_\_ such-\_\_\_\_\_, as-if her-\_\_\_\_\_ told something interesting-\_\_\_\_\_ and asked more no-one-\_\_\_\_\_ not pass-on.] (II-75)

Семь минут профессор обвинял молодого писателя в хулиганстве, порнографии и забвении русских гуманистических традиций.

[Seven-\_\_\_\_\_ minutes-\_\_\_\_\_ professor-\_\_\_\_\_ accused young writer-\_\_\_\_\_ in hooliganism-\_\_\_\_\_, pornography-\_\_\_\_\_ and neglect-\_\_\_\_\_ Russian humanistic traditions-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-90)

Она покупала на эти деньги и нефть, и истребители, и многое другое, чтобы получить прибыль.

[She-\_\_\_\_\_ bought for that money-\_\_\_\_\_ and oil-\_\_\_\_\_, and fighter-planes-\_\_\_\_\_, and many other-\_\_\_\_\_, so-that receive profit-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-103)

Я чуть прикасаюсь к её руке щёкой.

[I-\_\_\_\_\_ hardly touch to her hand-\_\_\_\_\_ cheek-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-120)

Оплачивает компания иногородним студентам и приезд в Москву на вручение стипендии, два дня проживания в столице.

[Pays-for company-\_\_\_\_\_ out-of-town students-\_\_\_\_\_ and trip-\_\_\_\_\_ to Moscow-\_\_\_\_\_ to handing-out-\_\_\_\_\_ stipend-\_\_\_\_\_, two-\_\_\_\_\_ days-\_\_\_\_\_ stay-\_\_\_\_\_ in capital-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-127)

Туда один-два раза в неделю приезжала автолавка, источник всех благ в виде еды и питья.

[There one-two-\_\_\_\_\_ occasions-\_\_\_\_\_ in week-\_\_\_\_\_ came lunch-wagon-\_\_\_\_\_, source-\_\_\_\_\_ all blessings-\_\_\_\_\_ in form-\_\_\_\_\_ food-\_\_\_\_\_ and drink-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-143)

“Ты многого добила своей партийной честностью?” с сарказмом спросит её Маша.

[“You-\_\_\_\_\_ much-\_\_\_\_\_ got own party honesty-\_\_\_\_\_?” ith sarcasm-\_\_\_\_\_ asks her-\_\_\_\_\_ Masha-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-158)

### Mixed Case Exercise 3, Level II

*Identify the cases in the sentences below and explain why those cases are used. Provide your own English translation of the sentence and compare it with the translation in the key.*

Конечно, в её возрасте смешно называть кого-то дядей или тётей, поря уже переходить на имена-отчества, но Стасов всегда был для неё дядей Владиком.

[Of-course, in her age-\_\_\_\_\_ silly call someone-\_\_\_\_\_ uncle-\_\_\_\_\_ or aunt-\_\_\_\_\_, time already switch-over to names-patronymics-\_\_\_\_\_, but Stasov-\_\_\_\_\_ always was for her-\_\_\_\_\_ uncle Vladik-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-40)

Я вижу его издали, с угла улицы Войнова, где был тогда Дом писателей и где все мы тогда пытались занять стулья.

[I-\_\_\_\_\_ see him-\_\_\_\_\_ from-afar, from corner-\_\_\_\_\_ street-\_\_\_\_\_ Voinov-\_\_\_\_\_, where was then House-\_\_\_\_\_ writers-\_\_\_\_\_ and where all we-\_\_\_\_\_ then tried occupy seats-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-63)

Ты ничего не отдаёшь. Ты чемпион эгоизма, и в этом твоя творческая индивидуальность.

[You-\_\_\_\_\_ nothing-\_\_\_\_\_ not give. You-\_\_\_\_\_ champion-\_\_\_\_\_ egotism-\_\_\_\_\_, and in that-\_\_\_\_\_ your artistic individuality-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-77)

А "подарок"-то, оказывается, мне устроил банк, в котором я имел глупость открыть счёт и получить пластиковую карточку.

[But "gift-\_\_\_\_\_", turns-out, me-\_\_\_\_\_ arranged bank-\_\_\_\_\_, in which-\_\_\_\_\_ I-\_\_\_\_\_ had stupidity-\_\_\_\_\_ open account-\_\_\_\_\_ and received plastic card-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-91)

По данным Министерства здравоохранения Российской Федерации, 20,3 процента мальчиков-подростков пробовали наркотики, каждый пятый.

[Along data-\_\_\_\_\_ Ministry-\_\_\_\_\_ health-\_\_\_\_\_ Russian Federation-\_\_\_\_\_, 20.3-\_\_\_\_\_ percent-\_\_\_\_\_ boys-adolescents-\_\_\_\_\_ tried narcotics-\_\_\_\_\_, every fifth-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-105)

Латы нужны тем, у кого нет фигуры.

[Armor-\_\_\_\_\_ needed-\_\_\_\_\_ those-\_\_\_\_\_, by whom-\_\_\_\_\_ not figures-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-114)

Вашингтонская администрация оправдывается тем, что якобы опоздала с подачей конгрессу на продление злополучного закона.

[Washington administration-\_\_\_\_\_ justifies-self that-\_\_\_\_\_, that supposedly were-late with sending-\_\_\_\_\_ Congress-\_\_\_\_\_ to extension-\_\_\_\_\_ unfortunate law-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-134)

Эпоха монетаризма в России заканчивается. Трудно сказать, когда он закончится совсем, но играть в деньги в России больше не будут.

[Epoch-\_\_\_\_\_ monetarianism-\_\_\_\_\_ in Russia-\_\_\_\_\_ ends. Difficult say, when it-\_\_\_\_\_ will-end completely, but play in money-\_\_\_\_\_ in Russia-\_\_\_\_\_ more not will-be.] (II-140)



О роли домофона в жизни московского подъезда мы говорили с сотрудниками Отдела по борьбе с кражами чужого имущества.

[About role-\_\_\_\_\_ intercom-\_\_\_\_\_ in life-\_\_\_\_\_ Moscow entryway-\_\_\_\_\_ we-\_\_\_\_\_ spoke with employees-\_\_\_\_\_ Department-\_\_\_\_\_ along struggle-\_\_\_\_\_ with robberies-\_\_\_\_\_ other's property-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-160)

Межрелигиозная рознь может способствовать распаду России.

[Interreligious disagreement-\_\_\_\_\_ may assist break-up-\_\_\_\_\_ Russia-\_\_\_\_\_.] (II-112)

#### Mixed Case Exercise 4, Level II

*Put the underlined words and phrases into the correct cases. Provide your own English translation of the sentence and compare it with the translation in the key.*

Обитатели гнезд с сердитое жужжание набросились на обидчик целый рой и стали жалить он. (II-1)

У она выражение лица, которая хочется пить, она не дадут, и похоже, она скоро отбудет из этот мир. (II-29)

Он любил здесь работать, и вообще, была бы его воля, проводил бы здесь большая часть время. (II-41)

Цыганка заметила следы борьба на мое лицо. (II-66)

Полвиг состоял в то, что у мы сначала надо было ненавидеть эки, а потом — охранники. А Довлатов знал и любил и те, и другие. (II-92)

Моя бабушка считает, что дискотека срѐднн танцплощадка — что-то трогательное и нежное. (II-106)

“Вот какие у мы красивые дети,” говорю я и зову они на кухня накрывать вместе на стол. (II-122)

Вся семья срѐчно занимается оформление необходимые документы, и Надежда Антонова больше все боится, что не успеет все оформить до поездка. (II-137)

Вон у мы во двор за три год — два убийство было. С ограбление. (II-79)

10 А теперь поч живѐт отдельно, влюблен до упомрачение в свой муж. (II-159)

Россия всегда правила аристократия, и он по свой образ мышления аристократ до мозг кости. (II-165)

Mixed Case Exercise 5, Level II

*Put the underlined words and phrases into the correct cases. Provide your own English translation of the sentence and compare it with the translation in the key.*

По мнение специалисты, пока нельзя считать японское лекарство препарат, способный помочь больные рассеянный склероз в тяжёлое состояние. (II-4)

От он вѣет такая убедительная сќќка, что эта сќќка достигает сельмой этаж, проникает через стекло и касается мой лицо. (II-31)

Именно здесь, среди эта стерильная белизна, рождались идеи, приходили разочарования, ставились эксперименты. (II-42)

Студенты запасали спиртное на вечер. Причём держали он не в холодильники, а между оконные рамы. (II-69)

Дети безработные берут пример с родители — каждый четвёртый юный поляк говорит о свой планы так: <<Буду безработный>>. (II-80)

Душевнобольные художники продают свой картины за пятьдесят тысячи марки и более. (II-93)

Она набирала для издательства все мой произведения. А значит, читать мой рассказы она уже не обязательно. (II-108)

Дима, давай не будем обсуждать это, прошу ты, погляди сегодня свой брюки сам, я надо дошить. (II-123)

С торговые наценки в магазин подобные тетрадки поднимутся до шесть тысячи рублей. (II-139)

Отныне при утрата водительское удостоверение автомобилисты не нужно будет сдавать новый экзамен. (II-148)

Был случай, когда преступник нашли по отпечатки зубы — он был голодный и надкусил кусок масло. (II-162)

Mixed Case Exercise 6, Level II

*Put the underlined words and phrases into the correct cases. Provide your own English translation of the sentence and compare it with the translation in the key.*

Георгий сел и написал письмо, и я не сказала он в ответ ничто, просто взяла этот листок и ушла к себя на кухня. (II-5)

Она вывезли из Испания в тридцать шестой год, и она тут жила и росла, чтобы однажды встретить русский парень и в звёздный час зачать сын. (II-32)

В те годы я ещё не знал, что деньги — брёмя. Что элегантность — массовая уличная форма красота. Что вечная ирония — любимое, а главное — единственное оружие беззащитные. (II-44)

В мир есть немало лидеры, которые не могут искупить перед народы своё собственная вина. (II-70)

Тетрадка, в которая мы расписываемся в лаборатория по утра, лежала тогда у он на стол, и он посматривал на она, но ничто не сказал. (II-85)

Обитатели этот дом — лауреаты различные премии, представляли свои картины в Кёльн, Париж и Сан-Пауло. (II-94)

Подобрал воин с земля недозрелая фига, кинул она в певец, и угодил он прямо в рот. (II-110)

О Господь, он, кажется, думает, что ради эта встреча я решила укоротить юбка! (II-124)

Живёт она на средства "спонсор" — женатый бизнесмен, который снимает для она квартира и периодически просит она бросить эта дурацкая работа в клуб и варить дома пельмени. (II-147)

Президент подчеркнул, что Россия нужно самá разобраться и понять, что происходит в экономика странá. (II-149)

Понимаете, только по молодость возможно с утро до вечер заниматься хозяйство, а вечер играть королева. (II-164)

## Mixed Case Exercise 7, Level II

Put the underlined words and phrases into the correct cases. Provide your own English translation of the sentence and compare it with the translation in the key.

Mixed Case  
Exercise 7  
Level II

Инна оглядела цветы, вернула он бабка, востребовала деньги обратно и купила на он яблоки у соседняя старуха. (II-8)

Когда она нет дома, в двери записка: “Ключи под коврик. Еда на плит. Буду в шесть. Целую, мама.” (II-35)

Не успел профессор закончить, как в проход между ряды шагнула американка средние лта. (II-45)

<<Кислород>> — диск никто неизвестный композитор около месяц держал тогда первое мсто в мировые хит-парады. (II-71)

Какой-то не свой, охрипший, голос прошу я извинить я, обещаю стать собрание и высказываю в коридор. (II-87)

Психиатр причисляет себя тоже к художники, его гигантские пластиковые фигуры украшают многие американские парки. (II-95)

Для ребята это поздновато, но падо же он хоть в выходной погулять как следует. (II-121)

Я шью и рассказываю Дима, что подсчитали наши дни <<по боллезнь>>, что у я семьдесят восемь дни — почти целый квартал. (II-125)

Кучер-мужик вслепую гнал лошали, но время от время оборачивался и кричал сквозь пурга: “Ничто, барин! Ничто, выберемся!” (II-141)

За мимозовый “сезон”, а это, примерно, две неделя с двадцатое февраль по седьмое март, можно заработать около пятьсот рублей. (II-152)

## Multi-Case Preposition Exercise 1, Level II

Choose the correct preposition and case combinations from the choices below.

Multi-Case  
Preposition  
Exercise 1  
Level II

Обитатели гнезда с сердитое жужжание/с сердитого жужжания/с сердитым жужжанием набросились на обидчика/на обидчике целым роем и стали жалить его.

With an angry buzz, the nest's inhabitants attacked the offender as a whole swarm and began to sting him. (II-1)

Я захохотала в первое мгновение/в первом мгновении, как будто меня толкнули с моста/с мостом в холодную речку/в холодной речке в октябрь/месяц/в октябрь/в октябрь.

For an instant I was gasping for air as if I had been pushed off a bridge into a cold river in the month of October. (II-25)

Если мы и говорили о Бога/о Боге, то в состояние/в состоянии поэмы, кокетства.

If we even spoke about God, then it was in the guise of a pose, coquetry. (II-48)

Недаром же среди московских журналистов ходят слухи о баснословные зарплаты/о баснословных зарплатах работников этого печатного органа. It is not without reason that among Moscow journalists rumours circulate about the legendary wages of people who work for that organ of the press. (II-62)

Студенты запасали спиртное на вечер/на вёсере. Причём держали его не в холодильники/в холодильниках, а между оконными рамами. The students stocked up on alcohol for the party. Moreover, they didn't keep it in refrigerators, but between the window frames. (II-69)

Тетрадка, в которую/в которой мы расписываемся в лабораторию/в лабораторию по утрам/по утрам, лежала тогда у него на стол/на столе, и он поглядывал на неё/на ней, но ничего не сказал.

The notebook that we logged into in the laboratory in the mornings lay on his table and he would look at it occasionally, but he didn't say anything. (II-85)

На занятия/На занятиях собирается вся лаборатория — человек двадцать; проходят они в большую, соседнюю с нашей комнату/в большой, соседней с нашей комнате.

The whole laboratory, around 20 people, gathers at the classes which are held in the big room neighboring ours. (II-118)

Впервые за многие годы/за многими годами без помощи студентов решили убрать урожай земледельцы нашей области.

For the first time in many years, the farmers of our province have decided to gather the harvest without the help of students. (II-129)

Все производители товаров на выставку/на выставке утверждали, что ввозить товары из-за границы намного проще, чем выпускать их в Россию/в России.

All the producers of goods at the exhibition confirmed that it is much simpler to import goods from abroad than to produce them in Russia. (II-138)

К счастью, оба пилота успели катапультироваться за несколько секунд/за несколькими секундами перед тем, как реактивный самолёт врезался в землю/в земле.

Fortunately, both pilots had time to eject within seconds before the jet plane crashed into the ground. (II-154)

### Multi-Case Preposition Exercise 2, Level II

*Choose the correct preposition and case combinations from the choices below.*

Георгий сел и написал письмо, и я не сказала ему в ответ/в ответе ничего, просто взяла этот листок и ушла к себе на кухню/на кухне.

Georgi sat down and wrote out a letter, and I said nothing to him in response; I just took the piece of paper and went to my place in the kitchen. (II-5)

Когда человек испытывает стресс или средней силы неприятность, в кровь/в крови выбрасывается гормон под название/под названием адреналин.

When a person experiences stress or some average-sized annoyance, the hormone called adrenaline is released into the blood. (II-27)

За час/За часом до этого мы с него/с ним расстались возле пивного бара.

An hour before this we had parted with him at the beer bar. (II-50)

Цыганка заметила следы борьбы на моё лицо/на моём лице.

The gypsy woman noticed the traces of struggle on my face. (II-66)

Дети безработных берут пример с родителей/с родителями — каждый четвёртый юный поляк говорит о свой планы/о своих планах так: <<Буду безработным>>.

Children of people who are unemployed take their example from their parents — one in four young Poles says the following about his plans: "I will be unemployed" (II-80)

Мы на свободу/на свободе! Мы дышим полной грудью! Говорим всё, что думаем! Уверенно смотрим в будущее/в будущем!

We are free! We breathe freely! We say everything that we think! We look confidently into the future! (II-89)

Это была радиопередача о мужественного хореографа/о мужественном хореографе, который сохранил на Запад/на Западе верность любимой профессии.

This was a radio program about a courageous choreographer, who remained faithful to his beloved profession in the West. (II-109)

### Multi-Case Preposi Exercise 2 Level II

Сейчас сяду за сводный график/за сводным графиком, надо сделать так, чтобы осталось внести в него/в нём только новые испытания.

Right now I'll sit down with the combined graph; it needs to be done so that only the new tests remain to be added to it. (II-119)

Президент Таджикистана убедительно продемонстрировал, что ситуацию в республику/в республике он контролирует.

The president of Tajikistan convincingly demonstrated that he controls the situation in the republic. (II-130)

Свежую чернику, к примеру, принимают по 3-4 рубля/по 3-4 рублям за килограмм/за килограммом, сушёную — от 20 до 40 рублей (в каждый район/в каждом районе свои цены).

For example, they take fresh bilberries for 3-4 rubles per kilogram, dried ones from 20 to 40 rubles (each region has its own prices). (II-151)

Это обычная практика — делить счёт за телефон/за телефоном поровну между проживающими в номер/в номере.

This is the usual practice, to divide the bill evenly between those sharing the room (II-155)

### Multi-Case Preposition Exercise 3, Level II

*Choose the correct preposition and case combinations from the choices below.*

Она действительно была горожанка, никогда не жила в деревню/в деревне, никогда не спивалась до болезни, и её интересовало всё, чего она не могла постичь собственным опытом.

She was truly a city woman: she had never lived in the country, had never drunk until she was sick, and she was interested in everything that she wasn't able to perceive via her own experience. (II-6)

Больше всего на свет/на свете он любит ходить в походы/в походах, спать в палатки/в палатках, варить уху в закопченный котелок /в закопченном котелке.

More than anything else in the world, he loves going on hikes, sleeping in tents, and cooking fish soup in a sooty pot. (II-33)

Актёр, будучи с гастролью/с гастролей/с гастролями во Франкфурт/во Франкфурте, добился там политического убежища.

While on tour in Frankfurt, the actor obtained political asylum there. (II-52)

Без преувеличения, можно сказать, что сейчас вся российская медицина работает на президента/на президенте.

One can say without exaggeration that the whole of the Russian medical profession is working on the president now. (II-67)

Режиссёр встаёт с кресла/с кресел/с креслами, оглядывает актрису с голову/с головы/с головой до ног и медленно уходит.

Seryozhka and I stay in the kitchen all evening, he really misses me during t so he won't even go away from me. (II-82)

Свою борьбу против Кáстро фонд целиком проводит в рамки/в рамках пропагандистской войны.

The fund carries on the struggle against Castro completely within the framework of a propaganda war. (II-133)

За мимозовый "сезон"/За мимозовым "сезоном", а это, примерно, две недели с двадцатый/с двадцатого/с двадцатым февраля по седьмоё/по седьмому марта, можно заработать около пятисот рублей.

During the mimosa "season", this is about two weeks from the twentieth of February to the seventh of March, it is possible to earn around 500 rubles. (II-152)

Мáша подумала, что, когда она накопит денег, она с мать/с матери/с матерью жить не будет.

Masha thought that when she got together enough money, she wouldn't live with her mother anymore. (II-157)

#### Multi-Case Preposition Exercise 4, Level II

Choose the correct preposition and case combinations from the choices below.

Он закрыл глаза, чтобы проникало как можно меньше раздражителей, и тут же увидел взгляд Светланы и понял, что такими одинаковыми взглядами он мог обменяться только со свою жену/со своей жень/со своей женой, и больше ни с одного человека/с одним человеком на весь свет/на всём свете.

He closed his eyes so that the least amount of irritation would penetrate, and just then he saw Svetlana's look and he understood that he could only exchange identical looks like that with his wife and with no other person in the entire world. (II-10)

Когда её нет дома, в двери/в дверях записка: "Ключи под коврик/под ковриком. Еда на плитку/на плитке. Буду в шесть/в шестёр. Целую, мама."

When she isn't at home there is a note on the door: "The key is under the mat. Food is on the stove. I will be back at six. Kisses, mom." (II-35)

Двадцать шесть процентов опрошенных не смогли ответить на вопрос/на вопросе: "Какие из скульптурных памятников вам больше всего нравятся?" Не смотрят четверть москвичей по стороны/по сторонам, даже по выходным дням/по выходным дням, не до монументов им.

Twenty-six percent of those asked could not answer the question: "Which sculptural monuments do you like the best?" A quarter of all Muscovites don't look around, even on weekends. They aren't into monuments. (II-61)



Муж читает письмо и волнуется до такой степени, что роняет из рук стакан с водичкой/с водичкой/с водичкой, который падает на пол/на пол/на пол и разбивается.

The husband reads the letter and becomes so upset that he drops glass of water from his hands and it falls on the floor and breaks. (II-83)

Однако незадолго до передачи дела в суд/в суд Соловьёва отказалась от услуг обоих своих защитников.

However shortly before the case was brought to court Soloveva refused the service of both of her defense lawyers. (II-102)

Журнал "Столица" решил преуспеть за счёт/за счёт махинаций. Ему способствовал банк "СБС-Агро."

Capital magazine decided to be successful at the expense of machination. The SBS-Agro bank assisted it. (II-113)

Оплачивает компания иногородним студентам и приезд в Москву/в Москву на вручение/на вручение стипендии, два дня проживания в столицу/в столице.

The company is even paying the out-of-town students for the trip to Moscow to get their stipends and for a two-day stay in the capital. (II-127)

Правительство Египта, опираясь на стародавний и полузабытый закон/на стародавнем и полузабытом законе, решило ликвидировать в страну/в стране службу телохранителей.

The government of Egypt, relying on an ancient and half-forgotten law, decided to liquidate bodyguard service in the country. (II-135)

Замётно ухудшилось самочувствие, вплоть до того, что врачи настаивают на скорейший уход/на скорейшем уходе в отпуск/в отпуске не менее чем на 30 дней/на 30 днях.

The condition had noticeably worsened right up to the point of the doctors' insistence on an immediate departure for a leave of no less than 30 days. (II-153)

Я не вижу ничего плохого в то/в том, что Щербакловой удастся угадать желание читателя ровно за минуту до того/за минутой до того, как сам читатель это желание чётко осознаёт.

I don't see anything bad in Shcherbakova's success in figuring out the desire of the reader exactly a minute before the reader himself clearly realizes the desire. (II-167)

## Level III Exercises

Nominative Exercise 1, Level III

Identify the instances of the NOMINATIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the NOMINATIVE is used.

Он мѣлком взглянул на мать, глаза у него смотрѣли утомлѣнно, как будто он не держал как слѣдует веки.

[He-\_\_\_\_\_ cursorily glanced on mother-\_\_\_\_\_, eyes-\_\_\_\_\_ by him-\_\_\_\_\_ looked wearily, as if he-\_\_\_\_\_ not held as should eyelids-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-1)

Полицейский счѣл себя оскорблѣнным и привлѣк обидчика.

[Policeman-\_\_\_\_\_ considered self-\_\_\_\_\_ offended-\_\_\_\_\_ and sued offender-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-9)

Аня всерьѣз купила билет на праздник Новаго года, не подозревая о том, что на этом празднике должнѣ быть такіе же одиночки, как она сама, те, когдѣ не пріняли, отвѣргли студенческие вечеринки.

[Anya-\_\_\_\_\_ seriously bought ticket-\_\_\_\_\_ on party-\_\_\_\_\_ New Year-\_\_\_\_\_, not suspecting about that-\_\_\_\_\_, that at this party-\_\_\_\_\_ should-\_\_\_\_\_ be such just lonely-women-\_\_\_\_\_, like she-\_\_\_\_\_ herself-\_\_\_\_\_, those-\_\_\_\_\_, who-\_\_\_\_\_ not accepted, spurned student parties-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-15)

У неѣ лицѣ совершенно малаенкой дѣвочки, и это дѣтское личико налѣплено на мелкую, как тыковка, головку.

[By her-\_\_\_\_\_ face-\_\_\_\_\_ completely small girl-\_\_\_\_\_, and that child's face-\_\_\_\_\_ stuck-\_\_\_\_\_ on small-\_\_\_\_\_, like little-pumpkin-\_\_\_\_\_, little-head-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-23)

Вообщѣ лицѣ есть, но чертѣ не связаны одной темой и как бы взятѣ с нѣскольких лиц.

[In-general face-\_\_\_\_\_ is, but features-\_\_\_\_\_ not connected-\_\_\_\_\_ one theme-\_\_\_\_\_ and as it taken-\_\_\_\_\_ from several faces-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-31)

В кулуарах писателя окружила толпа единомышленников и почитателей.

[In entrance-hall-\_\_\_\_\_ writer-\_\_\_\_\_ swarmed crowd-\_\_\_\_\_ like-minded-people-\_\_\_\_\_ and admirers-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-45)

Мой вид испугал моих слѣдователей. Онѣ устыдѣлись, сапоги приказали вернуть, хотя я ничегѣ у них не просила.

[My appearance-\_\_\_\_\_ frightened my interrogators-\_\_\_\_\_. They-\_\_\_\_\_ were-ashamed, boots-\_\_\_\_\_ ordered return, although I-\_\_\_\_\_ nothing-\_\_\_\_\_ by them-\_\_\_\_\_ not asked.] (III-58)

В странѣ находятѣ десятки тысяч бѣженцев из Либерии, испытывающих крайнюю нужду в продовольствии и предметах первой необходимости.

[In country-\_\_\_\_\_ are tens-\_\_\_\_\_ thousands-\_\_\_\_\_ refugees-\_\_\_\_\_ from Liberia-\_\_\_\_\_, experiencing-\_\_\_\_\_ extreme need-\_\_\_\_\_ in food-\_\_\_\_\_ and items-\_\_\_\_\_ first aid-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-77)

Однако далеко не все фильмы, представленные на парижском фестивале, окрашены трагическим или драматическим пафосом.

[However far not all films-\_\_\_\_, shown-\_\_\_\_ at Paris festival-\_\_\_\_, tinged-\_\_\_\_ tragic-\_\_\_\_ or dramatic pathos-\_\_\_\_.] (III-92)

И тут на её горизонте возник знаменитый эстрадный певец. Сейчас его имя забыто, но в шестидесятые годы он был популярнее Синатры.

[And here on her horizon-\_\_\_\_ appeared famous stage singer-\_\_\_\_. Now his name-\_\_\_\_ forgotten-\_\_\_\_, but in sixty years-\_\_\_\_ he-\_\_\_\_ was more-popular Sinatra-\_\_\_\_.] (III-106)

Хозяйка ланчонета миссис Бонно с грохотом поднимает железную решётку.

[Owner-\_\_\_\_ luncheonette-\_\_\_\_ Mrs. Bono-\_\_\_\_ with crash-\_\_\_\_ lifts iron grill-\_\_\_\_.] (III-130)

Под землёй через несколько сантиметров лёд, вечная мерзлота, сверху снег.

[Under ground-\_\_\_\_ through several-\_\_\_\_ centimeters-\_\_\_\_ ice-\_\_\_\_, eternal frost-\_\_\_\_, on-top snow-\_\_\_\_.] (III-161)

### Nominative Exercise 2, Level III

Identify the instances of the NOMINATIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the NOMINATIVE is used.

### Nominative Exercise 2, Level III

Бразилия является крупнейшим в мире производителем и продавцом кофе, выращивая около тридцати процентов всего мирового урожая ароматных бобов.

[Brazil-\_\_\_\_ is biggest-\_\_\_\_ in world-\_\_\_\_ producer-\_\_\_\_ and seller-\_\_\_\_ coffee-\_\_\_\_, growing around thirty percent-\_\_\_\_ entire world harvest-\_\_\_\_ aromatic beans-\_\_\_\_.] (III-2)

Он всегда приносил с собой бутылку вина, выпивал её один, вдова тем временем укладывала ребёнка спать, нарезала какой-то простой салат, что было под рукой, то ли варила яйцо вкрутую, короче, хлопотала, но не очень.

[He-\_\_\_\_ always brought with self-\_\_\_\_ bottle-\_\_\_\_ wine-\_\_\_\_, drank-up it-\_\_\_\_ one-\_\_\_\_, widow-\_\_\_\_ that time-\_\_\_\_ put-down child-\_\_\_\_ sleep, cut-up some simple salad-\_\_\_\_, what-\_\_\_\_ was under hand-\_\_\_\_, that or boil egg-\_\_\_\_ hard-boiled, in-short, fussed, but not very.] (III-16)

Третий претендент на руку моей дочери оказался взрослый, тридцатипятилетний мужик, который вообще поначалу не мог определиться, за кем ему ухаживать — за ней или за мной.

[Third aspirant-\_\_\_\_ to hand-\_\_\_\_ my daughter-\_\_\_\_ turned-out adult-\_\_\_\_, thirty-five-year-old fellow-\_\_\_\_, who-\_\_\_\_ in-general at-first not could determine, behind who-\_\_\_\_ him-\_\_\_\_ court — behind her-\_\_\_\_ or behind me-\_\_\_\_.] (III-24)

---

При взгляде на эту комнату с лежащим посредине на полу трупом старой женщины почему-то возникла ассоциация с Достоевским.

[At sight-\_\_\_\_\_ on that room-\_\_\_\_\_ with lying-\_\_\_\_\_ in-middle on floor-\_\_\_\_\_ corpse-\_\_\_\_\_ old woman-\_\_\_\_\_ somehow sprung-up association-\_\_\_\_\_ with Dostoevsky-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-34)

Слон был похож на громадную копну сена.

[Elephant-\_\_\_\_\_ was resembling-\_\_\_\_\_ on enormous stack-\_\_\_\_\_ hay-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-47)

По словам врачей, они делают всё возможное и невозможное, чтобы вывести нашего президента из тяжелейшего состояния, но перенесённые им болезни осложняют задачу.

[Along words-\_\_\_\_\_ doctors-\_\_\_\_\_, they-\_\_\_\_\_ do everything possible-\_\_\_\_\_ and impossible-\_\_\_\_\_, so-that lead-out our president-\_\_\_\_\_ from most-serious condition-\_\_\_\_\_, but endured-\_\_\_\_\_ him-\_\_\_\_\_ diseases-\_\_\_\_\_ complicate task-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-66)

Оттого, что я был влюблён, я как бы прикоснулся к бессмертию и стал немножечко моложе.

[Because, that I-\_\_\_\_\_ was in-love-\_\_\_\_\_, I-\_\_\_\_\_ as if touched to immortality-\_\_\_\_\_ and became somewhat younger.] (III-80)

Я поднял руку и потянул на себя чемодан. Сверху лежали ракеты для бадминтона. Они поехали и упали на пол.

[I-\_\_\_\_\_ raised arm-\_\_\_\_\_ and pulled on self-\_\_\_\_\_ suitcase-\_\_\_\_\_. On-top lay rackets-\_\_\_\_\_ for badminton-\_\_\_\_\_. They-\_\_\_\_\_ slipped-out and fell on floor-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-86)

Некогда процветавший жанр пекинской оперы не выдерживает законов рынка.

[Once having-blossomed genre-\_\_\_\_\_ Peking opera-\_\_\_\_\_ not withstand laws-\_\_\_\_\_ market-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-96)

Я не только не сторонник, но и активный противник различных теорий "мирового заговора."

[I-\_\_\_\_\_ not only not supporter-\_\_\_\_\_, but and active opponent-\_\_\_\_\_ various theories-\_\_\_\_\_ "worldwide conspiracy-\_\_\_\_\_".] (III-114)

Жалость и тёплая вода делают своё дело — из-под душа я выхожу подобрёвшая и освежённая.

[Pity-\_\_\_\_\_ and warm water-\_\_\_\_\_ do own matter-\_\_\_\_\_ — from-under shower-\_\_\_\_\_ I-\_\_\_\_\_ exit made-kinder-\_\_\_\_\_ and refreshed-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-134)

Связанные сзади посиневшие руки при этом задирались вверх; казалось, он молился каким-то необычным способом.

[Bound-\_\_\_\_\_ from-behind turned-blue hands-\_\_\_\_\_ in this-\_\_\_\_\_ broke upwards; seemed, he-\_\_\_\_\_ prays some unusual means-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-163)

### Nominative Exercise 3, Level III

Identify the instances of the NOMINATIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the NOMINATIVE is used.

Постановление о подписании соглашения между правительством Русской Федерации и правительством Республики Кипр о безвизовом режиме въезда и выезда подписано премьер-министром.

[Resolution-\_\_\_\_\_ about signing-\_\_\_\_\_ agreement-\_\_\_\_\_ between government-\_\_\_\_\_ Russian Federation-\_\_\_\_\_ and government-\_\_\_\_\_ Republic-\_\_\_\_\_ Cyprus-\_\_\_\_\_ about visa-less procedure-\_\_\_\_\_ entering-\_\_\_\_\_ and leaving-\_\_\_\_\_ signed-\_\_\_\_\_ prime-minister-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-6)

Собака спархнула от крика и обернула к ней удивлённую морду.

[Dog-\_\_\_\_\_ was-startled from scream-\_\_\_\_\_ and turned to her-\_\_\_\_\_ surprised muzzle-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-17)

Светлана сидела перед Дюком, её плечи были легко присыпаны перхотью, а школьная форма имела такой вид, будто она спала, не раздеваясь, на мельнице на мешках с мукой.

[Svetlana-\_\_\_\_\_ sat before Duke-\_\_\_\_\_, her shoulders-\_\_\_\_\_ were lightly sprinkled-\_\_\_\_\_ dandruff-\_\_\_\_\_, and school uniform-\_\_\_\_\_ had such look-\_\_\_\_\_, as-if she-\_\_\_\_\_ slept, not getting-undressed, at mill-\_\_\_\_\_ on bags-\_\_\_\_\_ with flour-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-19)

Входит мой аспирант, на его лице написано отвращение к жизни: перепил, то ли недоспал.

[Enters my graduate-student-\_\_\_\_\_, on his face-\_\_\_\_\_ written-\_\_\_\_\_ disgust-\_\_\_\_\_ toward life-\_\_\_\_\_, that either over-drank, that either underslept.] (III-25)

Много говорится о том, что журналистика для литератора — занятие пагубное.

[A-lot-\_\_\_\_\_ is-said about that-\_\_\_\_\_, that journalism-\_\_\_\_\_ for writer-\_\_\_\_\_ — profession pernicious-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-39)

Гениальная идея! Принесёт нам три миллиона долларов! Успех на сто процентов гарантируется. Никакого риска. Через три недели мы открываем фабрику.

[Brilliant idea-\_\_\_\_\_! Will-bring us-\_\_\_\_\_ three-\_\_\_\_\_ million-\_\_\_\_\_ dollars-\_\_\_\_\_! Success-\_\_\_\_\_ on hundred-\_\_\_\_\_ percent-\_\_\_\_\_ is-guaranteed. No risk-\_\_\_\_\_. In three-\_\_\_\_\_ weeks-\_\_\_\_\_ we-\_\_\_\_\_ open factory-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-50)

Президент центра хирургии назвал чудом то, что семидесятишестилетний человек, перенёсший сорокоминутную клиническую смерть, живёт уже две недели.

[President-\_\_\_\_\_ center-\_\_\_\_\_ surgery-\_\_\_\_\_ named miracle-\_\_\_\_\_ that-\_\_\_\_\_, that seventy-six-year-old man-\_\_\_\_\_, experienced-\_\_\_\_\_ forty-minute clinical death-\_\_\_\_\_, lives already two-\_\_\_\_\_ weeks-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-67)

Мне казалось, что, помимо любви ко мне, у тебя должно быть чувство долга, но ты считал, что ничего не должен, тогда и я тебе ничего не должна.

[Me-\_\_\_\_\_ seemed, that in-addition love-\_\_\_\_\_ to me-\_\_\_\_\_, by you-\_\_\_\_\_ should-\_\_\_\_\_ be feeling-\_\_\_\_\_ obligation-\_\_\_\_\_, but you-\_\_\_\_\_ thought, that nothing-\_\_\_\_\_ not obliged-\_\_\_\_\_, then and I-\_\_\_\_\_ you-\_\_\_\_\_ nothing-\_\_\_\_\_ not obliged-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-83)

Вместе с главным героем можно посочувствовать современной истории не очень счастливой семейной пары, рассказанной в фильме <<Музыка для декабря>>.

[Together with main hero-\_\_\_\_\_ possible sympathize modern story-\_\_\_\_\_ not very happy family pair-\_\_\_\_\_, told-\_\_\_\_\_ in film-\_\_\_\_\_ "Music-\_\_\_\_\_ for December-\_\_\_\_\_" ] (III-99)

Мошенничество — это либо завладение личным имуществом граждан, либо приобретение права на завладение имуществом путём обмана или злоупотребления доверием.

[Swindling-\_\_\_\_\_ — that-\_\_\_\_\_ either taking-possession-\_\_\_\_\_ personal property-\_\_\_\_\_ citizens-\_\_\_\_\_, or acquisition-\_\_\_\_\_ right-\_\_\_\_\_ on taking-possession-\_\_\_\_\_ property-\_\_\_\_\_ way-\_\_\_\_\_ deceit-\_\_\_\_\_ or abuse-\_\_\_\_\_ trust-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-118)

Есть, по-моему, удачное решение проблемы захоронения тела Ленина, которая сегодня столь болезненно воспринимается различными кругами российского общества.

[There-is, in-my-opinion, successful solution-\_\_\_\_\_ problem-\_\_\_\_\_ preservation-\_\_\_\_\_ body-\_\_\_\_\_ Lenin-\_\_\_\_\_, which-\_\_\_\_\_ today quite sickly is-received various circles-\_\_\_\_\_ Russian society-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-141)

А два дня назад в Ленинградском военном округе был задержан офицер, у которого были обнаружены пистолет с двумя обоймами, один килограмм тротила в шашках по триста граммов, около 50 патронов калибра 7,62 и 5,6, пять сигнальных ракет и более шести тысяч долларов.

[But two-\_\_\_\_\_ day-\_\_\_\_\_ ago in Leningrad military district-\_\_\_\_\_ was detained-\_\_\_\_\_ officer-\_\_\_\_\_, at which-\_\_\_\_\_ were discovered-\_\_\_\_\_ pistol-\_\_\_\_\_ with two clips-\_\_\_\_\_, one kilogram-\_\_\_\_\_ TNT-\_\_\_\_\_ in charges-\_\_\_\_\_ along three-hundred-\_\_\_\_\_ grams-\_\_\_\_\_, around 50 cartridges-\_\_\_\_\_ caliber-\_\_\_\_\_ 7.62 and 5.6, five-\_\_\_\_\_ signal rockets-\_\_\_\_\_ and more six thousands-\_\_\_\_\_ dollars-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-169)

## Instrumental Exercise 1, Level III

Instrumental  
Exercise 1  
Level III

Identify the instances of the INSTRUMENTAL case in the following sentences and explain why the INSTRUMENTAL is used.

Бразилия является крупнейшим в мире производителем и продавцом кофе, выращивая около тридцати процентов всего мирового урожая ароматных бобов.

[Brazil-\_\_\_\_\_ is biggest-\_\_\_\_\_ in world-\_\_\_\_\_ producer-\_\_\_\_\_ and seller-\_\_\_\_\_ coffee-\_\_\_\_\_, growing around thirty percent-\_\_\_\_\_ entire world harvest-\_\_\_\_\_ aromatic beans-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-2)

Постановлением No. 315 глава областной администрации учредил ежемесячные стипендии студентам вузов, окончившим школу с золотой медалью.

[Decree-\_\_\_\_\_ No. 315 head-\_\_\_\_\_ regional administration-\_\_\_\_\_ established monthly stipends-\_\_\_\_\_ students-\_\_\_\_\_ institutions-of-higher-education-\_\_\_\_\_, graduated-\_\_\_\_\_ school-\_\_\_\_\_ with gold medal-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-11)

Светлана сидела перед Дюком, её плечи были легко присыпаны пёрхотью, а школьная форма имела такой вид, будто она спала, не раздеваясь, на мельнице на мешках с мукой.

[Svetlana-\_\_\_\_\_ sat before Duke-\_\_\_\_\_, her shoulders-\_\_\_\_\_ were lightly sprinkled-\_\_\_\_\_ dandruff-\_\_\_\_\_, and school uniform-\_\_\_\_\_ had such look-\_\_\_\_\_, as-if she-\_\_\_\_\_ slept, not getting-undressed, at mill-\_\_\_\_\_ on bags-\_\_\_\_\_ with flour-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-19)

При взгляде на эту комнату с лежащим посредине на полу трупом старой женщины почему-то возникла ассоциация с Достоевским.

[At sight-\_\_\_\_\_ on that room-\_\_\_\_\_ with lying-\_\_\_\_\_ in-middle on floor-\_\_\_\_\_ corpse-\_\_\_\_\_ old woman-\_\_\_\_\_ somehow sprung-up association-\_\_\_\_\_ with Dostoevsky-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-34)

С некоторых пор мой почтовый ящик стали заваливать различного рода макулатурой.

[From some time-\_\_\_\_\_ my mail box-\_\_\_\_\_ started stuff various kind-\_\_\_\_\_ pulp-fiction-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-53)

Представьте, что вы договорились заспать вечером за своей возлюбленной и отправиться с ней в шикарный ресторан, а накануне вас одолели головные боли.

[Imagine, that you-\_\_\_\_\_ agreed go evening-\_\_\_\_\_ for your beloved-\_\_\_\_\_ and go with her-\_\_\_\_\_ to fancy restaurant-\_\_\_\_\_, but night-before you-\_\_\_\_\_ overcame head aches-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-74)



Активизируя диафрагмы, смех углубляет дыхание, обогащает кислородом кровь и вентилирует лёгкие.

[Activating diaphragms-\_\_\_\_, laughter-\_\_\_\_ deepens breathing-\_\_\_\_, enriches oxygen-\_\_\_\_ blood-\_\_\_\_ and ventilates lungs-\_\_\_\_.] (III-94)

Что касается самой Марины Цветаевой, то она была до глубины души тронута заботой и вниманием, проявленными Горьким к её сестре.

[What-\_\_\_\_ touches self-\_\_\_\_ Marina Tsvetaeva-\_\_\_\_, that she-\_\_\_\_ was to depth-\_\_\_\_ soul-\_\_\_\_ touched-\_\_\_\_ concern-\_\_\_\_ and attention-\_\_\_\_, shown-\_\_\_\_ Gorky-\_\_\_\_ to her sister-\_\_\_\_.] (III-109)

Может, возьмёт тебя на работу литсотрудником или хотя бы корректором.

[May, will-take you-\_\_\_\_ to work-\_\_\_\_ literary-assistant-\_\_\_\_ or although would proof-reader-\_\_\_\_.] (III-129)

Фонд Раджива Ганди, основанный ею, помогает детям, женщинам и бедным и стал самой влиятельной неправительственной организацией в Индии.

[Fund-\_\_\_\_ Rajiva Gandhi-\_\_\_\_, founded-\_\_\_\_ her-\_\_\_\_, helps children-\_\_\_\_, women-\_\_\_\_ and poor-\_\_\_\_ and became most influential non-governmental organization-\_\_\_\_ in India-\_\_\_\_.] (III-146)

Боковым зрением она отметила, что на другой дорожке остались стоять очень толстая тётенька, килограммов на сто, и высокий мальчик.

[Side vision-\_\_\_\_ she-\_\_\_\_ noticed, that on other road-\_\_\_\_ stopped stand very fat lady-\_\_\_\_, kilograms-\_\_\_\_ to 100-\_\_\_\_, and tall boy-\_\_\_\_.] (III-171)

Героиню Щербаковой вы легко можете встретить в очереди за дешёвыми туфлями на распродаже, в автобусе в час пик, в магазине (только не в блестящем супермаркете).

[Heroine-\_\_\_\_ Shcherbakova-\_\_\_\_ you-\_\_\_\_ easily may meet in line-\_\_\_\_ behind cheap shoes-\_\_\_\_ on sale-\_\_\_\_, in bus-\_\_\_\_ to time peak-\_\_\_\_, in store-\_\_\_\_ (only not in sparkling supermarket-\_\_\_\_).] (III-185)

### Instrumental Exercise 2, Level III

*Identify the instances of the INSTRUMENTAL case in the following sentences and explain why the INSTRUMENTAL is used.*

Предприятие выпустит шестнадцать тысяч машин, одиннадцать тысяч из которых реализуются за границей.

[Enterprise-\_\_\_\_ will-produce sixteen-\_\_\_\_ thousand-\_\_\_\_ cars-\_\_\_\_, eleven-\_\_\_\_ thousand-\_\_\_\_ from which-\_\_\_\_ will-be-sold beyond border-\_\_\_\_.] (III-3)

Политическая полиция располагает богатейшим архивом, в котором, как утверждают, содержатся досье на полмиллиона французов.

[Political police-\_\_\_\_\_ have-at-disposal most-rich archive-\_\_\_\_\_, in which-\_\_\_\_\_, as claim, are-kept files-\_\_\_\_\_ on half-million-\_\_\_\_\_ French-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-12)

Третий претендент на руку моей дочери оказался взрослый, тридцатипятилетний мужик, который вообще поначалу не мог определиться, за кем ему ухаживать — за ней или за мной.

[Third aspirant-\_\_\_\_\_ to hand-\_\_\_\_\_ my daughter-\_\_\_\_\_ turned-out adult-\_\_\_\_\_, thirty-five-year-old fellow-\_\_\_\_\_, who-\_\_\_\_\_ in-general at-first not could determine, behind who-\_\_\_\_\_ him-\_\_\_\_\_ court — behind her-\_\_\_\_\_ or behind me-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-24)

Убитая же, говорили, была победительницей конкурса красоты.

[Dead-\_\_\_\_\_, said, was winner-\_\_\_\_\_ contest-\_\_\_\_\_ beauty-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-35)

Они втягивают животы, расставляют локти, короче, изнемогают под ремнём физического совершенства.

[They-\_\_\_\_\_ suck-in stomachs-\_\_\_\_\_, hold-out elbows-\_\_\_\_\_, under strap-\_\_\_\_\_ physical perfection-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-42)

Она была тогда гораздо знаменитее Сергея, который глухо пребывал в армии, ничем никого особенно не занимая; пьющие гении, вылетающие из институтов, были тогда в наших кругах скорее нормой, чем событием.

[She-\_\_\_\_\_ was then much more-famous Sergei-\_\_\_\_\_, who-\_\_\_\_\_ quietly spent-time in army-\_\_\_\_\_ nothing-\_\_\_\_\_ no-one-\_\_\_\_\_ particularly not interesting; drinking geniuses-\_\_\_\_\_, flying-out-\_\_\_\_\_ from institutes-\_\_\_\_\_, were then in our circles-\_\_\_\_\_ rather norm-\_\_\_\_\_, what-\_\_\_\_\_ event-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-55)

Мы стоим с ней по разные концы города, как два барана на мостике горбатом, каждый со своей правдой.

[We-\_\_\_\_\_ stand with her-\_\_\_\_\_ along various ends-\_\_\_\_\_ town-\_\_\_\_\_, like two-\_\_\_\_\_ ram-\_\_\_\_\_ on bridge hump-backed-\_\_\_\_\_, each-\_\_\_\_\_ with own truth-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-79)

Двойной стандарт в политике обладает свойством бумеранга.

[Double standard-\_\_\_\_\_ in politics-\_\_\_\_\_ has property-\_\_\_\_\_ boomerang-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-95)

Да, он может быть немножко смешным, малость нелепым, чуть торопливым и даже, суди его Бог, хамоватым.

[Yes, he-\_\_\_\_\_ may be somewhat silly-\_\_\_\_\_, bit absurd-\_\_\_\_\_, trifle hasty-\_\_\_\_\_ and even, judge him-\_\_\_\_\_ God-\_\_\_\_\_ rather-loutish-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-113)

Я переписываю в дневник результаты вчерашнего опыта, укладываю в коробку брошенные вчера образцы, рву и выкидываю черновики с расчётами.

[I-\_\_\_\_\_ rewrite in journal-\_\_\_\_\_ results-\_\_\_\_\_ yesterday's experiment-\_\_\_\_\_, pack-away in box-\_\_\_\_\_ thrown-away-\_\_\_\_\_ yesterday samples-\_\_\_\_\_, shred and toss-out rough-drafts-\_\_\_\_\_ with calculations-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-132)

Он пользуется всеобщим вниманием и признанием по сию пору, когда не осталось в его жизни уже ни одной официальной подпорки, когда почти забыто, что он был председателем правления Союза композиторов, когда не упоминают о его званиях и наградах.

[He-\_\_\_\_\_ enjoys universal attention-\_\_\_\_\_ and recognition-\_\_\_\_\_ along this time-\_\_\_\_\_, when not remained in his life-\_\_\_\_\_ already not one official support-\_\_\_\_\_, when almost forgotten-\_\_\_\_\_, that he-\_\_\_\_\_ was representative-\_\_\_\_\_ board-\_\_\_\_\_ Union-\_\_\_\_\_ composers-\_\_\_\_\_, when not remind about his titles-\_\_\_\_\_ and awards-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-156)

Он ударился грудью о водопроводную трубу, которая проходила по газону.

[He-\_\_\_\_\_ hit chest-\_\_\_\_\_ against water pipe-\_\_\_\_\_, which-\_\_\_\_\_ ran along lawn-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-175)

### Instrumental Exercise 3, Level III

*Identify the instances of the INSTRUMENTAL case in the following sentences and explain why the INSTRUMENTAL is used.*

В России сейчас из-за спада производства сокращается потребление электроэнергии, так что излишки мы с удовольствием продадим на Запад.

[In Russia-\_\_\_\_\_ now from-beyond fall-\_\_\_\_\_ production-\_\_\_\_\_ declines use-\_\_\_\_\_ electricity-\_\_\_\_\_, so that surplus-\_\_\_\_\_ we-\_\_\_\_\_ with pleasure-\_\_\_\_\_ will-sell to West-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-4)

Эстонские роялисты восхищены английской монархией и, в частности, принцем Эдвардом, являющимся, с их точки зрения, превосходным и совершенным во всех отношениях принцем.

[Estonian royalists-\_\_\_\_\_ delighted-\_\_\_\_\_ English monarchy-\_\_\_\_\_ and, in particular-\_\_\_\_\_, prince Edward-\_\_\_\_\_, being-\_\_\_\_\_, from their point-\_\_\_\_\_ view-\_\_\_\_\_, superb-\_\_\_\_\_ and perfect-\_\_\_\_\_ in all relations-\_\_\_\_\_ prince-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-13)

Раньше он приходил к нам с жалобами на соседей, отравляющих из-за стёнки пиццу и обжигających его через потолок невидимыми лучами.

[Earlier he-\_\_\_\_\_ came to us-\_\_\_\_\_ with complaints-\_\_\_\_\_ on neighbors-\_\_\_\_\_, poisoning-\_\_\_\_\_ from-beyond wall-\_\_\_\_\_ food-\_\_\_\_\_ and burning-\_\_\_\_\_ him-\_\_\_\_\_ through ceiling-\_\_\_\_\_ invisible rays-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-26)

Ты можешь быть гением и провидцем. Великим еретиком и героем труда. Это не имеет значения. Материальные плоды человеческих усилий неминуемо становятся объектом рыночной торговли.

[You-\_\_\_\_\_ can be genius-\_\_\_\_\_ and prophet-\_\_\_\_\_. Great heretic-\_\_\_\_\_ and hero-\_\_\_\_\_ labor-\_\_\_\_\_. This-\_\_\_\_\_ not have meaning-\_\_\_\_\_. Material fruits-\_\_\_\_\_ human efforts-\_\_\_\_\_ inevitably become object-\_\_\_\_\_ market trade-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-37)

Во мне шла борьба тёмного со светлым, подозрительности с верой в человечество.

[In me-\_\_\_\_\_ went battle-\_\_\_\_\_ dark-\_\_\_\_\_ with light-\_\_\_\_\_, suspicion-\_\_\_\_\_ with faith-\_\_\_\_\_ in humanity-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-61)

Президент центра хирургии назвал чудом то, что семидесятишестилетний человек, перенёсший сорокоминутную клиническую смерть, живёт уже две недели.

[President-\_\_\_\_\_ center-\_\_\_\_\_ surgery-\_\_\_\_\_ named miracle-\_\_\_\_\_ that-\_\_\_\_\_, that seventy-six-year-old man-\_\_\_\_\_, experienced-\_\_\_\_\_ forty-minute clinical death-\_\_\_\_\_, lives already two-\_\_\_\_\_ weeks-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-67)

Я уверенно подошёл и постучал в дверь костяшками пальцев.

[I-\_\_\_\_\_ confidently went-up and knocked on door-\_\_\_\_\_ knuckles-\_\_\_\_\_ fingers-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-85)

Почувствуете себя брошенным и непонятым.

[Feel self-\_\_\_\_\_ thrown-\_\_\_\_\_ and not-understood-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-97)

Мошенничество — это либо завладение личным имуществом граждан, либо приобретение права на завладение имуществом путём обмена или злоупотребления доверием.

[Swindling-\_\_\_\_\_ — that-\_\_\_\_\_ either taking-possession-\_\_\_\_\_ personal property-\_\_\_\_\_ citizens-\_\_\_\_\_, or acquisition-\_\_\_\_\_ right-\_\_\_\_\_ on taking-possession-\_\_\_\_\_ property-\_\_\_\_\_ way-\_\_\_\_\_ deceit-\_\_\_\_\_ or abuse-\_\_\_\_\_ trust-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-118)

Сейчас он живёт вместе с женой и сыновьями в Монако, однако склоняется к тому, чтобы перебраться в Швецию.

[Now he-\_\_\_\_\_ lives together with wife-\_\_\_\_\_ and sons-\_\_\_\_\_ in Monaco-\_\_\_\_\_, however yielding to that-\_\_\_\_\_, in-order-to move to Sweden-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-137)

Под землёй через несколько сантиметров лёд, вечная мерзлота, сверху снег.

[Under ground-\_\_\_\_\_ through several-\_\_\_\_\_ centimeters-\_\_\_\_\_ ice-\_\_\_\_\_, eternal frost-\_\_\_\_\_, on-top snow-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-161)

Потом каждый раз, где бы они ни были, он её глазом зацепит и держит, как кошка цыплю.

[Then each time-\_\_\_\_, where would they-\_\_\_\_ not were, he-\_\_\_\_ her-\_\_\_\_ eye-\_\_\_\_ hook and holds, like cat-\_\_\_\_ chick-\_\_\_\_.] (III-176)

### Accusative Exercise 1, Level III

*Identify the instances of the ACCUSATIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the ACCUSATIVE is used.*

Он мѣлком взглянул на мать, глаза у него смотрѣли утомлѣнно, как будто он не держал как слѣдует веки.

[He-\_\_\_\_ cursorily glanced on mother-\_\_\_\_, eyes-\_\_\_\_ by him-\_\_\_\_ looked wearily, as if he-\_\_\_\_ not held as should eyelids-\_\_\_\_.] (III-1)

Аня всерьѣз купила билет на праздник Новаго года, не подозревая о том, что на этом празднике должны быть такіе же одиночки, как она сама, те, кого не приняли, отвергли студенческие вечеринки.

[Anya-\_\_\_\_ seriously bought ticket-\_\_\_\_ on party-\_\_\_\_ New Year-\_\_\_\_, not suspecting about that-\_\_\_\_, that at this party-\_\_\_\_ should-\_\_\_\_ be such just lonely-women-\_\_\_\_, like she-\_\_\_\_ herself-\_\_\_\_, those-\_\_\_\_, who-\_\_\_\_ not accepted, spurned student parties-\_\_\_\_.] (III-15)

Врач, не снимая ботинок, даже не вытерев ноги, двинется прямо в комнату.

[Doctor-\_\_\_\_, not removing shoes-\_\_\_\_, even not having-wiped feet-\_\_\_\_, moves straight in room-\_\_\_\_.] (III-32)

Тогда почему же я ощущаю себя на грани физической катастрофы? Откуда у меня чувство безнадежной жизненной непригодности? В чём причина моей тоски?

[Then why I-\_\_\_\_ feel self-\_\_\_\_ on edge-\_\_\_\_ physical catastrophe-\_\_\_\_? From-where by me-\_\_\_\_ feeling-\_\_\_\_ hopeless life uselessness-\_\_\_\_? In what-\_\_\_\_ cause-\_\_\_\_ my melancholy-\_\_\_\_?] (III-48)

Спецслужбы зарубежного государства арестовывают и бросают в тюрьму российских граждан, не совершивших никакого преступления.

[Special-services-\_\_\_\_ foreign government-\_\_\_\_ arrest and throw in jail-\_\_\_\_ Russian citizens-\_\_\_\_ not having-committed-\_\_\_\_ no crime-\_\_\_\_.] (III-64)

Мы стоим с ней по разные концы города, как два барана на мостике горбатом, каждый со своей правдой.

[We-\_\_\_\_ stand with her-\_\_\_\_ along various ends-\_\_\_\_ town-\_\_\_\_, like two-\_\_\_\_ ram-\_\_\_\_ on bridge hump-backed-\_\_\_\_, each-\_\_\_\_ with own truth-\_\_\_\_.] (III-79)

Меня в четырнадцать лет понесло в комсомол, в котором я не нашла никакой революционной романтики.

[Me-\_\_\_\_\_ in fourteen-\_\_\_\_\_ years-\_\_\_\_\_ brought to communist-youth-league-\_\_\_\_\_, in which-\_\_\_\_\_ I-\_\_\_\_\_ not found any revolutionary romance-\_\_\_\_\_] (III-88)

Почувствуете себя брошенным и непонятым.

[Feel self-\_\_\_\_\_ thrown-\_\_\_\_\_ and not-understood-\_\_\_\_\_] (III-97)

Короче говоря, речь идёт о нормальном процессе борьбы мировых сил за влияние и за выживание.

[Shorter speaking, speech-\_\_\_\_\_ goes about normal process-\_\_\_\_\_ struggle-\_\_\_\_\_ world's powers-\_\_\_\_\_ for influence-\_\_\_\_\_ and for survival-\_\_\_\_\_] (III-115)

Костя сбил одеяло, Гулька съехала с подушки, высунула ножку из кровати.

[Kostya-\_\_\_\_\_ dislodged blanket-\_\_\_\_\_, Gulka-\_\_\_\_\_ came-down from pillow-\_\_\_\_\_, stuck-out little-leg-\_\_\_\_\_ from bed-\_\_\_\_\_] (III-135)

Это генетик Ричард Сид, заявивший, что уже через три месяца начнёт клонировать человека.

[This-\_\_\_\_\_ geneticist Richard Seed-\_\_\_\_\_, announced-\_\_\_\_\_, that already through three-\_\_\_\_\_ month-\_\_\_\_\_ begins clone man-\_\_\_\_\_] (III-158)

Этот идиот режиссёр заставил меня следовать задуманному плану.

[This idiot-\_\_\_\_\_ director-\_\_\_\_\_ forced me-\_\_\_\_\_ follow proposed plan-\_\_\_\_\_] (III-170)

### Accusative Exercise 2, Level III

*Identify the instances of the ACCUSATIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the ACCUSATIVE is used.*

### Exercise 2 Level III

Новых случаев распространения холеры на другие территории России не обнаружено.

[New-\_\_\_\_\_ cases-\_\_\_\_\_ spread-\_\_\_\_\_ cholera-\_\_\_\_\_ to other areas-\_\_\_\_\_ Russia-\_\_\_\_\_ not discovered.] (III-5)

Он всегда приносил с собой бутылку вина, выпивал её один, вдовá тем временем укладывала ребёнка спать, нарезала какой-то простой салат, что было под рукой, то ли варила яйцо вкрутую, короче, хлопотала, но не очень.

[He-\_\_\_\_\_ always brought with self-\_\_\_\_\_ bottle-\_\_\_\_\_ wine-\_\_\_\_\_, drank-up it-\_\_\_\_\_ one-\_\_\_\_\_, widow-\_\_\_\_\_ that time-\_\_\_\_\_ put-down child-\_\_\_\_\_ sleep, cut-up some simple salad-\_\_\_\_\_, what-\_\_\_\_\_ was under hand-\_\_\_\_\_, that or boil egg-\_\_\_\_\_ hard-boiled, in-short, fussed, but not very.] (III-16)

Двадцать лет назад она тоже была влюблена в одного артиста до потери пульса, и весь их класс сходил с ума.

[Twenty-\_\_\_\_\_ years-\_\_\_\_\_ ago she-\_\_\_\_\_ also was in-love-\_\_\_\_\_ in one artist-\_\_\_\_\_ to loss-\_\_\_\_\_ pulse-\_\_\_\_\_, and all their class-\_\_\_\_\_ was-going from mind-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-33)

Он носил галстук цвета рухнувшей надежды.

[He-\_\_\_\_\_ wore tie-\_\_\_\_\_ color-\_\_\_\_\_ dashed hope-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-49)

По словам врачей, они делают всё возможное и невозможное, чтобы вывести нашего президента из тяжелейшего состояния, но перенесённые им болезни осложняют задачу.

[Along words-\_\_\_\_\_ doctors-\_\_\_\_\_, they-\_\_\_\_\_ do everything possible-\_\_\_\_\_ and impossible-\_\_\_\_\_, so-that lead-out our president-\_\_\_\_\_ from most-serious condition-\_\_\_\_\_, but endured-\_\_\_\_\_ him-\_\_\_\_\_ diseases-\_\_\_\_\_ complicate task-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-66)

Мы сбежали на набережную и пошли вдоль моря.

[We-\_\_\_\_\_ ran-down on embankment-\_\_\_\_\_ and walked along sea-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-81)

Тут справа из сарая выбежал молодой человек и, перепрыгнув через корыто, на котором среди помёв лежала свинья, с криком побежал к воротам.

[Here on-right from barn-\_\_\_\_\_ ran-out young man-\_\_\_\_\_ and, having jumped over trough-\_\_\_\_\_, on which-\_\_\_\_\_ among slop-\_\_\_\_\_ lay pig-\_\_\_\_\_, with shout-\_\_\_\_\_ ran to gate-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-101)

Когда в тридцатые годы возникла нужда в духоподъёмной, сплачивающей народ геронике, власть использовала для этого именно Север.

[When in thirty years-\_\_\_\_\_ arose need-\_\_\_\_\_ in spiritually-uplifting-\_\_\_\_\_, galvanizing-\_\_\_\_\_ nation-\_\_\_\_\_ heroics-\_\_\_\_\_, regime-\_\_\_\_\_ used for this-\_\_\_\_\_ precisely North-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-116)

Японская компания пейджинговой связи выпускает в продажу недорогие пейджеры, специально предназначенные для передачи кодированных сообщений детям.

[Japanese company-\_\_\_\_\_ paging network-\_\_\_\_\_ puts-out to sale-\_\_\_\_\_ inexpensive pagers-\_\_\_\_\_ especially intended-\_\_\_\_\_ for transmission-\_\_\_\_\_ coded messages-\_\_\_\_\_ children-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-140)

Возмущённым родителям директор обещал вскоре найти учителей, но в середине года признался в своём бессилии и предложил призвать на помощь частную фирму.

[Upset parents-\_\_\_\_\_ director-\_\_\_\_\_ promised soon find teachers-\_\_\_\_\_, but in middle-\_\_\_\_\_ year-\_\_\_\_\_ acknowledged in own powerlessness-\_\_\_\_\_ and proposed summon to help-\_\_\_\_\_ private firm-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-155)

Лет пятнадцать назад, идя по снежной лесной целине на лыжах, можно было наткнуться и на заячьи, и даже на лисьи следы.

[Years-\_\_\_\_\_ fifteen-\_\_\_\_\_ ago, going along snowy forest virgin-soil-\_\_\_\_\_ on skis-\_\_\_\_\_, may was stumble-upon and on rabbit-\_\_\_\_\_, and even on fox tracks-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-159)

Костик, две недели до того пролежавший с радикулитом, в три метровых шага перемарширует через газон, а на асфальте, сцепив зубы от презрения, стоит Людмила.

[Kostik-\_\_\_\_\_, two-\_\_\_\_\_ weeks-\_\_\_\_\_ to that-\_\_\_\_\_ laid-up-\_\_\_\_\_ with radiculitis-\_\_\_\_\_, in three-\_\_\_\_\_ meter steps-\_\_\_\_\_ leaps through lawn-\_\_\_\_\_, and on asphalt-\_\_\_\_\_, having-clinched teeth-\_\_\_\_\_ from disdain-\_\_\_\_\_ stands Ludmila-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-172)

### Accusative Exercise 3, Level III

*Identify the instances of the ACCUSATIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the ACCUSATIVE is used.*

Проект соглашения предусматривает, что граждане обоих государств, имеющие действующие заграндокументы, могут въезжать на территорию другого государства без виз на срок до девяноста дней.

[Draft-\_\_\_\_\_ agreement-\_\_\_\_\_ stipulates, that citizens-\_\_\_\_\_ both states-\_\_\_\_\_, having-\_\_\_\_\_ valid international-documents-\_\_\_\_\_ can enter territory-\_\_\_\_\_ other state-\_\_\_\_\_ without visas-\_\_\_\_\_ for period-\_\_\_\_\_ to ninety days-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-7)

Собака шаркнулась от крика и обернула к ней удивлённую морду.

[Dog-\_\_\_\_\_ was-startled from scream-\_\_\_\_\_ and turned to her-\_\_\_\_\_ surprised muzzle-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-17)

Опытный преступник сначала подготовит себе канал быстрого сбыта, найдёт перекупщиков, которые сумеют сплавить картины и украшения.

[Experienced criminal-\_\_\_\_\_ first prepare self-\_\_\_\_\_ channel-\_\_\_\_\_ quick sale-\_\_\_\_\_, finds second-hand-dealers-\_\_\_\_\_, who-\_\_\_\_\_ know-how get-rid pictures-\_\_\_\_\_ and decorations-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-36)

Гениальная идея! Принесёт нам три миллиона долларов! Успех на сто процентов гарантируется. Никакого риска. Через три недели мы открываем фабрику.

[Brilliant idea-\_\_\_\_\_! Will-bring us-\_\_\_\_\_ three-\_\_\_\_\_ million-\_\_\_\_\_ dollars-\_\_\_\_\_! Success-\_\_\_\_\_ on hundred-\_\_\_\_\_ percent-\_\_\_\_\_ is-guaranteed. No risk-\_\_\_\_\_. In three-\_\_\_\_\_ weeks-\_\_\_\_\_ we-\_\_\_\_\_ open factory-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-50)



Президент центра хирургии назвал чудом то, что семидесятишестилетний человек, перенёсший сорокоминутную клиническую смерть, живёт уже две недели.

[President-\_\_\_\_\_ center-\_\_\_\_\_ surgery-\_\_\_\_\_ named miracle-\_\_\_\_\_ that-\_\_\_\_\_, that seventy-six-year-old man-\_\_\_\_\_, experienced-\_\_\_\_\_ forty-minute clinical death-\_\_\_\_\_, lives already two-\_\_\_\_\_ weeks-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-67)

Очень может статься, что жизнь задумана, как дорога к вершине. Дойду ли я до своей вершины или устану и вернусь, чтобы лечь на диван?

[Very can happen, that life-\_\_\_\_\_ planned-\_\_\_\_\_, like road-\_\_\_\_\_ to summit-\_\_\_\_\_. Reach if I-\_\_\_\_\_ to own summit-\_\_\_\_\_ or get-tired and return, so-that lie-down on couch-\_\_\_\_\_?] (III-82)

Активизируя диафрагмы, смех углубляет дыхание, обогащает кислородом кровь и вентилирует лёгкие.

[Activating diaphragms-\_\_\_\_\_, laughter-\_\_\_\_\_ deepens breathing-\_\_\_\_\_, enriches oxygen-\_\_\_\_\_ blood-\_\_\_\_\_ and ventilates lungs-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-94)

Взяв меня в свою группу и поручив мне, полгода назад, испытание нового материала, директор, конечно, рисковал.

[Having-taken me-\_\_\_\_\_ in own group-\_\_\_\_\_ and entrusted me-\_\_\_\_\_, half-year-\_\_\_\_\_ ago, experiments-\_\_\_\_\_ new material-\_\_\_\_\_, director-\_\_\_\_\_, of-course, risked.] (III-102)

Она нашла место для мужа, пропавшего в те годы в глуши.

[She-\_\_\_\_\_ found place-\_\_\_\_\_ for husband-\_\_\_\_\_, who-had-disappeared-\_\_\_\_\_ in those years-\_\_\_\_\_ in backwoods-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-122)

Формальный повод для закрытия миссии таков: конгресс США ушёл на каникулы, так и не продлив действие закона, разрешающего Соединённым Штатам иметь дипломатические контакты с ООН.

[Formal cause-\_\_\_\_\_ for closing-\_\_\_\_\_ mission-\_\_\_\_\_ such-\_\_\_\_\_: Congress-\_\_\_\_\_ USA-\_\_\_\_\_ left for vacation-\_\_\_\_\_, so even not extended action-\_\_\_\_\_ law-\_\_\_\_\_, allowing-\_\_\_\_\_ United States-\_\_\_\_\_ have diplomatic contacts-\_\_\_\_\_ with UN-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-150)

Под землёй через несколько сантиметров лёд, вечная мерзлота, сверху снег.

[Under ground-\_\_\_\_\_ through several-\_\_\_\_\_ centimeters-\_\_\_\_\_ ice-\_\_\_\_\_, eternal frost-\_\_\_\_\_, on-top snow-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-161)

Он ударился грудью о водопроводную трубу, которая проходила по газону.

[He-\_\_\_\_\_ hit chest-\_\_\_\_\_ against water pipe-\_\_\_\_\_, which-\_\_\_\_\_ ran along lawn-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-175)

## Dative Exercise 1, Level III

Identify the instances of the DATIVE case in the following sentences and explain the DATIVE is used.

Dative  
Exercise 1  
Level III

Постановлением No. 315 главы областной администрации учредил ежемесячные стипендии студентам вузов, окончившим школу с золотой медалью.

[Decree-\_\_\_\_\_ No. 315 head-\_\_\_\_\_ regional administration-\_\_\_\_\_ established monthly stipends-\_\_\_\_\_ students-\_\_\_\_\_ institutions-of-higher-education-\_\_\_\_\_, graduated-\_\_\_\_\_ school-\_\_\_\_\_ with gold medal-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-11)

Раньше он приходил к нам с жалобами на соседей, отравляющих из-за стёнки пещу и обжигających его через потолок невидимыми лучами.

[Earlier he-\_\_\_\_\_ came to us-\_\_\_\_\_ with complaints-\_\_\_\_\_ on neighbors-\_\_\_\_\_, poisoning-\_\_\_\_\_ from-beyond wall-\_\_\_\_\_ food-\_\_\_\_\_ and burning-\_\_\_\_\_ him-\_\_\_\_\_ through ceiling-\_\_\_\_\_ invisible rays-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-26)

Планировал издание съедобных детских книг. Затем вынашивал проект съедобных шахмат. Наконец, пришёл к волнующей идее съедобных дамских трусиков.

[Planned publication-\_\_\_\_\_ edible children's books-\_\_\_\_\_. Then brought-forth design-\_\_\_\_\_ edible chess-set-\_\_\_\_\_. Finally, came to exciting idea-\_\_\_\_\_ edible women's underpants-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-38)

Гениальная идея! Принесёт нам три миллиона долларов! Успех на сто процентов гарантируется. Никакого риска. Через три недели мы открываем фабрику.

[Brilliant idea-\_\_\_\_\_! Will-bring us-\_\_\_\_\_ three-\_\_\_\_\_ million-\_\_\_\_\_ dollars-\_\_\_\_\_! Success-\_\_\_\_\_ on hundred-\_\_\_\_\_ percent-\_\_\_\_\_ is-guaranteed. No risk-\_\_\_\_\_. In three-\_\_\_\_\_ weeks-\_\_\_\_\_ we-\_\_\_\_\_ open factory-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-50)

Этот душевный подвиг Довлатова неповторим, и его не подделать больше никому, как бы кто ни старался.

[That emotional achievement-\_\_\_\_\_ Dovlatov-\_\_\_\_\_ unrepeatable-\_\_\_\_\_, and it-\_\_\_\_\_ not fake more no-one-\_\_\_\_\_, how would who-\_\_\_\_\_ not tried.] (III-56)

Правительство только что объявило о выпуске большого пакета облигаций на общую сумму трёх миллиардов долларов, призванного компенсировать аргентинцам потерю их родственников во время так называемой <<грязной войны>>.

[Government-\_\_\_\_\_ only that announced about issue-\_\_\_\_\_ large packet-\_\_\_\_\_ obligations-\_\_\_\_\_ for total sum-\_\_\_\_\_ three billion dollars-\_\_\_\_\_, designated-\_\_\_\_\_ compensate Argentinians-\_\_\_\_\_ loss-\_\_\_\_\_ their relatives-\_\_\_\_\_ in time-\_\_\_\_\_ so called "dirty war-\_\_\_\_\_".] (III-71)

Мне казалось, что, помимо любви ко мне, у тебя должно быть чувство долга, но ты считал, что ничего не должен, тогда и я тебе ничего не должна.

[Me-\_\_\_\_\_ seemed, that in-addition love-\_\_\_\_\_ to me-\_\_\_\_\_, by you-\_\_\_\_\_ should-\_\_\_\_\_ be feeling-\_\_\_\_\_ obligation-\_\_\_\_\_, but you-\_\_\_\_\_ thought, that nothing-\_\_\_\_\_ not obliged-\_\_\_\_\_, then and I-\_\_\_\_\_ you-\_\_\_\_\_ nothing-\_\_\_\_\_ not obliged-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-83)

Хотя публично Горький против Цветаевой никогда не выступал, можно предположить, что её сестра в какой-то осторожной форме передала ей нелестное мнение писателя о её творчестве.

[Although publicly Gorky-\_\_\_\_\_ against Tsvetaeva-\_\_\_\_\_ never not spoke-out, possible assume, that her sister-\_\_\_\_\_ in some cautious manner-\_\_\_\_\_ passed-on her-\_\_\_\_\_ unflattering opinion-\_\_\_\_\_ writer-\_\_\_\_\_ about her work-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-111)

—Вы преувеличиваете. Литератор должен публиковаться. Разумеется, не в ущерб своему таланту.

[—You-\_\_\_\_\_ exaggerate. A literary-man-\_\_\_\_\_ should-\_\_\_\_\_ publish. derstood, not to detriment-\_\_\_\_\_ own talent-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-126)

Начиная с сентября японкам не придётся кричать из окна, зазывая своих детей на обед.

[Starting from September-\_\_\_\_\_ Japanese-women-\_\_\_\_\_ not come-to yell from window-\_\_\_\_\_, summoning own children-\_\_\_\_\_ to dinner-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-139)

Человек, совершивший самый кровавый террористический акт за всю историю Америки, был наконец приговорён к смертной казни.

[Man-\_\_\_\_\_, committed-\_\_\_\_\_ most bloody terrorist act-\_\_\_\_\_ for all history-\_\_\_\_\_ America-\_\_\_\_\_, was finally sentenced-\_\_\_\_\_ to death penalty-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-148)

По его словам, в понедельник утром из Минфина пришло распоряжение, согласно которому выделяемых денег будет еле-еле хватать на зарплаты сотрудникам.

[Along his words-\_\_\_\_\_, on Monday-\_\_\_\_\_ morning-\_\_\_\_\_ from Minfin-\_\_\_\_\_ came order-\_\_\_\_\_, agreeing which-\_\_\_\_\_ allotted money-\_\_\_\_\_ will barely suffice for wages-\_\_\_\_\_ employees-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-167)

## Dative Exercise 2, Level III

*Identify the instances of the DATIVE case in the following sentences and explain the DATIVE is used.*

Собака шаркнулась от крика и обернула к ней удивлённую морду.

[Dog-\_\_\_\_\_ was-startled from scream-\_\_\_\_\_ and turned to her-\_\_\_\_\_ surprised muzzle-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-17)

Растроганный её явлением, Вадим даже не спросил, откуда ей известен номер его телефона.

[Touched-\_\_\_\_\_ her appearance-\_\_\_\_\_, Vadim-\_\_\_\_\_ even not asked, from-where her-\_\_\_\_\_ known-\_\_\_\_\_ number-\_\_\_\_\_ his telephone-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-27)

Сначала нам показывали каньон, что-то вроде ущелья.

[First us-\_\_\_\_\_ showed canyon-\_\_\_\_\_, something-\_\_\_\_\_ like ravine-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-41)

Но мы, слава Богу, защищены от этого с детства.

[But we-\_\_\_\_\_, glory-\_\_\_\_\_ God-\_\_\_\_\_, protected-\_\_\_\_\_ from that-\_\_\_\_\_ from childhood-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-59)

Он переключает скорость. Я боюсь скоростей, но сейчас мне хочется, чтобы он ехал ещё быстрее, хочется врезаться во что-нибудь, чтобы больше не думать.

[He-\_\_\_\_\_ switches speed-\_\_\_\_\_. I-\_\_\_\_\_ fear speeds-\_\_\_\_\_, but now me-\_\_\_\_\_ wants, so-that he-\_\_\_\_\_ went ever faster, wants run into something-\_\_\_\_\_, so-that more not think.] (III-73)

Весь дом находился под террором нового человека, который хотел переиначить сутки по собственному усмотрению.

[Whole house-\_\_\_\_\_ was under terror-\_\_\_\_\_ new person-\_\_\_\_\_, who-\_\_\_\_\_ wanted alter day-\_\_\_\_\_ along own discretion-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-87)

Следствию нужно было доказать, что она завладела чужим имуществом.

[Investigative-team-\_\_\_\_\_ needed was prove, that she-\_\_\_\_\_ took-possession others' property-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-119)

“Вы на самом деле экономист.... Ну чего ты голову морочишь людям здесь?”

[“You-\_\_\_\_\_ in very matter-\_\_\_\_\_ economist-\_\_\_\_\_. Well what-\_\_\_\_\_ you-\_\_\_\_\_ head-\_\_\_\_\_ fool people-\_\_\_\_\_ here?”] (III-127)

Японская компания пейджинговой связи выпускает в продажу недорогие пейджеры, специально предназначенные для передачи кодированных сообщений детям.

[Japanese company-\_\_\_\_\_ paging network-\_\_\_\_\_ puts-out to sale-\_\_\_\_\_ inexpensive pagers-\_\_\_\_\_ especially intended-\_\_\_\_\_ for transmission-\_\_\_\_\_ coded messages-\_\_\_\_\_ children-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-140)

Возмущённым родителям директор обещал вскоре найти учителей, но в середине года признался в своём бессилии и предложил призвать на помощь частную фирму.

[Upset parents-\_\_\_\_\_ director-\_\_\_\_\_ promised soon find teachers-\_\_\_\_\_, but in middle-\_\_\_\_\_ year-\_\_\_\_\_ acknowledged in own powerlessness-\_\_\_\_\_ and proposed summon to help-\_\_\_\_\_ private firm-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-155)

А я так вот подхожу однажды к мяснику, говорю, мне килограмма три хорошего мяса бы. И подмигнул ему.

[And I-\_\_\_\_\_ there approach once towards butcher-\_\_\_\_\_, say, me-\_\_\_\_\_ kilogram-\_\_\_\_\_ three-\_\_\_\_\_ good meat-\_\_\_\_\_ should. And winked him-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-165)

Соглашение предусматривает создание на базе "Киноцентра" совместного предприятия, в котором каждой из заинтересованных сторон будет принадлежать по пятьдесят процентов акций.

[Agreement-\_\_\_\_\_ envisions creation-\_\_\_\_\_ on base-\_\_\_\_\_ "Cineplex"-\_\_\_\_\_ combined enterprise-\_\_\_\_\_, in which-\_\_\_\_\_ each-\_\_\_\_\_ from interested sides-\_\_\_\_\_ will belong around fifty-\_\_\_\_\_ percent-\_\_\_\_\_ shares-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-168)

### Dative Exercise 3, Level III

*Identify the instances of the DATIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the DATIVE is used.*

Он был не только умный, но и образованный и постоянно обнаруживал свои знания, однако не нравился девочкам, потому что его лицо было покрыто юношескими вулканическими прыщами.

[He-\_\_\_\_\_ was not only smart-\_\_\_\_\_, but and educated-\_\_\_\_\_ and constantly displayed own knowledge-\_\_\_\_\_, however not pleased girls-\_\_\_\_\_, because his face-\_\_\_\_\_ was covered-\_\_\_\_\_ youthful volcanic pimples-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-18)

Сегодня равноправие психически больных, их право на "собственное мнение" сводится к равному для всех праву быть обманутым.

[Today equal-rights-\_\_\_\_\_ mentally ill-\_\_\_\_\_, their right-\_\_\_\_\_ to "own opinion"-\_\_\_\_\_ amounts to equal-\_\_\_\_\_ for everyone-\_\_\_\_\_ right-\_\_\_\_\_ be deceived-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-28)

Сейчас газета мне опротивела, но тогда я был полон энтузиазма.

[Now newspaper-\_\_\_\_\_ me-\_\_\_\_\_ become-repulsive, but then I-\_\_\_\_\_ was full-\_\_\_\_\_ enthusiasm-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-44)

Подойдем к ситуации строго с точки зрения международного права, оставив на время в стороне специфический характер взаимоотношений Москвы с белорусским президентом.

[Approach to situation-\_\_\_\_\_ strictly from point-\_\_\_\_\_ view-\_\_\_\_\_ international law-\_\_\_\_\_, having-left for time-\_\_\_\_\_ in side-\_\_\_\_\_ specific character-\_\_\_\_\_ mutual-relations-\_\_\_\_\_ Moscow-\_\_\_\_\_ with Belorussian president-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-63)

Но когда я поведал невесте о своей проблеме, она достала из своей миниатюрной сумочки какой-то прибор, приложила к моей голове и боль исчезла.

[But when I-\_\_\_\_\_ told fiancée-\_\_\_\_\_ about own problem-\_\_\_\_\_, she-\_\_\_\_\_ took from own miniature purse-\_\_\_\_\_ some-kind gadget-\_\_\_\_\_, placed to my head-\_\_\_\_\_ and pain-\_\_\_\_\_ disappeared.] (III-75)

Воры залезают в квартиры верхних этажей с крыши, по верёвке, привязанной к антенне.

[Thieves-NOM climb in apartments-ACC upper floors-GEN from roof-GEN, along rope-DAT, tied-DAT to antenna-DAT.] (III-178)

Отделом спорта заведовал добродушный, бессловесный человек. Он неизменно пребывал в глубоком самозабвении. По темпераменту был равен мёртвой собаке.

[Department-\_\_\_\_\_ sport-\_\_\_\_\_ managed kind-hearted, silent man-\_\_\_\_\_. He-\_\_\_\_\_ invariably remained in deep selflessness-\_\_\_\_\_. Along temperament-\_\_\_\_\_ was equal-to dead dog-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-121)

Согласен, Солженицын — это гора, было бы смешно попытаться её переделать по нашим меркам. Дело теперь в нас с вами. Нам осмысливать, нам решать, нам выбирать, куда идти дальше.

[Agree-\_\_\_\_\_, Solzhenitsyn-\_\_\_\_\_ — this-\_\_\_\_\_ mountain-\_\_\_\_\_, was would laugh-able attempt it-\_\_\_\_\_ remake along our measures-\_\_\_\_\_. Matter-\_\_\_\_\_ now to us-\_\_\_\_\_ with you-\_\_\_\_\_. Us-\_\_\_\_\_ interpret, us-\_\_\_\_\_ decide, us-\_\_\_\_\_ choose, where go further.] (III-128)

По роду своей работы я каждодневно сталкиваюсь с людьми, пострадавшими от укусов животных.

[Along sort-\_\_\_\_\_ own work-\_\_\_\_\_ I-\_\_\_\_\_ daily bump-into with people-\_\_\_\_\_, having-suffered-\_\_\_\_\_ from bites-\_\_\_\_\_ animals-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-142)

Фонд Раджива Ганди, основанный ею, помогает детям, женщинам и бедны и стал самой влиятельной неправительственной организацией в Индии.

[Fund-\_\_\_\_\_ Rajiva Gandhi-\_\_\_\_\_, founded-\_\_\_\_\_ her-\_\_\_\_\_, helps children-\_\_\_\_\_, women-\_\_\_\_\_ and poor-\_\_\_\_\_ and became most influential non-governmental organization-\_\_\_\_\_ in India-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-146)

Лет пятнадцать назад, идя по снежной лесной целине на лы́ было наткнуться и на заячьи, и даже на лисьи следы.

[Years-\_\_\_\_\_ fifteen-\_\_\_\_\_ ago, going along snowy forested virgin-lands-\_\_\_\_\_ on skis-\_\_\_\_\_, may was stumble-upon and on rabbit-\_\_\_\_\_, and even on fox tracks-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-159)

Этот идиот режиссёр заставил меня следовать задуманному плану.

[This idiot-\_\_\_\_\_ director-\_\_\_\_\_ forced me-\_\_\_\_\_ follow proposed plan-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-170)

Genitive  
Exercise 1  
Level III

## Genitive Exercise 1, Level III

Identify the instances of the GENITIVE case in the following sentences and explain the GENITIVE is used.

Бразилия является крупнейшим в мире производителем и продавцом кофе, выращивая около тридцати процентов всего мирового урожая ароматных бобов.

[Brazil-\_\_\_\_\_ is biggest-\_\_\_\_\_ in world-\_\_\_\_\_ producer-\_\_\_\_\_ and seller-\_\_\_\_\_ coffee-\_\_\_\_\_, growing around thirty percent-\_\_\_\_\_ entire world harvest-\_\_\_\_\_ aromatic beans-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-2)

У неё лицо совершенно маленькой девочки, и это детское личико палёплено на мелкую, как тыковка, головку.

[By her-\_\_\_\_\_ face-\_\_\_\_\_ completely small girl-\_\_\_\_\_, and that child's face-\_\_\_\_\_ stuck-\_\_\_\_\_ on small-\_\_\_\_\_, like little-pumpkin-\_\_\_\_\_, little-head-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-23)

Раньше он приходил к нам с жалобами на соседей, отравляющих из-за стёнки пищу и обжигających его через потолок невидимыми лучами.

[Earlier he-\_\_\_\_\_ came to us-\_\_\_\_\_ with complaints-\_\_\_\_\_ on neighbors-\_\_\_\_\_, poisoning-\_\_\_\_\_ from-beyond wall-\_\_\_\_\_ food-\_\_\_\_\_ and burning-\_\_\_\_\_ him-\_\_\_\_\_ through ceiling-\_\_\_\_\_ invisible rays-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-26)

Он не ученик и не последователь некоего крупного мастера, не приверженец какой-либо знаменитой театральной школы.

[He-\_\_\_\_\_ not disciple-\_\_\_\_\_ and not follower-\_\_\_\_\_ some prominent master-\_\_\_\_\_, not adherent-\_\_\_\_\_ any famous theatrical school-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-29)

Планировал издание съедобных детских книг. Затем вынашивал проект съедобных шахмат. Наконец, пришёл к волнующей идее съедобных дамских трусиков.

[Planned publication-\_\_\_\_\_ edible children's books-\_\_\_\_\_. Then brought-forth design-\_\_\_\_\_ edible chess-set-\_\_\_\_\_. Finally, came to exciting idea-\_\_\_\_\_ edible women's underpants-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-38)

Он носил галстук цвета рухнувшей надежды.

[He-\_\_\_\_\_ wore tie-\_\_\_\_\_ color-\_\_\_\_\_ dashed hope-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-49)

Подойдём к ситуации строго с точки зрения международного права, оставив на время в стороне специфический характер взаимоотношений Москвы с белорусским президентом.

[Approach to situation-\_\_\_\_\_ strictly from point-\_\_\_\_\_ view-\_\_\_\_\_ international law-\_\_\_\_\_, having-left for time-\_\_\_\_\_ in side-\_\_\_\_\_ specific character-\_\_\_\_\_ mutual-relations-\_\_\_\_\_ Moscow-\_\_\_\_\_ with Belorussian president-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-63)

В английском городе Воберн организаторы сбора средств в фонд поддержки кампании по сохранению дикой природы в странах Азии вывели на улицы трёх слонов из местного зоопарка.

[In English city-\_\_\_\_\_ Woburn-\_\_\_\_\_ organizers-\_\_\_\_\_ collection-\_\_\_\_\_ funds-\_\_\_\_\_ in fund-\_\_\_\_\_ support-\_\_\_\_\_ campaign-\_\_\_\_\_ along protection-\_\_\_\_\_ wild nature-\_\_\_\_\_ in countries-\_\_\_\_\_ Asia-\_\_\_\_\_ led-out on streets-\_\_\_\_\_ three elephants-\_\_\_\_\_ from local zoo-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-78)

Решение о принятии этого государства, население которого насчитывает шестнадцать тысяч человек, в ООН Генеральная Ассамблея приняла без голосования, никто не возражал.

[Resolution-\_\_\_\_\_ about acceptance-\_\_\_\_\_ this state-\_\_\_\_\_, population-\_\_\_\_\_ which-\_\_\_\_\_ counts sixteen-\_\_\_\_\_ thousands-\_\_\_\_\_ people-\_\_\_\_\_, in UN-\_\_\_\_\_ General Assembly-\_\_\_\_\_ accepted without voting-\_\_\_\_\_, no-one-\_\_\_\_\_ not objected.] (III-90)

Хотя публично Горький против Цветаевой никогда не выступал, можно предположить, что её сестра в какой-то осторожной форме передала ей нелестное мнение писателя о её творчестве.

[Although publicly Gorky-\_\_\_\_\_ against Tsvetaeva-\_\_\_\_\_ never not spoke-out, possible assume, that her sister-\_\_\_\_\_ in some cautious manner-\_\_\_\_\_ passed-on her-\_\_\_\_\_ unflattering opinion-\_\_\_\_\_ writer-\_\_\_\_\_ about her work-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-111)

Костя сбил одеяло, Гулька съехала с подушки, высунула ножку из кровати.

[Kostya-\_\_\_\_\_ dislodged blanket-\_\_\_\_\_, Gulka-\_\_\_\_\_ came-down from pillow-\_\_\_\_\_, stuck-out little-leg-\_\_\_\_\_ from bed-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-135)

У меня было два-три платья, а однажды не было чулок, чтобы пойти в гости на Новый год, и тогда я шов нарисовала чернилами на голой ноге.

[By me-\_\_\_\_\_ was two-three-\_\_\_\_\_ dresses-\_\_\_\_\_, and once not was hose-\_\_\_\_\_, in-order-to go to guests-\_\_\_\_\_ to New Year-\_\_\_\_\_, and then I-\_\_\_\_\_ seam-\_\_\_\_\_ drew ink-\_\_\_\_\_ on bare leg-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-180)

#### Genitive Exercise 2, Level III

Identify the instances of the GENITIVE case in the text. The GENITIVE is used.

#### Genitive Exercise 2 Level III

Предприятие выпустит шестнадцать тысяч машин, одиннадцать тысяч из которых реализуются за границей.

[Enterprise-\_\_\_\_\_ will-produce sixteen-\_\_\_\_\_ thousand-\_\_\_\_\_ cars-\_\_\_\_\_, eleven-\_\_\_\_\_ thousand-\_\_\_\_\_ from which-\_\_\_\_\_ will-be-sold beyond border-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-3)



Много говорится о том, что журналистика для литератора — занятие пагубное.

[A-lot-\_\_\_\_\_ is-said about that-\_\_\_\_\_, that journalism-\_\_\_\_\_ for writer-profession pernicious-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-39)

Гениальная идея! Принесёт нам три миллиона долларов! Успех на сто процентов гарантируется. Никакого риска. Через три недели мы открываем фабрику.

[Brilliant idea-\_\_\_\_\_! Will-bring us-\_\_\_\_\_ three-\_\_\_\_\_ million-\_\_\_\_\_ dollars-\_\_\_\_\_! Success-\_\_\_\_\_ on hundred-\_\_\_\_\_ percent-\_\_\_\_\_ is-guaranteed. No risk-\_\_\_\_\_. In three-\_\_\_\_\_ weeks-\_\_\_\_\_ we-\_\_\_\_\_ open factory-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-50)

Спецслужбы зарубежного государства арестовывают и бросают в тюрьму российских граждан, не совершивших никакого преступления.

[Special-services-\_\_\_\_\_ foreign government-\_\_\_\_\_ arrest and throw in jail-\_\_\_\_\_ Russian citizens-\_\_\_\_\_ not having-committed-\_\_\_\_\_ no crime-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-64)

И очень любопытно второе соглашение, которое касается такой грубой земной материи, как тамбоя.

[And very interesting-\_\_\_\_\_ second agreement-\_\_\_\_\_, which-\_\_\_\_\_ touches such coarse earthly material-\_\_\_\_\_, like customs-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-91)

Раздражение Горького, которое чувствуется во всём тоне этого письма, несомненно отразилось и на его характеристике творчества Марии Цветаевой.

[Irritation-\_\_\_\_\_ Gorky-\_\_\_\_\_, which-\_\_\_\_\_ is-felt in all tone-\_\_\_\_\_ this letter-\_\_\_\_\_, certainly was-reflected also on his description-\_\_\_\_\_ work-\_\_\_\_\_ Marina Tsvetaeva-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-112)

У фирмы более двухсот совместных предприятий по всему миру, где успешно трудятся десятки тысяч самых высококвалифицированных специалистов разных национальностей.

[By firm-\_\_\_\_\_ more two-hundred joint businesses-\_\_\_\_\_ along all world-\_\_\_\_\_, where successfully work tens-\_\_\_\_\_ thousands-\_\_\_\_\_ most highly-qualified specialists-\_\_\_\_\_ various nationalities-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-136)

Руководители фонда прежде неоднократно утверждали, что они поддерживают некие связи с диссидентскими элементами внутри кубинских вооружённых сил, которые якобы уже созрели для переворота.

[Leaders-\_\_\_\_\_ fund-\_\_\_\_\_ formerly repeatedly insisted, that they-\_\_\_\_\_ support certain connections-\_\_\_\_\_ with dissident elements-\_\_\_\_\_ within Cuban armed forces-\_\_\_\_\_, which-\_\_\_\_\_ supposedly already matured for revolution-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-144)

Фирмы, нарушающие это распоряжение, будут лишаться лицензии на свою деятельность.

[Firms-\_\_\_\_, violating-\_\_\_\_ this order-\_\_\_\_, ill be-deprived license-\_\_\_\_ for own operation-\_\_\_\_.] (III-153)

Он пользуется всеобщим вниманием и признанием по сию пору, когда не осталось в его жизни уже ни одной официальной поддержки, когда почти забыто, что он был председателем правления Союза композиторов, когда не упоминают о его званиях и наградах.

[He-\_\_\_\_ enjoys universal attention-\_\_\_\_ and acknowledgment-\_\_\_\_ along this time-\_\_\_\_, when not remained in his life-\_\_\_\_ already not one official support-\_\_\_\_, when almost forgotten-\_\_\_\_, that he-\_\_\_\_ was representative-\_\_\_\_ board-\_\_\_\_ Union-\_\_\_\_ composers-\_\_\_\_, when not remembers about his titles-\_\_\_\_ and awards-\_\_\_\_.] (III-156)

Костик, две недели до того пролежавший с радикулитом, в три метровых шага перемахивает через газон, а на асфальте, сцепив зубы от презрения, стоит Людмила.

[Kostik-\_\_\_\_, two-\_\_\_\_ weeks-\_\_\_\_ to that-\_\_\_\_ laid-up-\_\_\_\_ with radiculitis-\_\_\_\_, in three-\_\_\_\_ meter steps-\_\_\_\_ leaps through lawn-\_\_\_\_, and on asphalt-\_\_\_\_, having-clinched teeth-\_\_\_\_ from disdain-\_\_\_\_ stands Ludmila-\_\_\_\_.] (III-172)

Теперь я понимаю, что в гражданской войне не бывает правы а есть люди, по-разному видящие будущее своей страны.

[Now I-\_\_\_\_ understand, that in civil war-\_\_\_\_ not are right-\_\_\_\_ and guilty-\_\_\_\_, but there-is people-\_\_\_\_, differently seeing-\_\_\_\_ future-\_\_\_\_ own country-\_\_\_\_.] (III-181)

### Genitive Exercise 3, Level III

Identify the instances of the GENITIVE case in the following sentences and explain the GENITIVE is used.

Genitive  
Exercise 3  
Level III

В России сейчас из-за спада производства сокращается потребление электроэнергии, так что излишки мы с удовольствием продадим на Запад.

[In Russia-\_\_\_\_ now from-beyond fall-\_\_\_\_ production-\_\_\_\_ declines use-\_\_\_\_ electricity-\_\_\_\_, so that surplus-\_\_\_\_ we-\_\_\_\_ with pleasure-\_\_\_\_ will-sell to West-\_\_\_\_.] (III-4)

Да ведь это же и есть тема нашего симпозиума.

[Yes after-all that-\_\_\_\_ and is theme-\_\_\_\_ our symposium-\_\_\_\_.] (III-40)

Я — ваш подписчик с самого дня рождения: “Литгазэту” выписывали ещё мой родители. Мне очень импонирует ваша рубрика “Что сейчас подёльвает...”

[I-\_\_\_\_\_ — your subscriber-\_\_\_\_\_ from very day-\_\_\_\_\_ birth-\_\_\_\_\_: “Litgazeta-\_\_\_\_\_” subscribed still my parents-\_\_\_\_\_. Me-\_\_\_\_\_ very impresses your column-\_\_\_\_\_ “What-\_\_\_\_\_ now does...”] (III-52)

Правительство только что объявило о выпуске большого пакета облигаций на общую сумму трёх миллиардов долларов, призванного компенсировать аргентинцам потерю их родственников во время так называемой <<грязной войны>>.

[Government-\_\_\_\_\_ only that announced about issu-\_\_\_\_\_ large packet-\_\_\_\_\_ obligations-\_\_\_\_\_ for total sum-\_\_\_\_\_ three billion dollars-\_\_\_\_\_, designated-\_\_\_\_\_ compensate Argentinians-\_\_\_\_\_ loss-\_\_\_\_\_ their relatives-\_\_\_\_\_ in time-\_\_\_\_\_ so called “dirty war-\_\_\_\_\_”.] (III-71)

Некогда процветавший жанр пекинской оперы не выдерживает законов рынка.

[Once having-blossomed genre-\_\_\_\_\_ Peking opera-\_\_\_\_\_ not ithstand laws-\_\_\_\_\_ market-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-96)

Стоял в паскудной очереди, толкался, ждал чего-то. И вдруг пью вино с очаровательной женщиной.

[Stood in filthy line-\_\_\_\_\_, pushed, waited something-\_\_\_\_\_. And immedi drink wine-\_\_\_\_\_ with charming woman-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-107)

Я не только не сторонник, но и активный противник различных теорий “мирового заговора.”

[I-\_\_\_\_\_ not only not supporter-\_\_\_\_\_, but and active opponent-\_\_\_\_\_ various theories-\_\_\_\_\_ “worldwide conspiracy-\_\_\_\_\_”.] (III-114)

Начиная с сентября японкам не придётся кричать из окна, зазывая своих детей на обед.

[Starting from September-\_\_\_\_\_ Japanese-women-\_\_\_\_\_ not come-to yell from window-\_\_\_\_\_, summoning own children-\_\_\_\_\_ to dinner-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-139)

Главное же в том, что игра сборной России на этот раз по-настоящему понравилась зрителям и специалистам, она вызвала неподдельное уважение соперников.

[Main very in that-\_\_\_\_\_, that game-\_\_\_\_\_ combined Russia-\_\_\_\_\_ on this occasion-\_\_\_\_\_ along-real-\_\_\_\_\_ liked viewers-\_\_\_\_\_ and specialists-\_\_\_\_\_, it-\_\_\_\_\_ call-forth genuine respect-\_\_\_\_\_ rivals-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-157)

Боковым зрением она заметила, что на другой дорожке остались стоять очень толстая тётянка, килограммов на сто, и высокий мальчик.

[Side vision-\_\_\_\_\_ she-\_\_\_\_\_ noticed, that on other road-\_\_\_\_\_ stopped stand very fat lady-\_\_\_\_\_, kilograms-\_\_\_\_\_ to 100-\_\_\_\_\_, and tall boy-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-171)

Она смущённо разделась, стыдясь своего белого, рыхлого тела...

[She-\_\_\_\_\_ embarrassed got-undressed, being-ashamed own white, pudgy body-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-174)

С помощью местных старушек, высыпающих после службы отыскали под снегом его могилу.

[With help-\_\_\_\_\_ local old-ladies-\_\_\_\_\_, who-had-poured-\_\_\_\_\_ after service-\_\_\_\_\_ from church-\_\_\_\_\_ found under snow-\_\_\_\_\_ his grave-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-182)

### Locative Exercise 1, Level III

*Identify the instances of the LOCATIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the LOCATIVE is used.*

Locative  
Exercise 1  
Level III

В создавшихся условиях режим стремится различными путями внести раскол в оппозиционные ряды.

[In created conditions-\_\_\_\_\_ regime-\_\_\_\_\_ tries different ways-\_\_\_\_\_ introduce division-\_\_\_\_\_ in opposition ranks-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-8)

У меня сложилось впечатление, что о токийской декларации 1993 года, где было дано обещание решить территориальную проблему, в России как-то не вспоминают.

[By me-\_\_\_\_\_ formed impression-\_\_\_\_\_, that about Tokyo declaration-\_\_\_\_\_ 1993 year-\_\_\_\_\_, where was given-\_\_\_\_\_ promise-\_\_\_\_\_ solve territorial problem-\_\_\_\_\_, in Russia-\_\_\_\_\_ somehow not remember.] (III-20)

В кулуарах писателя окружила толпа единомышленников и почитателей.

[In entrance-hall-\_\_\_\_\_ writer-\_\_\_\_\_ swarmed crowd-\_\_\_\_\_ like-minded-people-\_\_\_\_\_ and admirers-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-45)

На её месте я поставила бы на столик бутылку, положила булочку и со всех ног бросилась на "Мосфильм" сниматься в главной роли.

[On her place-\_\_\_\_\_ I-\_\_\_\_\_ stood would on table-\_\_\_\_\_ bottle-\_\_\_\_\_, laid roll-\_\_\_\_\_ and from all legs-\_\_\_\_\_ throw-self at "Mosfilm-\_\_\_\_\_" be-filmed in starring role-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-60)

В английском городе Вобери организаторы сбора средств в фонд поддержки кампании по сохранению дикой природы в странах Азии вывели на улицы трёх слонов из местного зоопарка.

[In English city-\_\_\_\_\_ Woburn-\_\_\_\_\_ organizers-\_\_\_\_\_ collection-\_\_\_\_\_ funds-\_\_\_\_\_ in fund-\_\_\_\_\_ support-\_\_\_\_\_ campaign-\_\_\_\_\_ along protection-\_\_\_\_\_ wild nature-\_\_\_\_\_ in countries-\_\_\_\_\_ Asia-\_\_\_\_\_ led-out on streets-\_\_\_\_\_ three elephants-\_\_\_\_\_ from local zoo-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-78)

Девочка смотрела в окно, и в её светлых глазах отражались деревья, дома, небо. Глаза были пёстрые и разные, в зависимости от того, что было за окном.

[Girl-\_\_\_\_\_ looked in window-\_\_\_\_\_, and in her bright eyes-\_\_\_\_\_ reflected trees-\_\_\_\_\_, houses-\_\_\_\_\_, sky-\_\_\_\_\_. Eyes-\_\_\_\_\_ were mottled-\_\_\_\_\_ and varied-\_\_\_\_\_, in dependence-\_\_\_\_\_ from that-\_\_\_\_\_, what-\_\_\_\_\_ was beyond window-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-105)

Когда в тридцатые годы возникла нужда в духоподъёмной, слёзчивающей народ гербике, власть использовала для этого именно Север.

[When in thirty years-\_\_\_\_\_ arose need-\_\_\_\_\_ in spiritually-uplifting-\_\_\_\_\_, galvanizing-\_\_\_\_\_ nation-\_\_\_\_\_ heroics-\_\_\_\_\_, regime-\_\_\_\_\_ used for this-\_\_\_\_\_ precisely North-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-116)

Спортсмены, годами живущие в экстремальном режиме, вольны выбирать себе страну для жительства, гарантирующую им те условия, в которых им хочется жить.

[Athletes-\_\_\_\_\_, years-\_\_\_\_\_ living-\_\_\_\_\_ in extreme regime-\_\_\_\_\_, free-\_\_\_\_\_ choose self-\_\_\_\_\_ country-\_\_\_\_\_ for residency-\_\_\_\_\_, guaranteeing-\_\_\_\_\_ them-\_\_\_\_\_ these conditions-\_\_\_\_\_, in which-\_\_\_\_\_ they-\_\_\_\_\_ want live.] (III-143)

Он пользуется всеобщим вниманием и признанием по сию пору, когда не осталось в его жизни уже ни одной официальной поддержки, когда почти забыто, что он был председателем правления Союза композиторов, когда не упоминают о его званиях и наградах.

[He-\_\_\_\_\_ enjoys universal attention-\_\_\_\_\_ and acknowledgment-\_\_\_\_\_ along this time-\_\_\_\_\_, when not remained in his life-\_\_\_\_\_ already not one official support-\_\_\_\_\_, when almost forgotten-\_\_\_\_\_, that he-\_\_\_\_\_ was representative-\_\_\_\_\_ board-\_\_\_\_\_ Union-\_\_\_\_\_ composers-\_\_\_\_\_, when not remembers about his titles-\_\_\_\_\_ and awards-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-156)

Связанные сзади посиневшие руки при этом задирались вверх; казалось, он молится каким-то необычным способом.

[Bound-\_\_\_\_\_ from-behind turned-blue hands-\_\_\_\_\_ in this-\_\_\_\_\_ broke upwards; seemed, he-\_\_\_\_\_ prays some unusual means-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-163)

В телефонном разговоре в четверг они были едины в том, что государствам Содружества Независимых Государств надо решить ряд вопросов, связанных с укреплением южных рубежей Содружества.

[In telephone conversation-\_\_\_\_\_ on Thursday-\_\_\_\_\_ they-\_\_\_\_\_ were one-\_\_\_\_\_ in that-\_\_\_\_\_, that states-\_\_\_\_\_ Commonwealth-\_\_\_\_\_ Independent States-\_\_\_\_\_ necessary decide row-\_\_\_\_\_ questions-\_\_\_\_\_, connected-\_\_\_\_\_ with strengthening-\_\_\_\_\_ southern borders-\_\_\_\_\_ Commonwealth-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-166)

Героиню Щербаковой вы легко можете встретить в очереди за дешёвыми туфлями на распродаже, в автобусе в час пик, в магазине (только не в блестящем супермаркете).

[Heroine-\_\_\_\_\_ Shcherbakova-\_\_\_\_\_ you-\_\_\_\_\_ easily may meet in line-\_\_\_\_\_ behind cheap shoes-\_\_\_\_\_ on sale-\_\_\_\_\_, in bus-\_\_\_\_\_ to time peak-\_\_\_\_\_, in store-\_\_\_\_\_ (only not in sparkling supermarket-\_\_\_\_\_.)] (III-185)

### Locative Exercise 2, Level III

*Identify the instances of the LOCATIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the LOCATIVE is used.*

### Exercise 2 Level III

Психическими недугами во всём их спектре сильно пьющие поражены в два раза чаще, чем популяция в целом.

[Psychiatric illnesses-\_\_\_\_\_ in all their spectrum-\_\_\_\_\_ strongly drinking-\_\_\_\_\_ afflicted-\_\_\_\_\_ in two times-\_\_\_\_\_ more-frequently, than population-\_\_\_\_\_ in whole-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-10)

На недавней конференции Организации азиатско-тихоокеанского экономического сотрудничества, участники которой производят половину мирового валового продукта, Россия не участвовала.

[At recent conference-\_\_\_\_\_ Organization-\_\_\_\_\_ Asian-pacific economic collaboration-\_\_\_\_\_, participants-\_\_\_\_\_ which-\_\_\_\_\_ produce half-\_\_\_\_\_ world gross product-\_\_\_\_\_, Russia-\_\_\_\_\_ not participate.] (III-21)

Тогда почему же я ощущаю себя на грани физической катастрофы? Откуда у меня чувство безнадёжной жизненной непригодности? В чём причина моей тоски?

[Then why I-\_\_\_\_\_ feel self-\_\_\_\_\_ on edge-\_\_\_\_\_ physical catastrophe-\_\_\_\_\_? From-where by me-\_\_\_\_\_ feeling-\_\_\_\_\_ hopeless life uselessness-\_\_\_\_\_? In what-\_\_\_\_\_ cause-\_\_\_\_\_ my melancholy-\_\_\_\_\_?] (III-48)

Во мне шла борьба тёмного со светлым человечеством.

[In me-\_\_\_\_\_ went battle-\_\_\_\_\_ dark-\_\_\_\_\_ with light-\_\_\_\_\_, suspicion-\_\_\_\_\_ with faith-\_\_\_\_\_ in humanity-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-61)

Правительство только что объявило о выпуске большого пакета облигаций на общую сумму трёх миллиардов долларов, призванного компенсировать аргентинцам потерю их родственников во время так называемой <<грязной войны>>.

[Government-\_\_\_\_\_ only that announced about issue-\_\_\_\_\_ large packet-\_\_\_\_\_ obligations-\_\_\_\_\_ for total sum-\_\_\_\_\_ three billion dollars-\_\_\_\_\_, designated-\_\_\_\_\_ compensate Argentinians-\_\_\_\_\_ loss-\_\_\_\_\_ their relatives-\_\_\_\_\_ in time-\_\_\_\_\_ so called "dirty war-\_\_\_\_\_".] (III-71)

Дело не в том, разбился ты или нет, просто я изнасила наши отношения. Как туфли. Подбшва отлетела.

[Affair-\_\_\_\_\_ not in that-\_\_\_\_\_, got-hurt you-\_\_\_\_\_ or not, simply I-\_\_\_\_\_ wore-out our relationship-\_\_\_\_\_. Like shoes-\_\_\_\_\_. Sole-\_\_\_\_\_ came-off.] (III-84)

И тут на её горизонте возник знаменитый эстрадный певец. Сейчас его имя забыто, но в шестидесятые годы он был популярнее Синатры.

[And here on her horizon-\_\_\_\_\_ appeared famous stage singer-\_\_\_\_\_. Now his name-\_\_\_\_\_ forgotten-\_\_\_\_\_, but in sixty years-\_\_\_\_\_ he-\_\_\_\_\_ was more-popular Sinatra-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-106)

Умер он во Владимире, хоронили мы его на моей родине в Рославле, где похоронена моя родня.

[Died he-\_\_\_\_\_ in Vladimir-\_\_\_\_\_, buried we-\_\_\_\_\_ him-\_\_\_\_\_ on my native-soil-\_\_\_\_\_ in Roslavl-\_\_\_\_\_, where buried-\_\_\_\_\_ my kin-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-120)

А если жена сжигает себя на погребальном костре мужа, она удостоивается почти религиозного поклонения.

[But if wife-\_\_\_\_\_ burns self-\_\_\_\_\_ on funeral pyre-\_\_\_\_\_ husband-\_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ receives almost religious worship-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-145)

Главное же в том, что игра сборной России на этот раз по-настоящему понравилась зрителям и специалистам, она вызвала неподдельное уважение соперников.

[Main very in that-\_\_\_\_\_, that game-\_\_\_\_\_ combined Russia-\_\_\_\_\_ on this occasion-\_\_\_\_\_ along-real-\_\_\_\_\_ liked viewers-\_\_\_\_\_ and specialists-\_\_\_\_\_, it-\_\_\_\_\_ call-forth genuine respect-\_\_\_\_\_ rivals-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-157)

Соглашение предусматривает создание на базе "Киноцентра" совместного предприятия, в котором каждой из заинтересованных сторон будет принадлежать по пятьдесят процентов акций.

[Agreement-\_\_\_\_\_ envisions creation-\_\_\_\_\_ on base-\_\_\_\_\_ "Cineplex"-\_\_\_\_\_ combined enterprise-\_\_\_\_\_, in which-\_\_\_\_\_ each-\_\_\_\_\_ from interested sides-\_\_\_\_\_ will belong around fifty-\_\_\_\_\_ percent-\_\_\_\_\_ shares-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-168)

Потом количество женщин, любящих Митю, стало увеличиваться в геометрической прогрессии.

[Then collection-\_\_\_\_\_ women-\_\_\_\_\_, loving-\_\_\_\_\_ Mitya-\_\_\_\_\_, began expand in geometric progression-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-186)

### Locative Exercise 3, Level III

*Identify the instances of the LOCATIVE case in the following sentences and explain why the LOCATIVE is used.*

Политическая полиция располагает богатейшим архивом, в котором, как утверждают, содержатся досье на полмиллиона французов.

[Political police-\_\_\_\_\_ have-at-disposal most-rich archive-\_\_\_\_\_, in which-\_\_\_\_\_, as claim, are-kept files-\_\_\_\_\_ on half-million-\_\_\_\_\_ French-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-12)

Городу это было лестно, а биологам — полезно собраться всем вместе и доложить о своих делах, а заодно посмотреть Францию.

[City-\_\_\_\_\_ this-\_\_\_\_\_ was flattering, but biologists-\_\_\_\_\_ — useful gather all-\_\_\_\_\_ together and report about own affairs-\_\_\_\_\_, but at-same-time see France-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-22)

В его движениях — изящество юного князя.

[In his movements-\_\_\_\_\_ — elegance-\_\_\_\_\_ young prince-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-51)

Министра внутренних дел отпразднили в отставку ещё в июне за содействие криминальной экономике.

[Minister-\_\_\_\_\_ internal affairs-\_\_\_\_\_ sent in dismissal-\_\_\_\_\_ already in June-\_\_\_\_\_ for collaboration-\_\_\_\_\_ criminal economy-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-70)

В стране находятся десятки тысяч беженцев из Либерии, испытывающих крайнюю нужду в продовольствии и предметах первой необходимости.

[In country-\_\_\_\_\_ are tens-\_\_\_\_\_ thousands-\_\_\_\_\_ refugees-\_\_\_\_\_ from Liberia-\_\_\_\_\_, experiencing-\_\_\_\_\_ extreme need-\_\_\_\_\_ in food-\_\_\_\_\_ and items-\_\_\_\_\_ first aid-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-77)

Меня в четырнадцать лет понесло в комсомол, в котором я не нашла никакой революционной романтики.

[Me-\_\_\_\_\_ in fourteen-\_\_\_\_\_ years-\_\_\_\_\_ brought to communist-youth-league-\_\_\_\_\_, in which-\_\_\_\_\_ I-\_\_\_\_\_ not found any revolutionary romance-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-88)

### Locative Exercise 3 Level III



Анастасія приехала в Сорренто ещё в начале августа, но Марина, не получая от неё известий, двадцать четвёртого августа обратилась с запросом к Горькому.

[Anastasia-\_\_\_\_\_ arrived in Sorrento-\_\_\_\_\_ already in beginning-\_\_\_\_\_ August-\_\_\_\_\_, but Marina-\_\_\_\_\_, not receiving from her-\_\_\_\_\_ news-\_\_\_\_\_, twenty fourth-\_\_\_\_\_ August-\_\_\_\_\_ turned with inquiry-\_\_\_\_\_ to Gorky-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-110)

Религиозные семинары проходили в церковной библиотеке. Там собирались православные, иудайсты, мусульмане, католики. Каждой из групп было выделено отдельное помещение.

[Religious seminars-\_\_\_\_\_ went-through in church library-\_\_\_\_\_. There gathered Orthodox-\_\_\_\_\_, Jews-\_\_\_\_\_, Muslims-\_\_\_\_\_, Catholics-\_\_\_\_\_. Each-\_\_\_\_\_ from groups-\_\_\_\_\_ were assigned separate accomodation-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-123)

В опубликованном у вас интервью с министром сельского хозяйства и продовольствия сказано, что Россия наконец-то будет не покупать зерно, а, наоборот, может быть, продавать.

[In published-\_\_\_\_\_ at you-\_\_\_\_\_ interview-\_\_\_\_\_ with minister-\_\_\_\_\_ village economy-\_\_\_\_\_ and foods-\_\_\_\_\_ said-\_\_\_\_\_, that Russia-\_\_\_\_\_ finally will not buy grain-\_\_\_\_\_, but, opposite, may be, sell.] (III-147)

Возмущённым родителям директор обещал вскоре найти учителей, но в середине года признался в своём бессилии и предложил призвать на помощь частную фирму.

[Upset parents-\_\_\_\_\_ director-\_\_\_\_\_ promised soon find teachers-\_\_\_\_\_, but in middle-\_\_\_\_\_ year-\_\_\_\_\_ acknowledged in own powerlessness-\_\_\_\_\_ and proposed summon to help-\_\_\_\_\_ private firm-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-155)

Лет пятнадцать назад, идя по снежной лесной целине на лыжах, можно было наткнуться и на заячьи, и даже на лисьи следы.

[Years-\_\_\_\_\_ fifteen-\_\_\_\_\_ ago, going along snowy forested virgin-lands-\_\_\_\_\_ on skis-\_\_\_\_\_, may was stumble-upon and on rabbit-\_\_\_\_\_, and even on fox tracks-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-159)

А два дня назад в Ленинградском военном округе был задержан офицер, у которого были обнаружены пистолет с двумя обоймами, один килограмм тротила в шашках по триста граммов, около 50 патронов калибра 7,62 и 5,6, пять сигнальных ракет и более шести тысяч долларов.

[But two-\_\_\_\_\_ day-\_\_\_\_\_ ago in Leningrad military district-\_\_\_\_\_ was detained-\_\_\_\_\_ officer-\_\_\_\_\_, at which-\_\_\_\_\_ were discovered-\_\_\_\_\_ pistol-\_\_\_\_\_ with two clips-\_\_\_\_\_, one kilogram-\_\_\_\_\_ TNT-\_\_\_\_\_ in charges-\_\_\_\_\_ along three-hundred-\_\_\_\_\_ grams-\_\_\_\_\_, around 50 cartridges-\_\_\_\_\_ caliber-\_\_\_\_\_ 7.62 and 5.6, five-\_\_\_\_\_ signal rockets-\_\_\_\_\_ and more six thousands-\_\_\_\_\_ dollars-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-169)

## Mixed Case Exercise 1, Level III

Mixed Case  
Exercise 1  
Level III

Identify the case uses in the sentences below and explain why those cases are used and how they interact with each other. Provide your own English translation of the sentence and compare it to the translation in the key.

Бразилия является крупнейшим в мире производителем и продавцом кофе, выращивая около тридцати процентов всего мирового урожая ароматных бобов.

[Brazil-\_\_\_\_\_ is biggest-\_\_\_\_\_ in world-\_\_\_\_\_ producer-\_\_\_\_\_ and seller-\_\_\_\_\_ coffee-\_\_\_\_\_, growing around thirty percent-\_\_\_\_\_ entire world harvest-\_\_\_\_\_ aromatic beans-\_\_\_\_\_] (III-2)

Он не ученик и не последователь некоего крупного мастера, не приверженец какой-либо знаменитой театральной школы.

[He-\_\_\_\_\_ not disciple-\_\_\_\_\_ and not follower-\_\_\_\_\_ some prominent master-\_\_\_\_\_, not adherent-\_\_\_\_\_ any famous theatrical school-\_\_\_\_\_] (III-29)

Я — ваш подписчик с самого дня рождения. “Литгазеты” выписывали ещё мой родители. Мне очень импонирует ваша рубрика “Что сейчас подделывает...”

[I-\_\_\_\_\_ — your subscriber-\_\_\_\_\_ from very day-\_\_\_\_\_ birth-\_\_\_\_\_: “Litgazeta-\_\_\_\_\_” subscribed still my parents-\_\_\_\_\_. Me-\_\_\_\_\_ very impresses your column-\_\_\_\_\_ “What-\_\_\_\_\_ now does...”] (III-52)

Вдруг из чёрно-белых пятен различаю среди заснеженных деревьев спину мальчика.

[Suddenly from black-white spots-\_\_\_\_\_ make-out among snow-covered trees-\_\_\_\_\_ back-\_\_\_\_\_ boy-\_\_\_\_\_] (III-72)

Значительное время работы конференции было посвящено презренной простуде.

[Considerable time-\_\_\_\_\_ work-\_\_\_\_\_ conference-\_\_\_\_\_ was dedicated-\_\_\_\_\_ contemptible cold-\_\_\_\_\_] (III-93)

Хотя публично Горький против Цветаевой никогда не выступал, можно предположить, что её сестра в какой-то осторожной форме передала ей нелестное мнение писателя о её творчестве.

[Although publicly Gorky-\_\_\_\_\_ against Tsvetaeva-\_\_\_\_\_ never not spoke-out, possible assume, that her sister-\_\_\_\_\_ in some cautious manner-\_\_\_\_\_ passed-on her-\_\_\_\_\_ unflattering opinion-\_\_\_\_\_ writer-\_\_\_\_\_ about her work-\_\_\_\_\_] (III-111)

Читая гениальные стихи, не думай, какие обороты больше или меньше удались автору.

[Reading brilliant poetry-\_\_\_\_\_, not think, which phrases-\_\_\_\_\_ more or less succeeded author-\_\_\_\_\_] (III-125)

Он пользуется всеобщим вниманием и признанием по сей пору, когда не осталось в его жизни уже ни одной официальной поддержки, когда почти забыто, что он был председателем правления Союза композиторов, когда не упоминают о его званиях и наградах.

[He-\_\_\_\_\_ enjoys universal attention-\_\_\_\_\_ and acknowledgment-\_\_\_\_\_ along this time-\_\_\_\_\_, when not remained in his life-\_\_\_\_\_ already not one official support-\_\_\_\_\_, when almost forgotten-\_\_\_\_\_, that he-\_\_\_\_\_ was representative-\_\_\_\_\_ board-\_\_\_\_\_ Union-\_\_\_\_\_ composers-\_\_\_\_\_, when not remind about his titles-\_\_\_\_\_ and awards-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-156)

А два дня назад в Ленинградском военном округе был задержан офицер, у которого были обнаружены пистолет с двумя обоймами, один килограмм тротила в шашках по триста граммов, около 50 патронов калибра 7,62 и 5,6, пять сигнальных ракет и более шести тысяч долларов.

[But two-\_\_\_\_\_ day-\_\_\_\_\_ ago in Leningrad military district-\_\_\_\_\_ was detained-\_\_\_\_\_ officer-\_\_\_\_\_, at which-\_\_\_\_\_ were discovered pistol-\_\_\_\_\_ with two clips-\_\_\_\_\_, one kilogram-\_\_\_\_\_ TNT-\_\_\_\_\_ in charges-\_\_\_\_\_ along three-hundred-\_\_\_\_\_ grams-\_\_\_\_\_, around 50 cartridges-\_\_\_\_\_ caliber-\_\_\_\_\_ 7.62 and 5.6, five-\_\_\_\_\_ signal rockets-\_\_\_\_\_ and more six thousand-\_\_\_\_\_ dollars-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-169)

Евреи и армяне, перенёсшие страшные гонения и геноцид, хоть на йоту утратили своё национальное своеобразие?

[Jews-\_\_\_\_\_ and Armenians-\_\_\_\_\_, having-borne-\_\_\_\_\_ terrible persecutions-\_\_\_\_\_ and genocide-\_\_\_\_\_, even to iota-\_\_\_\_\_ lost own national originality-\_\_\_\_\_?] (III-183)

Mixed Case  
Exercise 2  
Level III

Mixed Case Exercise 2, Level III

*Identify the case uses in the sentences below and explain why those cases are used and how they interact with each other. Provide your own English translation of the sentence and compare it to the translation in the key.*

Постановление о подписании соглашения между правительством Русской Федерации и правительством Республики Кипр о безвизовом режиме въезда и выезда подписано премьер-министром.

[Resolution-\_\_\_\_\_ about signing-\_\_\_\_\_ agreement-\_\_\_\_\_ between government-\_\_\_\_\_ Russian Federation-\_\_\_\_\_ and government-\_\_\_\_\_ Republic-\_\_\_\_\_ Cyprus-\_\_\_\_\_ about visa-less procedure-\_\_\_\_\_ entering-\_\_\_\_\_ and leaving-\_\_\_\_\_ signed-\_\_\_\_\_ prime-minister-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-6)

Археолог по крохам восстанавливает историю хазар как раз для того, чтобы понять, каким образом народы исчезают, а на место их истории приходят апокрифы, которые в силу разных причин принято да и удобно считать истинной.

[Archeologist-\_\_\_\_ along fragments-\_\_\_\_ reconstruct history-\_\_\_\_ Khazars-\_\_\_\_ as time for that-\_\_\_\_ so-that understand, what means-\_\_\_\_ nations-\_\_\_\_ disappear, and on place-\_\_\_\_ their history-\_\_\_\_ come apocryphas-\_\_\_\_, which-\_\_\_\_ in strength-\_\_\_\_ various reasons-\_\_\_\_ not usual and and convenient consider truth-\_\_\_\_.] (III-30)

Владимир Жириновский, говоря в Думе о неиспользуемых правительством возможностях пополнения бюджета, гневно обвинил последнее в том, что оно не собирает налог с проституток.

[Vladimir Zhirinovsky-\_\_\_\_, speaking in Duma-\_\_\_\_ about unutilized-\_\_\_\_ government-\_\_\_\_ opportunities-\_\_\_\_ supplement-\_\_\_\_ budget-\_\_\_\_, angrily accused latter-\_\_\_\_ in that-\_\_\_\_, that it-\_\_\_\_ not collect tax-\_\_\_\_ from prostitutes-\_\_\_\_.] (III-54)

Он переключает скорость. Я боюсь скоростей, но сейчас мне хочется, чтобы он ехал ещё быстрее, хочется врезаться во что-нибудь, чтобы больше не думать.

[He-\_\_\_\_ switches speed-\_\_\_\_. I-\_\_\_\_ fear speeds-\_\_\_\_, but now me-\_\_\_\_ wants, so-that he-\_\_\_\_ went ever faster, wants run into something-\_\_\_\_, so-that more not think.] (III-73)

Активизируя диафрагмы, смех углубляет дыхание, обогащает кислородом кровь и вентилирует лёгкие.

[Activating diaphragms-\_\_\_\_, laughter-\_\_\_\_ deepens breathing-\_\_\_\_, oxygen-\_\_\_\_ blood-\_\_\_\_ and ventilates lungs-\_\_\_\_.] (III-94)

Раздражение Горького, которое чувствуется во всём тоне этого письма, несомненно отразилось и на его характеристике творчества Марины Цветаевой.

[Irritation-\_\_\_\_ Gorky-\_\_\_\_, which-\_\_\_\_ is-felt in all tone-\_\_\_\_ this letter-\_\_\_\_, certainly was-reflected also on his description-\_\_\_\_ work-\_\_\_\_ Marina Tsvetaeva-\_\_\_\_.] (III-112)

—Вы преувеличиваете. Литератор должен публиковаться. Разумеется, не в ущерб своему таланту.

[—You-\_\_\_\_ exaggerate. A literary-man-\_\_\_\_ should-\_\_\_\_ publish. It-is-understood, not to detriment-\_\_\_\_ own talent-\_\_\_\_.] (III-126)

Главное же в том, что игра сборной России на этот раз по-настоящему понравилась зрителям и специалистам, она вызвала неподдельное уважение соперников.

[Main very in that-\_\_\_\_, that game-\_\_\_\_ combined Russia-\_\_\_\_ on this occasion-\_\_\_\_ along-real-\_\_\_\_ liked viewers-\_\_\_\_ and specialists-\_\_\_\_, it-\_\_\_\_ call-forth genuine respect-\_\_\_\_ rivals-\_\_\_\_.] (III-157)

Этот идиот режиссёр заставил меня следовать задуманному плану.  
 [This idiot-\_\_\_\_\_ director-\_\_\_\_\_ forced me-\_\_\_\_\_ follow proposed plan-\_\_\_\_\_] (III-170)

Эту книгу почти все женщины, юные и не очень, читали именно так — захлёбываясь от восторга.  
 [This book-\_\_\_\_\_ almost all women-\_\_\_\_\_, young-\_\_\_\_\_ and not very, read just so — choking from delight-\_\_\_\_\_] (III-184)

Mixed Case  
 Exercise 3  
 Level III

Mixed Case Exercise 3, Level III

*Identify the case uses in the sentences below and explain why those cases are used and how they interact with each other. Provide your own English translation of the sentence and compare it to the translation in the key.*

Проект соглашения предусматривает, что граждане обоих государств, имеющие действующие заграничные документы, могут въезжать на территорию другого государства без виз на срок до девяноста дней.  
 [Draft-\_\_\_\_\_ agreement-\_\_\_\_\_ stipulates, that citizens-\_\_\_\_\_ both states-\_\_\_\_\_, having-\_\_\_\_\_ valid international-documents-\_\_\_\_\_ can enter territory-\_\_\_\_\_ other state-\_\_\_\_\_ without visas-\_\_\_\_\_ for period-\_\_\_\_\_ to ninety days-\_\_\_\_\_] (III-7)

Вообще лицо есть, но черты не связаны одной темой и как бы взяты с нескольких лиц.  
 [In-general face-\_\_\_\_\_ is, but features-\_\_\_\_\_ not connected-\_\_\_\_\_ one theme-\_\_\_\_\_ and as it taken-\_\_\_\_\_ from several faces-\_\_\_\_\_] (III-31)

Она была тогда гораздо знаменитее Сергея, который глухо пребывал в армии, ничем никого особенно не занимая; пьющие гении, вылетающие из институтов, были тогда в наших кругах скорее нормой, чем событием.  
 [She-\_\_\_\_\_ was then much more-famous Sergei-\_\_\_\_\_, who-\_\_\_\_\_ quietly spent time in army-\_\_\_\_\_ nothing-\_\_\_\_\_ no-one-\_\_\_\_\_ particularly not interesting; drinking geniuses-\_\_\_\_\_, flying-out-\_\_\_\_\_ from institutes-\_\_\_\_\_, were then in our circles-\_\_\_\_\_ rather norm-\_\_\_\_\_, what-\_\_\_\_\_ event-\_\_\_\_\_] (III-55)

Представьте, что вы договорились заехать вечером за своей возлюбленной и отправиться с ней в шикарный ресторан, а накануне вас одолели головные боли.  
 [Imagine, that you-\_\_\_\_\_ agreed go evening-\_\_\_\_\_ for your beloved-\_\_\_\_\_ and go with her-\_\_\_\_\_ to fancy restaurant-\_\_\_\_\_, but night-before you-\_\_\_\_\_ overcame head aches-\_\_\_\_\_] (III-74)

Двойной стандарт в политике обладает свойством бумеранга.  
 [Double standard-\_\_\_\_\_ in politics-\_\_\_\_\_ has property-\_\_\_\_\_ boomerang-\_\_\_\_\_] (III-95)

Короче говоря, речь идёт о нормальном процессе борьбы мировых сил за влияние и за выживание.

[Shorter speaking, speech-\_\_\_\_\_ goes about normal process-\_\_\_\_\_ struggle-\_\_\_\_\_ world's powers-\_\_\_\_\_ for influence-\_\_\_\_\_ and for survival-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-115)

“Вы на самом деле экономист.... Ну чего ты голову морочишь людям здесь?”  
 [“You-\_\_\_\_\_ in very matter-\_\_\_\_\_ economist-\_\_\_\_\_. Well what-\_\_\_\_\_ you-\_\_\_\_\_ head-\_\_\_\_\_ fool people-\_\_\_\_\_ here?”] (III-127)

Это генетик Ричард Сид, заявивший, что уже через три месяца начнёт клонировать человека.

[This-\_\_\_\_\_ geneticist Richard Seed-\_\_\_\_\_, announced-\_\_\_\_\_, that already through three-\_\_\_\_\_ month-\_\_\_\_\_ begins clone man-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-158)

Боковым зрением она отметила, что на другой дорожке остались стоять очень толстая тётенька, килограммов на сто, и высокий мальчик.

[Side vision-\_\_\_\_\_ she-\_\_\_\_\_ noticed, that on other road-\_\_\_\_\_ stopped stand very fat lady-\_\_\_\_\_, kilograms-\_\_\_\_\_ to 100-\_\_\_\_\_, and tall boy-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-171)

Героиню Щербаковой вы легко можете встретить в очереди за дешёвыми туфлями на распродаже, в автобусе в час пик, в магазине (только не в блестящем супермаркете).

[Heroine-\_\_\_\_\_, Shcherbakova-\_\_\_\_\_ you-\_\_\_\_\_ easily may meet in line-\_\_\_\_\_ behind cheap shoes-\_\_\_\_\_ on sale-\_\_\_\_\_, in bus-\_\_\_\_\_ to time peak-\_\_\_\_\_, in store-\_\_\_\_\_ (only not in sparkling supermarket-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-185)

#### Mixed Case Exercise 4, Level III

*Identify the case uses in the sentences below and explain why those cases are used and how they interact with each other. Provide your own English translation of the sentence and compare it to the translation in the key.*

#### Mixed Case Exercise 4 Level III

Постановлением No. 315 глава областной администрации учредил ежемесячные стипендии студентам вузов, окончившим школу с золотой медалью.

[Decree-\_\_\_\_\_ No. 315 head-\_\_\_\_\_ regional administration-\_\_\_\_\_ established monthly stipends-\_\_\_\_\_ students-\_\_\_\_\_ institutions-of-higher-education-\_\_\_\_\_, graduated-\_\_\_\_\_ school-\_\_\_\_\_ with gold medal-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-11)

Двадцать лет назад она тоже была влюблена в одного артиста до потери пульса, и весь их класс сходил с ума.

[Twenty-\_\_\_\_\_ years-\_\_\_\_\_ ago she-\_\_\_\_\_ also was in-love-\_\_\_\_\_ in one artist-\_\_\_\_\_ to loss-\_\_\_\_\_ pulse-\_\_\_\_\_, and all their class-\_\_\_\_\_ was-going from mind-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-33)

Этот душевный подвиг Довлатова неповторим, и его не подделать больше никому, как бы кто ни старался.

[That emotional achievement-\_\_\_\_ Dovatov-\_\_\_\_ unrepeatable-\_\_\_\_, and it-\_\_\_\_ not fake more no-one-\_\_\_\_, how would who-\_\_\_\_ not tried.] (III-56)

Но когда я поведал невесте о своей проблеме, она достала из своей миниатюрной сумочки какой-то прибор, приложила к моей голове и боль исчезла.

[But when I-\_\_\_\_ told fiancee-\_\_\_\_ about own problem-\_\_\_\_, she-\_\_\_\_ took from own miniature purse-\_\_\_\_ some-kind gadget-\_\_\_\_, placed to my head-\_\_\_\_ and pain-\_\_\_\_ disappeared.] (III-75)

Предлагается посмеяться над приключениями трёх братьев-близнецов, занятых поисками украденного алмаза уникальной величины и ценности.

[Suggests laugh over adventures-\_\_\_\_ three brothers-triplets-\_\_\_\_, occupied-\_\_\_\_ searches-\_\_\_\_ stolen diamond-\_\_\_\_ unique size-\_\_\_\_ and value-\_\_\_\_.] (III-98)

Когда в тридцатые годы возникла нужда в духовподъёмной, сплачивающей народ героике, власть использовала для этого именно Север.

[When in thirty years-\_\_\_\_ arose need-\_\_\_\_ in spiritually-uplifting-\_\_\_\_, galvanizing-\_\_\_\_ nation-\_\_\_\_ heroics-\_\_\_\_, regime-\_\_\_\_ used for this-\_\_\_\_ precisely North-\_\_\_\_.] (III-116)

Согласен, Солженицын — это гора, было бы смешно попытаться её переделывать по нашим меркам. Дело теперь в нас с вами. Нам осмысливать, нам решать, нам выбирать, куда идти дальше.

[Agree-\_\_\_\_, Solzhenitsyn-\_\_\_\_ — this-\_\_\_\_ mountain-\_\_\_\_, was would laughable attempt it-\_\_\_\_ remake along our measures-\_\_\_\_. Matter-\_\_\_\_ now to us-\_\_\_\_ with you-\_\_\_\_. Us-\_\_\_\_ interpret, us-\_\_\_\_ decide, us-\_\_\_\_ choose, where go further.] (III-128)

Формальный повод для закрытия миссии таков: конгресс США ушёл на каникулы, так и не продлив действие закона, разрешающего Соединённым Штатам иметь дипломатические контакты с ООН.

[Formal cause-\_\_\_\_ for closing-\_\_\_\_ mission-\_\_\_\_ such-\_\_\_\_: Congress-\_\_\_\_ USA-\_\_\_\_ left for vacation-\_\_\_\_, so even not extended action-\_\_\_\_ law-\_\_\_\_, allowing-\_\_\_\_ United States-\_\_\_\_ have diplomatic contacts-\_\_\_\_ with UN-\_\_\_\_.] (III-150)

Лет пятнадцать назад, идя по снежной лесной целине на лыжах, можно было наткнуться и на заячьи, и даже на лисьи следы.

[Years-\_\_\_\_ fifteen-\_\_\_\_ ago, going along snowy forest virgin-soil-\_\_\_\_ on skis-\_\_\_\_, may was stumble-upon and on rabbit-\_\_\_\_, and even on fox tracks-\_\_\_\_.] (III-159)

Кóстик, две недéли до тогó пролежáвший с радикулíтом, в три метрòвых шагá перемáхивает чéрез газóн, а на асфáльте, сцепив зúбы от презрénия, стоить Людмíла.

[Kostik-\_\_\_\_, two-\_\_\_\_ weeks-\_\_\_\_ to that-\_\_\_\_ laid-up-\_\_\_\_ with radiculitis-\_\_\_\_, in three-\_\_\_\_ meter steps-\_\_\_\_ leaps through lawn-\_\_\_\_, and on asphalt-\_\_\_\_, having-clinched teeth-\_\_\_\_ from disdain-\_\_\_\_ stands Ludmila-\_\_\_\_.] (III-172)

### Mixed Case Exercise 5, Level III

*Identify the case uses in the sentences below and explain why those cases are used and how they interact with each other. Provide your own English translation of the sentence and compare it to the translation in the key.*

### Mixed Case Exercise 5 Level III

Политическая полиция располагáет богатéйшим архíвом, в котóром, как утверждáют, содéржатся досьé на полмиллиóна францúзов.

[Political police-\_\_\_\_ have-at-disposal most-rich archive-\_\_\_\_, in which-\_\_\_\_, as claim, are-kept files-\_\_\_\_ on half-million-\_\_\_\_ French-\_\_\_\_.] (III-12)

Óпытный престúпник сначала подготóвит себé канал бýстрого сбýта, найдёт перекúпщиков, котóрые сумéют сплáвить картиньы и украшénия.

[Experienced criminal-\_\_\_\_ first prepare self-\_\_\_\_ channel-\_\_\_\_ quick sale-\_\_\_\_, finds second-hand-dealers-\_\_\_\_, who-\_\_\_\_ know-how get-rid pictures-\_\_\_\_ and decorations-\_\_\_\_.] (III-36)

Какíе поразительные истóрии мóжно услýшать в электрúчке от обóрванного случáйного сосéда!

[What shocking stories-\_\_\_\_ possible hear in commuter-train-\_\_\_\_ from ragged random neighbor-\_\_\_\_!] (III-57)

Бýвший чемпиóн мíра по бóксу Мухáммед Алí, прибýвший в африкáнскую Респúблику Кот-д'Ивуáр с мíссией дóброй воли — для оказáния пóмощи сирóтам-бéженцам из Либéрии, был с почётóм встрéчен организáторами его визíта.

[Former champion-\_\_\_\_ world-\_\_\_\_ along boxing-\_\_\_\_ Muhammed Ali-\_\_\_\_, having-arrived-\_\_\_\_ in African Republic-\_\_\_\_ Cote-d'Ivoire-\_\_\_\_ with mission-\_\_\_\_ good will-\_\_\_\_ — for rendering-\_\_\_\_ assistance-\_\_\_\_ orphans-refugees-\_\_\_\_ from Liberia-\_\_\_\_, was with honor-\_\_\_\_ met-\_\_\_\_ organizers-\_\_\_\_ his visit-\_\_\_\_.] (III-76)

Вмéсте с глáвны герóем мóжно посочúствовать совремénной истóрии не óчень счастлívой семéйной пáры, рассказáнной в фíльме <<Музыка для декабря>>.

[Together with main hero-\_\_\_\_ possible sympathize modern story-\_\_\_\_ not very happy family pair-\_\_\_\_, told-\_\_\_\_ in film-\_\_\_\_ "Music-\_\_\_\_ for December-\_\_\_\_."] (III-99)



Вы были её адвокатом с того момента, как на неё завели уголовное дело, и практически до окончания следствия.

[You-\_\_\_\_\_ were her attorney-\_\_\_\_\_ from that moment-\_\_\_\_\_, how on her-\_\_\_\_\_ brought criminal case-\_\_\_\_\_, and practically to end-\_\_\_\_\_ investigation-\_\_\_\_\_] (III-117)

Может, возьмёт тебя на работу литсотрудником или хотя бы корректором.  
[May, will-take you-\_\_\_\_\_ to work-\_\_\_\_\_ literary-assistant-\_\_\_\_\_ or although would proof-reader-\_\_\_\_\_] (III-129)

А если жена сжигает себя на погребальном костре мужа, она удостоивается почти религиозного поклонения.

[But if wife-\_\_\_\_\_ burns self-\_\_\_\_\_ on funeral pyre-\_\_\_\_\_ husband-\_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ receives almost religious worship-\_\_\_\_\_] (III-145)

У меня есть твёрдое убеждение: проливая кровь, счастья для других не добьёшься, а себе жизнь испортишь.

[At me-\_\_\_\_\_ firm conviction-\_\_\_\_\_: pouring-out blood-\_\_\_\_\_, happiness-\_\_\_\_\_ for others-\_\_\_\_\_ not secure, but self-\_\_\_\_\_ life-\_\_\_\_\_ ruin.] (III-160)

Запомнить бы мне эти их лица.

[Memorize would me-\_\_\_\_\_ these their faces-\_\_\_\_\_] (III-173)

Mixed Case  
Exercise 6  
Level III

Mixed Case Exercise 6, Level III

*Identify the case uses in the sentences below and explain why those cases are used and how they interact with each other. Provide your own English translation of the sentence and compare it to the translation in the key.*

Эстонские роялисты восхищены английской монархией и, в частности, принцем Эдвардом, являющимся, с их точки зрения, превосходным и совершенным во всех отношениях принцем.

[Estonian royalists-\_\_\_\_\_ delighted-\_\_\_\_\_ English monarchy-\_\_\_\_\_ and, in particular-\_\_\_\_\_, prince Edward-\_\_\_\_\_, being-\_\_\_\_\_, from their point-\_\_\_\_\_ view-\_\_\_\_\_, superb-\_\_\_\_\_ and perfect-\_\_\_\_\_ in all relations-\_\_\_\_\_ prince-\_\_\_\_\_] (III-13)

Много говорится о том, что журналистика для литератора — занятие пагубное.

[A-lot-\_\_\_\_\_ is-said about that-\_\_\_\_\_, that journalism-\_\_\_\_\_ for writer-\_\_\_\_\_ — profession pernicious-\_\_\_\_\_] (III-39)

Но мы, слава Богу, защищены от этого с детства.

[But we-\_\_\_\_\_, glory-\_\_\_\_\_ God-\_\_\_\_\_, protected-\_\_\_\_\_ from that-\_\_\_\_\_ from childhood-\_\_\_\_\_] (III-59)

В стране находятся десятки тысяч беженцев из Либерии, испытывающих крайнюю нужду в продовольствии и предметах первой необходимости.  
 [In country-\_\_\_\_\_ are tens-\_\_\_\_\_ thousands-\_\_\_\_\_ refugees-\_\_\_\_\_ from Liberia-\_\_\_\_\_, experiencing-\_\_\_\_\_ extreme need-\_\_\_\_\_ in food-\_\_\_\_\_ and items-\_\_\_\_\_ first aid-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-77)

Невдалеке от меня сидел один из танкистов, ростовчанин, рослый хмуры́ старший лейтенант.  
 [Not-far from me-\_\_\_\_\_ sat one-\_\_\_\_\_ from tank-crew-members-\_\_\_\_\_, Rostovian-\_\_\_\_\_, tall gloomy older lieutenant-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-100)

Мошенничество — это либо завладение личным имуществом граждан, либо приобретение права на завладение имуществом путём обмена или злоупотребления доверием.  
 [Swindling-\_\_\_\_\_ — that-\_\_\_\_\_ either taking-possession-\_\_\_\_\_ personal property-\_\_\_\_\_ citizens-\_\_\_\_\_, or acquisition-\_\_\_\_\_ right-\_\_\_\_\_ on taking-possession-\_\_\_\_\_ property-\_\_\_\_\_ way-\_\_\_\_\_ deceit-\_\_\_\_\_ or abuse-\_\_\_\_\_ trust-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-118)

Хозяйка ланчонета миссис Бона с грохотом поднимает железную решётку.  
 [Owner-\_\_\_\_\_ luncheonette-\_\_\_\_\_ Mrs. Bono-\_\_\_\_\_ with crash-\_\_\_\_\_ lifts iron grill-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-130)

Фонд Раджива Ганди, основанный ею, помогает детям, женщинам и бедны́м и стал самой влиятельной неправительственной организацией в Индии.  
 [Fund-\_\_\_\_\_ Rajiva Gandhi-\_\_\_\_\_, founded-\_\_\_\_\_ her-\_\_\_\_\_, helps children-\_\_\_\_\_, women-\_\_\_\_\_ and poor-\_\_\_\_\_ and became most influential non-governmental organization-\_\_\_\_\_ in India-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-146)

Под землёй через несколько сантиметров лёд, вечная мерзлота, сверху снег.  
 [Under ground-\_\_\_\_\_ through several-\_\_\_\_\_ centimeters-\_\_\_\_\_ ice-\_\_\_\_\_, eternal frost-\_\_\_\_\_, on-top snow-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-161)

Он ударился грудью о водопроводную трубу, которая проходила по газону.  
 [He-\_\_\_\_\_ hit chest-\_\_\_\_\_ against water pipe-\_\_\_\_\_, which-\_\_\_\_\_ ran along lawn-\_\_\_\_\_.] (III-175)

### Mixed Case Exercise 7, Level III

*Put the following words and phrases into the necessary case. Provide English translation of the sentence and compare it to the translation in*

Mixed Case  
 Exercise 7  
 Level III

Первые 169 специально отобранные военнослужащие и добровольцы уже начали специальную четырёхнедельную подготовку, чтобы в случае необходимости быть готовые отправиться в любой район планеты под флаг ООН. (III-14)

Сначала мы показывали каньон, что-то вроде ущелье. (III-41)

Российская власть демонстрирует полное бессилие, неспособность защитить свои граждане и готовность слепо идти на повод Александр Лукашенко, принимая его аргументация и его правила игры. (III-62)

В английский город Воберн организаторы сбор средства в фонд поддержки кампания по сохранение дикая природа на страны Азия вывели на улицы три слоны из местный зоопарк. (III-78)

Тут справа из сарай выбежал молодой человек и, перепрыгнув через корыто, на которое среди помой лежала свинья, с крик побежал к вороты. (III-101)

Следствие нужно было доказать, что она завладела чужое имущество. (III-119)

Я переписываю в дневник результаты вчерашний опыт, укладываю в коробка брошенные вчера образцы, рву и выкидываю черновики с расчёты. (III-132)

В опубликованное у вы интервью с министр сельское хозяйство и продовольствие сказано, что Россия наконец-то будет не покупать зерно, а, наоборот, может быть, продавать. (III-147)

Он долго пил из ведро, проливая прямо на гимнастёрка, на грудь, потом слепо шагнул в сторону и, не выбирая где, свалился в кусты спать. (III-162)

Потом каждый раз, где бы они ни были, он она глаз зацепит и держит, как кошка щипля. (III-176)

#### Mixed Case Exercise 8, Level III

*Put the following words and phrases into the necessary case. Provide your own English translation of the sentence and compare it to the translation in the key.*

Он всегда приносил с себя бутылка вино, выпивал она один, вловя то время укладывала ребёнок спать, нарезала какой-то простой салат, что было под рука, то ли варила яйцо вкрутую, короче, хлопотала, но не очень. (III-16)

Кроме официальные участники должен съехаться так называемые гости. (III-43)

Неужели российская власть полностью утратила уважение не только к свои граждане, но и к самая себя? (III-65)

Очень может статься, что жизнь заду́ман, как доро́га к верши́на. Дойду ли я до своей верши́на или устану и вернусь, чтобы лечь на дива́н? (III-82)

Взяв я в свой группа и поручив я, полго́да наза́д, испытания́ но́вый материал, директор, конечно, рисковал. (III-102)

Отдел спорт заведовал доброду́шный, бессловесный человек. Он неизменно пребывал в глубо́кое самозабвение. По темпера́мент был равен мёртвая собака. (III-121)

Я молча вытаскиваю рука́ из-под оде́яло и протягиваю к он. (III-133)

Человек, совершивший са́мый крова́вый террористический акт за вся история́ Аме́рика, был наконец приговорён к сме́ртная казнь. (III-148)

Связанные сза́ди посиневшие ру́ки при э́то задирались кверху; казалось, он мо́литса какой-то несобы́чный спосо́б. (III-163)

Со вре́мя становится очевидно, что с са́мое нача́ло была сле́дан оши́бка: вместо дешё́вый электромеханический замо́к, лучше установить в дверь электромагнитный замо́к! (III-177)

#### Mixed Case Exercise 9, Level III

*Put the following words and phrases into the necessary case. Provide your own English translation of the sentence and compare it to the translation in the key.*

#### Mixed Case Exercise 9 Level III

У я сложилось впечатле́ние, что о токийская декларация́ 1993 год, где было дан обеща́ние решить территориальная пробле́ма, в Россия́ как-то не вспомина́ют. (III-20)

Сейчас газета́ я опротивела, но тогда́ я был по́лон энтузи́зм. (III-44)

Президе́нт центр хирургия́ назвал чу́до то, что семидесятишестиле́тний человек, перене́сший сорокоми́нутная клини́ческая сме́рть, живёт уже́ две неде́ля. (III-67)

Я казалось, что, помимо любо́вь ко я, у ты должен быть чу́вство долг, но ты считал, что ничто́ не должен, тогда́ и я ты ничто́ не должен. (III-83)

Кухня́ превратилась в электри́ческое поле́ с разнозаря́женные части́цы, ко́торые ста́лквиаются. (III-104)

Религи́озные семина́ры проходили в церко́вная библиоте́ка. Там собирались правосла́вные, иудаи́сты, мусульма́не, като́лики. Ка́ждая из группа́ было вы́делен отде́льное помеще́ние. (III-123)

Жáлость и тёплая вода делают своё дело — из-под душ я выхожу, подобревшая и освежённая. (III-134)

Лица все силевшие в зал окаменели. (III-149)

Она утыкается голова, рот он в грудь; хочется слова утешение... (III-164)

Воры залезают в квартиры верхние этажи с крыша, по верёвка, привязанная к антенна. (III-178)

### Mixed Case Exercise 10, Level III

*Put the following words and phrases into the necessary case. Provide your own English translation of the sentence and compare it to the translation in the key.*

На недавняя конференция Организация азиатско-тихоокеанское экономическое сотрудничество, участники которая производят половина мировой валовой продукт, Россия не участвовала. (III-21)

В кулуары писатель окружила толпа единомышленники и почитатели. (III-45)

Реаниматологи непрерывно делали прямой массаж сердце, и все сорок минут клиническая смерть кровь поступала в головной мозг. (III-68)

Я поднял рука и потянул на себя чемодан. Сверху лежали ракеты для бадминтон. Они поехали и упали на пол. (III-86)

Девочка смотрела в окно, и в её светлые глаза отражались деревья, дома, небо. Глаза были пестрые и разные, в зависимость от то, что было за окно. (III-105)

Поэт возвратился к стол. У он было радостное, совершенно изменившееся от это лицо. Он поклонился актриса. (III-124)

У фирма более двести совместные предприятия по весь мир, где успешно трудятся десятки тысячи самые высококвалифицированные специалисты разные национальности. (III-136)

Вскоре после оглашение решение суд, во время чтение которое террорист был абсолютно слободен, он перевел в тюрьма с максимально усиленный режим безопасности в штат Колорадо. (III-151)

А я так вот подхожу однажды к мясник, говорю, я килограмм три хорошее мясо бы. И подмигнул он. (III-165)

Совершив кража, воры покидают подъезд уже неузнаваемые: он перекидываются одежда на бег, в лифт. (III-179)

Mixed Case Exercise 11, Level III

*Put the following words and phrases into the necessary case. Provide your own English translation of the sentence and compare it to the translation in the key.*

Mixed Case  
Exercise 11  
Level III

У она лицо совершенно маленькая девочка, и это детское личико налеплен на мелкая, как тыковка, головка. (III-23)

Декабрьское утро прошлый год я отослал целая пачка рассказы в журнал "Новый мир". Откровенно говоря, я не питал иллюзии. (III-46)

Дети сядут за парты, как обычно, в первый день осень, а слухи появились в связь с предстоящие торжества в честь юбилей город. (III-69)

По-мбему, он не понимал, что это кончится, хотя и сказал, что обязан лечь поперёк дверь и я не пустить, но понимает, что тогда я выпрыгну в окно. (III-89)

И тут на её горизонт возник знаменитый эстрадный певец. Сейчас его имя забыт, но в шестидесятые годы он был популярнее Синатра. (III-106)

Стоял в паскудная очередь, толкался, ждал что-то. И вдруг пью вино с очаровательная женщина. (III-107)

В июль в ход визит в Москва министр иностранные дела Великобритания завершил обсуждение проект двухстороннее соглашение по сотрудничество в борьба с организованная преступность. (III-138)

По род своя работа я каждодневно сталкиваюсь с люди, пострадавшие от укусы животные. (III-142)

Накануне швейцарская встреча противоречие между общины на Кипр неожиданно обострились: шестое август никто, кроме Анкара, не признанная <<Турецкая республика Северный Кипр>> и материковая Турция подписали соглашение об организация так называемый <<интеграционный совет>>. (III-152)

У я было два-три платье, а однажды не было чулки, чтобы пойти в гости на Новый год, и тогда я цлов нарисовала чернила на голая нога. (III-180)

Mixed Case Exercise 12, Level III

Put the following words and phrases into the necessary case. Provide your own English translation of the sentence and compare it to the translation in the key.

Растроганный её явление, Вадим даже не спросил, откуда она известен номер его телефон. (III-27)

Тогда почему же я ощущаю себя на грань физическая катастрофа? Откуда у я чувство безнадежная жизненная непригодность? В что причина мой тоска? (III-48)

Министр внутренние дела отправили в отставка ещё в июнь за содействие криминальная экономика. (III-70)

Решение о принятие это государство, население которое насчитывает шестнадцать тысяча человек, в ООН Генеральная Ассамблея приняла без голосование, никто не возражал. (III-90)

Помню огромный, красивый, мрачный Повлатов, выходящий с толстая папка в руки из журнал "Нсва". (III-108)

Японская компания пейджинговая связь выпускает в продажа неполногие пейджеры, специально предназначенные для передача кодированные сообщения дети. (III-140)

Спортсмены, годы живущие в экстремальный режим, волея выбирать себя страна для жительство, гарантирующая они те условия, в которые они хочется жить. (III-143)

Фирмы, нарушающие это распоряжение, будут лишаться лицензия на свои деятельность. (III-153)

В телефонный разговор в четверг они были един в то, что государство Содружество Независимые Государства надо решить ряд вопросы, связанные с укрепление южные рубежи Содружество. (III-166)

Теперь я понимаю, что в гражданская война не бывает правые и виноватые, а есть люди, по-разному влияющие будущее свой страна. (III-181)

Mixed Case Exercise 13, Level III

Put the following words and phrases into the necessary case. Provide your own English translation of the sentence and compare it to the translation in the key.

Сегодня равноправие психически больные, их право на "собственное мнение" сводится к равное для все право быть обманутый. (III-28)

В его движения — изъяснение юный князь. (III-51)

Правительство только что объявило о выпуск большой пакет облигации на общая сумма три миллиарда долларов, призванный компенсировать аргентинцы потерю их родственники во время так называемая <<грязная война>>. (III-71)

Однако далеко не все фильмы, представленные на парижский фестиваль, окрашен трагический или драматический пафос. (III-92)

Анастасия приехала в Сорренто ещё в начало август, но Марина, не получая от она известия, двадцать четвертое август обратилась с запрос к Горький. (III-110)

Есть, по-моему, удачное решение проблема захоронение тело Ленин, которая сегодня столь болезненно воспринимается различные круги российское общество. (III-141)

Руководители фонд прежде неоднократно утверждали, что они поддерживают некие связи с диссидентские элементы внутри кубинские вооружённые силы, которые якобы уже созрели для переворот. (III-144)

Возмущённые родители директор обещал вскоре найти учителя, но в середина год признался в своей бессилие и предложил призвать на помощь частная фирма. (III-155)

По его слова, в понедельник утро из Минфин пришло распоряжение, согласно которое выделяемые деньги будет еле-еле хватать на зарплаты сотрудники. (III-167)

С помощь местные старушки, высыпавшие после служба из церковь, отыскали под снег его могилы. (III-182)

#### Multi-Case Preposition Exercise 1, Level III

*Choose the correct preposition and case from the choices below.*

Предприятие выпустит шестнадцать тысяч машин, одиннадцать тысяч из которых реализуются за граница/за границу/за границей.

The enterprise will produce sixteen thousand cars, eleven thousand of which will be sold abroad. (III-3)

#### Multi-Case Preposition Exercise 1 Level III



Аня всерьёз купила билет на праздник/на празднике Нового года, не подозревая о то/о том, что на этот праздник/на этом празднике должны быть такие же одиночки, как она сама, те, кого не приняли, отвергли студенческие вечеринки.

Anya bought the ticket for the New Year's party in all seriousness, not suspecting that at this party would be the same kind of lonely women like herself, those who weren't accepted, and who were spurned at the student parties. (III-15)

Двадцать лет назад она тоже была влюблена в одного/в одном артиста до потери пульса, и весь их класс сходил с ум/с ума/с умом.

Twenty years ago she also was in love with an artist, to the point of losing her pulse, and their whole class was going crazy. (III-33)

На её место/На её месте я поставила бы на столик/на столике бутылку, положила булочку и со все ноги/со всех ног/со всеми ногами бросилась на "Мосфильм"/на "Мосфильме" сниматься в главную роль/в главной роли.

In her place, I would put the bottle on the table, lay down the roll, and would run at full speed to "Mosfilm" to be filmed in a starring role. (III-60)

Мы стоим с ней/с ней по разные концы/по разным концам города, как два барана на мостик/на мостике горбатом, каждый со своё правду/со своей правды/со своей правдой.

She and I are on different ends of the city, like two rams on a hump-backed bridge — each with his own truth. (III-79)

Тут справа из сарая выбежал молодой человек и, перепрыгнув через корыто, на которое/на котóром среди помёев лежала свинья, с крик/с крика/с криком побсжал к воротам.

Just to the right a young man ran out of the barn, jumped over the trough in which a pig lay in the slop, and ran up towards the gate with a shout. (III-101)

Раздражение Горького, которое чувствуется во весь тон/во всём тóне этого письма, несомненно отразилось и на его характеристику/на его характеристике творчества Марины Цветаевой.

Gorky's irritation, which is felt all through the tone of this letter, was certainly reflected in his description of Marina Tsvetaeva's work. (III-112)

Умер он во Владимир/во Владимире, хоронили мы его на мою родину/на мой родине в Рославле/в Рославле, где похоронена моя родня.

He died in Vladimir, and we buried him in my native soil in Roslavl where my kin are buried. (III-120)

В июль/В июле в хол/в ходе визита в Москву/в Москве министр иностранных дел Великобритании завершил обсуждение проекта двухстороннего соглашения по сотрудничеству/по сотрудничеству в борьбу/в борьбе с организованную преступность/с организованной преступности/с организованной преступностью.

In the course of his July visit to Moscow, the foreign affairs minister of Great Britain completed the discussion of a project of bilateral agreement for cooperation in the struggle against organized crime. (III-138)

Вскоре после оглашения решения суда, во время/во времени чтения которого террорист был абсолютно спокоен, его перевели в тюрьму/в тюрьме с максимально усиленный режим/с максимально усиленного режима/с максимально усиленным режимом безопасности в штат/в штате Колорадо.

Soon after the announcement of the court's decision, during the reading of which the terrorist was absolutely calm, they took him to a maximum security prison in the state of Colorado. (III-151)

Со время/Со времени/Со временем становится очевидно, что с самого начала/с самого начала/с самым началом была сделана ошибка: вместо дешёвого электромеханического замка, лучше установить в дверь/в двери электромагнитный замок!

With time it becomes obvious, that a mistake was made from the very beginning: instead of a cheap electromechanical lock, it is better to install an electromagnetic lock in the door! (III-177)

### Multi-Case Preposition Exercise 2, Level III

*Choose the correct preposition and case from the choices below.*

В создавшиеся условия/В создавшихся условиях режим стремится различными путями внести раскол в оппозиционные ряды/в оппозиционных рядах.

Given the present conditions, the regime is trying various means to introduce division among the ranks of the opposition. (III-8)

Городу это было лестно, а биологам — полезно собраться всем вместе и доложить о свой дела/о своих делах, а заодно посмотреть Францию.

It was flattering for the city, and for the biologists, and useful to gather together to give reports on their affairs, and at the same time to visit France. (III-22)

При взгляде на эту комнату/на этой комнате с лежащий/с лежащего/с лежащим посредине на пол/на полу трупом старой женщины почему-то возникла ассоциация с Достоевского/с Достоевским.

At the sight of that room with the corpse of an old woman lying in the middle of the room, an association with Dostoevsky somehow sprung up. (III-34)

Подойдём к ситуации строго с точки/с точки/с точкой зрения международного права, оставив на время/на времени в сторону/в сторону специфический характер взаимоотношений Москвы с белорусского президента/с белорусским президентом.

Let's approach the situation strictly from the point of view of international law, leaving aside for the time being the specific character of the mutual relations between Moscow and the Belorussian president. (III-63)

Весь дом находился под террор/под террором нового человека, который хотел переиначить сутки по собственное усмотрение/по собственному усмотрению.

The whole house was being terrorized by the new person, who wanted to alter the daily rhythm according to his own discretion. (III-87)

Спускаюсь вниз, толкаю дверь на пружину/на пружине, навстречу мне вырывается волна шума, но я преодолеваю её и прохожу за стеклянная перегородка/за стеклянную перегородку/за стеклянной перегородкой.

I go downstairs, push the swinging door, and a wave of noise rushes out toward me, but I overcome it and walk over behind the glass barrier. (III-103)

Короче говоря, речь идёт о нормальный процесс/о нормальном процессе борьбы мировых сил за влияние/за влиянием и за выживание/за выживанием.

To put it briefly, the subject is the normal way in which the world's powers struggle for influence and survival. (III-115)

Под этот аккомпанемент/Под этим аккомпанементом я потихоньку перетаскиваю все свёртки к нам в лабораторию/в лаборатории.

To this accompaniment I noiselessly drag all of the bundles to our laboratory. (III-131)

Начиная с сентябрь/с сентябрь/с сентябрём японкам не придётся кричать из окна, зазывая своих детей на обед/на обеде.

Starting in September, the Japanese women won't have to cry out from the window when summoning their children to dinner. (III-139)

Жизнь же в Армению/в Армении, и в частности/в частности в Ереван/в Ереване, перестав быть невыносимой, перешла в категорию/в категории терпимой и уже подбирается к отметке <<близко к человеческой>>.

Life in Armenia, and in part in Yerevan, having stopped being unbearable, has moved into the category of bearable and already is approaching the mark "close to human". (III-154)

## Multi-Case Preposition Exercise 3, Level III

Choose the correct preposition and case from the choices below.

Multi-  
Preposition  
Exercise 3  
Level III

Психическими недугами во весь их спектр/во всём их спектре сильно пьющие поражены в два раза/в двух разах чаще, чем популяция в целом/в целом.

Heavy drinkers are afflicted with the whole range of psychiatric illnesses twice as frequently as the population as a whole. (III-10)

Раньше он приходил к нам с жалобы/с жалоб/с жалобами на соседей/на соседей, отравляющих из-за стены пищу и обжигających его через потолок невидимыми лучами.

He used to come to us with complaints about his neighbors, who poisoned his food through the wall and burned him through the ceiling with invisible rays. (III-26)

Слон был похож на громадную копну/на громадной копне сена.

The elephant looked like an enormous hay-stack. (III-47)

Дети съдут за парты/за партами, как обычно, в первый день/в первом дне осени, а слухи появились в связь/в связи с предстоящие торжества/с предстоящих торжеств/с предстоящими торжествами в честь/в честь юбилея города.

Children start school on the first day of fall, as usual, but the rumors got started in connection with the upcoming festivities for the city's anniversary. (III-69)

Меня в четырнадцать лет/в четырнадцати годах понесло в комсомол/в комсомоле, в который/в котором я не нашёл никакой революционной романтики.

At age fourteen I was brought to the communist youth league, where I did any revolutionary romance. (III-88)

Помню огромного, красивого, мрачного Довлатова, выходящего с толстую папку/с толстой папки/с толстой папкой в руки/в руках из журнала "Нева." I remember a huge, handsome, gloomy Dovlatov, emerging with a thick file in his hands from the journal "Neva." (III-108)

Вы были её адвокатом с тот момент/с того момента/с тем моментом, как на ней/на ней завели уголовное дело, и практически до окончания следствия.

You were her attorney from the moment a criminal case was brought against her and nearly until the end of the investigation. (III-117)

Сейчас он живёт вместе с жёнй и сыновей/с жёнй и сыновей/с жёнй и сыновьями в Монако, однако склоняется к тому, чтобы перебраться в Швецию/в Швеции.

Now he lives together with his wife and sons in Monaco, however towards moving to Sweden. (III-137)

- 9 Лица всех сидевших в зал/в зале окаменели.  
The faces of all those sitting in the hall turned to stone. (III-149)
- 10 Соглашение предусматривает создание на базу/на базе "Киноцентра" совместного предприятия, в которое/в котором каждой из заинтересованных сторон будет принадлежать по пятьдесят процентов акций/по пятидесяти процентам акциям.  
The agreement envisions the creation of a combined enterprise on the scale of a Cineplex, in which each of the interested sides will have around fifty percent of the shares. (III-168)

# English Index

[All numbers refer to page numbers in the text. Page numbers followed by T refer to items appearing in tables.]

## A

abstract paths with instrumental, 21

accusative case

- accusative: a destination, 53, 54-69
- accusative: a dimension, 53, 69-77
- accusative: an endpoint, 53, 77-80, 79T
- basic meaning, network, overview, 53
- case endings, 52T
- comparison, 69, 73-74
- cost, 73
- direct object, 54, 64-66
- direct object, direct object wi subject i  
nive, 65-67
- distance and duration, 69-72
- expressing a number of units, 72-73
- expressions of purpose, 54, 67-69
- intervals of space, 77
- intervals of time in future or past, 77
- joining a group, 57, 141-142
- metaphorical motion, 55-56, 58
- motion, 54, 55
- size and capacity, 69, 72-73
- specific vs. non-specific objects, 1
- summary of accusative uses, 80-81
- time expressions 'ago', 'before', 79T
- time expressions 'in', 'after', 'later', 79T
- time expressions, 62-64
- various activities, 69, 74-77
- verbs with accusative or geni

accusative prepositions

- overview of accusative prepositions, 54T
- relationship between *в* and *на*, 58
- "a-words" and "na-words", 1 -145, 145T
- в* 'in, into, to; during' +ACC, 54-57, 71, 74, 78
- за* 'beyond, behind, to the far/back side of; during, in the course of; away' +ACC, 59-60, 68, 71-72, 78
- на* 'to, on, onto; for, lasting' +ACC, 58-59, 71
- о* 'against, with' +ACC, 61, 73
- по* 'up to; after, to get; through; +ACC, 61, 72-73
- под* 'under; toward; for use as; +ACC, 62, 74
- про* 'about; for' +ACC, 54T, 75-76
- с* 'approximately' +ACC, 74
- сквозь* 'through' +ACC, 54T, 75
- через* 'across, after, every other' +ACC, 78

actions facilitated by instruments wi instrumental 26

active

- relationship between passive and active, 34
- ts of God with instrumental, 36
- jectives
- declension of, 159
- short adjectives with *быть* 'be', 13

adverbs

and i

age with dative, 98

agent, 64

agent with no subject and instrumental, 35

passive agent with instrumental, 33-35

animacy and case, 154-155

apathy with dative, 99

appearance and manifestation with dative, 89-90T

appearing as metaphorical extension of giving the self with dative, 90

appositive

names and titles following generic  
nominative, 15

X=Y reduced to X, Y with nomi

appreciation with instrumental, 32

approach with genitive, 122, 122T

approximation with genitive, 130

as a group with instrumental, 29

attention, getting attention with nominative, 9

avoidance with genitive, 118T

## B

be, 11-15, 36-40, 37-38T

adjectives with *быть* 'be', 13

fixed X=Y expressions, 14

nominative, short adjectives with *быть* 'be', 13

nominative, subject of *быть* 'be' meaning 'have',

nominative, subject of *быть* 'be', 11

nominative, the Y in an X=Y sentence, 12

Russian 'have' construction, 12

become, 36-40, 37-38T

beneficiaries and victims with dative, 101

benefit with dative, 91-93, 91-92T

benefit/harm with dative, 91-95

by what means with instrumental, 28

## C

calling with nominative, 9

case endings

accusative, 52

dative, 82

general appendix, 153-163

genitive, 110T

genitive in *-y/-ю*, 130

genitive plural endings, 155

instrumental, 18T

locative, 138T

locative in *-y/-*

148

nominative, 8T

category something belongs to with i

chaining with genitive, 111, 127

color with genitive, 1

communication

general communication with dative, 87, 87-88T

other signals with dative, 88T

talking with dative 87-88T

comparison

accusative expressi

with accusative, 69, 73-74  
 with genitive, 132, 136-137  
 expression of 'is like' wi  
 ins  
 conduit  
 instrumental as conduit  
 overview of conduit meani  
 control  
 person or object under con  
 cost with accusative, 73  
 creation with dative, 86

## D

dates with geni  
 dative case,  
 age, 98  
 apathy, 99  
 appearance and manifestation, 89-90T  
 basic meaning, network, overview, 83  
 benefit, 91-93, 91-92T  
 benefit/harm, 91-95  
 case endings, 82  
 changes in well-being, 99  
 communication, 87, 87-88T  
 communication, other signals, 88T  
 communication, talking, 87-88T  
 dative: a competitor, 101-109  
 dative: an experimenter, 91-101  
 dative: a receiver, 84-91  
 dative item as potential subject, 101-104  
 dative item exceeds the nominative subject in the  
 force it exerts, 102  
 dative item indicates an equal participant  
 nominative subject, 102  
 desire, 99  
 ease/difficulty, 91, 99-101  
 emotion, 98  
 environmental conditions, 98  
 equal or matching forces, 102T  
 experimenter constructions, 101  
 external forces, 91, 98-99  
 feeling like or having to do something, 100T  
 giving in the absence of a verb 'give', 86  
 giving money or gifts, 89, 89T  
 giving signals, 87  
 giving the self, 89  
 giving with dative, 84, 85T  
 harm, 93-95, 93-94T  
 having and needing, 95-98, 95-96T  
 in context of creation, 86  
 in context of metaphorical transfer, 86  
 in context of transfer, 86  
 indifference, 99  
 indirect object as subj t for further action, 84  
 indirect object without irect object, 84, 87  
 indirect object, 84  
 like, be pleasing, 92-93  
 metaphorical extensions of giving, 84-87  
 modal meanings, 99-101  
 not having any options with He- + interrogative  
 pronouns, 97-98

obligation/desire, 91, 99-101  
 person affected by an event, 101  
 personification of non-human destinations wi  
 toward', 105  
 possession of body parts, 97  
 possession/need, 95-98  
 seeming and appearing as metaphorical extensions of  
 giving the self, 90  
 special association with human beings, 83  
 submission to a greater force, 103  
 submission, 103T  
 suit, become, 93  
 summary of uses, 109  
 victims and beneficiaries, 101  
 dative prepositions  
 благодаря 'thanks to' +DAT, 87T, 88  
 к 'to, toward, for' +DAT, 104-107  
 no 'along, according to; due to' +DAT, 107-108  
 desire  
 with dative, 91, 99-101  
 with genitive, 122, 122T  
 destinations  
 comparison of preposi  
 104  
 destinations with accusative, 54-72  
 destinations with к 'to, toward', 104-105  
 dictionary citations in nominative, 9  
 difficulty/ease with dative, 91, 99-101  
 direct object, 54, 64-66  
 direct object with no subject, 65-67  
 specific vs. non-specific objects with accusative and  
 genitive 124, 124T  
 istance and duration with accusative, 69-72

## E

ease/difficul ith dative, 91, 99-101  
 emotion  
 with dative, 98  
 with instrumental, 33T  
 enjoyment with instrumental, 33T  
 environmental conditions with dative, 98  
 exchange with instrumental, 32T  
 experimenter constructions with dative, 101  
 external forces with dative, 91, 98-99

## F

fear with genitive, 118T  
 feeling like doing something with dative, 100T  
 feminine declension nouns, 155-156  
 filling with instrumental, 32T  
 from, comparison of prepositions wi  
 further readings, 164-165

## G

gender, 154  
 generic 'they', 66

## genitive case

approximation with numerals, 130  
 basic meaning, network, overview, 112  
 case endings, 110T  
 chaining, 111, 127  
 color, 126  
 comparison of 'from' prepositions, 113  
 comparison, 136-137  
 dates, 132  
 diverting attention to another i  
 events, 126-127  
 fear and avoidance, 118T  
 genitive: a goal, 118-124  
 genitive: a reference, 132-137  
 genitive: a source, 112-118  
 genitive: a whole, 125-131  
 genitive of negation, 135  
 'get', 'approach', 'desire', 122, 122T  
 in -y/-ю, 130  
 in idiomatic expressions, 127  
 lack and comparison, 132  
 lack, 135-136, 136T  
 membership in category, 126  
 numerals, 125, 129-130  
 of, 's, 125-131  
 partitive genitive, 130  
 parts and wholes, 125  
 possession, 125-126  
 prepositions with genitive, 13  
 quantifiers, 129-130  
 salutations and well-wish  
*some*, 130  
 specific vs. non-specific objects, 1  
 summary of uses, 137  
 time of day, 125  
 transition from 'going to' to 'coming from', 112-113  
 various prepositions meaning 'of', 128-129T  
 verbs with genitive, 118  
 verbs with accusative or genitive, 123-124, 124T  
 words expressing quantities, 131T

## genitive prepositions

prepositional phrases with genitive, 128-129  
 various prepositions with genitive, 128-129, 128-129T,  
 132-133  
 без 'without' +GEN, 133T  
 близ 'near' +GEN, 133T  
 nearby 'nearby' +GEN, 133T  
 ввиду 'in view of' +GEN, 133T  
 вдоль 'along' +GEN, 133T  
 взамен 'in place of' +GEN, 133T  
 вместо 'in place of' +GEN, 133T  
 вне 'outside of' +GEN, 133T  
 внутри 'inside' +GEN, 128  
 возле 'near' +GEN, 133T  
 вокруг 'around' +GEN, 133T  
 впереди 'in front of', 133T  
 врёде 'like' +GEN, 133T  
 для 'for' +GEN, 121  
 до 'to, up to; until, before' +GEN, 118-120  
 из 'from' +GEN, 112, 114-115

из-за 'from beyond, because of' +GEN, 114-115  
 из-под 'from beneath' +GEN, 115  
 кроме 'besides, except, aside from' +  
 мимо 'by, past' +GEN, 133T  
 накануне 'on the eve of' +GEN, 133T  
 наподобие 'in the likeness of' +GEN, 133T  
 напротив 'opposite' +GEN, 133T  
 насчёт 'on the matter of' +GEN, 133T  
 не до +GEN with dative 'isn't interested/doesn't want',  
 99, 120  
 около 'around; approximately' +GEN, 133T  
 от 'from' +GEN, 112, 115-117  
 подле 'beside' +GEN, 133T  
 позади 'behind' +GEN, 133T  
 после 'after' +GEN, 133T  
 помимо 'aside from' +GEN, 133T  
 поперёк 'across' +GEN, 133T  
 посреди 'in the middle of' +GEN, 128  
 прежде 'before' +GEN, 133T  
 против 'against, opposite' +GEN, 121-122  
 ради 'for the sake of' +GEN, 121  
 с 'from' +GEN, 112, 116, 119  
 сверх 'over, above' +GEN, 133T  
 среди 'among' +GEN, 128  
 у 'at, by, near' +GEN, 117, 134-135, 133T  
 get with genitive, 122, 122T

## giving

giving money or gifts with dative 89, 89T  
 giving the self with dative, 89  
 giving with dative, 84, 85T  
 in the absence of a verb 'give' with dative, 86  
 metaphorical extensions of giving with dative, 84-  
 87

governance and leadership wi instrumental, 30T

## H

harm with dative, 93-95, 93-94T

have, 134

у +GEN + (есть) +NOM 'have',

иметь 'have' +ACC, 31

with dative, 95-98, 95-96T

having to do something with dative, 100T

how wi instrumental, 28

## I

indifference with dative, 99

indirect object with dative, 84

as subject for further action, 84

without direct object, 84, 87

instrumental case

abstract paths, 21

actions facilitated by instruments, 26

acts of God, 36

adverbs, 28

agent with no subject, 35

basic meaning, network, overview, 19

being and becoming, 37-38T

by what means, 28



case endings, 18T  
 category something belongs to, 36-38  
 conduit for an activity, 20ff.  
 contrast between nominative and ins  
     X=Y sentences, 13-14, 37  
 engagement, 41T  
 enjoyment and strong emotion, 33T  
 exchange, 32T  
 expanses of time and space, 23  
 expressing 'as a group', 29  
 filling and occupying, 32T  
 governance and leadership, 30T  
*how*, 28  
 in places and at times, 23  
 instrumental: an adjunct, 40-43  
 instrumental: a landmark, 43-51  
 instrumental: a label, 36-40  
 instrumental: a means, 20-36  
 meaning 'apply a label to an item', 39, 40T  
 meaning 'is like', 38  
 metaphorical instruments, 24-26  
 moving an item, 26T  
 multiplication, 29  
 non-permanent labels, 36-37  
 parts of the day, 22  
 passive agent, 33-35  
 paths through space, 20ff.  
 paths through time, 22ff.  
 person or object possessed, 31  
 person or object under control, 30  
 physical instruments, 24, 40  
 positive or negative appreciation, 32  
 possession, 31T  
 quantities, 29  
 raw force, 35-36, 66  
 seasons of the year, 22  
 smells and drafts, 35-36  
 stationary paths, 21  
 summary of uses, 51  
 transition from path to instrument,

**instrumental prepositions**  
 за 'beyond, behind; fol    ing after, fetch' +INST, 45-47  
 между 'between, among' +INST, 50-51  
 над 'above' +INST, 47-48  
 перед 'in front of, before', 43-45  
 под 'under' +INST, 49-50  
 с 'with' +INST, 40-43

**instruments**  
 metaphorical instruments with the instrumental, 24-26  
 physical instruments with instrumental, 24, 40  
*is like* with instrumental, 38

## J

joining a group with accusative, 57, 141-142

## L

### labels

non-permanent labels with instrumental, 36-37  
 with instrumental, 36-40, 40T  
 lack with genitive, 132, 135-136, 136T  
 leadership and governance with instrumental, 30T  
*like, be pleasing*, 92-93  
**locative case**  
 "b-words" and "на-words", 144-145, 145T  
 basic meaning, overview, 139  
 case endings, 138T  
 categorization of common "на-words", 145T  
 known as prepositional case, 139  
 locative: a place, 139-151  
 locative in -*ь/ю* with в 'in' and на 'on, at', 148  
 summary of uses, 152  
 words that can be used with both в 'in' and на 'on, at', 145T  
 words that trigger на '    , at' +LOC, 147-148, 147T  
 words that trigger в 'in' +LOC, 142T  
**locative prepositions**  
 в 'in, at a distance of' +LOC, 139-144  
 на 'on, at' +LOC, 144-149, 148T  
 о 'about' +LOC, 150-151  
 по 'after, upon' +LOC, 151, 151T  
 при 'by, at; while, when; with, having' +LOC, 149-151

## M

### marriage,

на +LOC for men, 59, 147T  
 за +ACC for women, 59  
 masculine declension nouns, 156-157  
 membership in a category with genitive, 126  
**modal expressions**  
 having to do something with dative, 100T  
 needing with dative, 95-98, 95-96T, 99-101  
 obligation, 99  
*ought*, 99-100  
*should*, 99-100  
**motion**  
 comparison of prepositions, 104, 112-113  
 metaphorical motion with accusative, 55-56, 58  
 with accusative, 54, 55  
 moving items with instrumental, 26T  
 multiplication with instrumental, 29

## N

names, declension of, 163  
 naming with nominative, 9  
 needing with dative, 95-98, 95-96T  
 negation with genitive, 135  
 neuter declension nouns, 158-159  
**nominative case**  
 adjectives with быть 'be',  
 appositives, 15

basic meaning, network, overview, 9  
 calling and getting attention, 9  
 case endings, 8T  
 contrast between nominative and instrumental i  
 sentences, 13-14, 37  
 dictionary citations, 9  
 fixed X=Y expressions, 14  
 historical vocatives, 10  
 names and titles following generic categories, 15  
 naming and calling, 9-10  
 naming function, 9  
 nominative:an identity, 12-15  
 nominative:a name, 9-12  
 predicate nominative, 12-13  
 rearrangement of word order, 14  
 'have' construction, 12  
 short adjectives with *быть* 'be', 13  
 special vocative form with *-а/-я* names, 10  
 subject of sentence, 10ff.  
 subject of *быть* 'be', 11  
 subject of *быть* 'be' meaning 'have',  
 summary of uses, 15-16  
 the Y in an X=Y sentence, 12  
 word order, 10-11  
 X=Y reduced to X, Y, 15  
 t having any options, *не-* + interrogative pronouns wi  
 dative, 97-98  
 noun types, 154  
 numerals and qu tification  
 declension of, 161-162  
 expressing a number of units with accusative, 72-73  
 quantities and quantifiers with genitive, 129-131, 131T  
 quantities with instrumental, 29  
 with genitive, 125, 129-130  
 words expressing quantities with genitive, 131T

## O

obligation, 99  
 occupying with *ин*  
*of*  
 various prepositions wi  
 129T  
 ith genitive, 124-131  
 ith dative, 99-100

## P

partitive genitive, 130  
 parts and wholes with genitive, 125  
 parts of the day with instrumental, 22  
 passive constructions  
 comparison of conduit and passive agent, 35  
 passive agent in instrumental, 33-35  
 passive participles, 33-35  
 passive verbs with *-ся/-сь*, 33-35  
 relationship between passive and active, 34  
 paths  
 stationary paths with instrumental, 21  
 through space with instrumental, 20ff.  
 through time with instrumental, 22ff.

patient, 64  
 person affected by an event wi  
 possession  
 body parts with dative, 97  
 body parts with *y* 'by', 134  
 person of object possessed wi  
 See also *have*  
 with dative, 95-98  
 with genitive, 125-126  
 with instrumental, 31T  
 possessive pronouns, declensi  
 positions, 54, 78, 80  
*порада* 'later' +ACC, 79T  
 (*тому*) *назад* 'ago' +ACC, 79T, 80  
 predicate nominative, 12-13  
 the Y in an X=Y sentence, 12  
 prepositional case  
 See locative case  
 prepositions  
 overview of accusative prepositions, 54T  
 relationship between *а* and *на*, 58  
 See also accusative prepositions, dative prepo  
 sitions, genitive prepositions, instrumental  
 prepositions, locative prepositions.  
 motion, comparison of prepositions, 112-113  
 notes on prepositions, 162-163  
 various prepositions with genitive, 128-129, 128-  
 129T, 132-133T  
 pronouns  
 declension of, 160  
 purpose with accusative, 54, 67-69

## R

raw forces with instrumental, 35-36, 66

## S

*ъ*, expressed by genitive, 125-131  
 salutations with genitive, 123  
 seasons of the year wi instrumental, 22  
*seeming*, 36  
 as metaphorical extensi  
 dative, 90  
*should*, 99-100  
 signals with dative, 87  
 size and capacity with accusative, 69, 72-73  
 smells and drafts with instrumental, 35-36  
*some* with genitive, 130  
 specific vs. non-specific objects i  
 genitive, 124, 124T  
 spelling rules, 153-154  
 subject of sentence  
 in nominative, 10ff.  
 generic 'they' expressions, 66  
 submission with dative, 103, 103T  
*suit, become* with dative, 93

**T**

## tables

- appearance and manifestation, 89-90T
- being and becoming with instrumental, 37-38T
- benefit, 91-92T
- categorization of common "na-words", 145T
- communication in dative, 87-88T
- engagement in instrumental, 41T
- enjoyment and strong emotion with ins  
33T
- equal or matching forces, 102T
- exchange, 32T
- fear and avoidance, 118T
- feeling like or having to do something, 100T
- filling and occupying with instrumental, 32T
- giving money with dative, 89T
- giving, 85T
- governance and leadership with instrumental, 30T
- harm with dative, 93-94T
- having and needing, 95-96T
- lacking, 136T
- moving an item with instrumental, 26T
- на 'on, at' +LOC in domain of time, 146T
- на 'on, at' +LOC in idiomatic phrases, 148T
- overview of prepositions with accusative, 54T
- possession with instrumental, 31T
- prepositions associated with genitive, 133T
- submission with dative, 103T
- time expressions with accusative, 79T
- various prepositions meaning 'of', 128-129T
- verbs with accusative or genitive, 124T
- words expressing quantities, 131T
- words meaning 'apply a label to an i     ith  
instrumental, 40T
- words meaning 'get', 'approach', '     ith  
genitive, 122T
- words that can be used with both a 'in' and на 'on,  
at', 145T
- words that trigger на 'on, at' +LOC, 147T
- words that trigger в 'in' +LOC, 142T
- no 'after, upon' +LOC in time, 151T
- time expressions
  - 'at times' with instrumental, 23
  - expanses of time and space with instrumental,
  - intervals of time in future or past with accusative,  
77
  - parts of the day with instrumental, 22
  - seasons of the year with instrumental, 22
  - time of day with genitive, 125
  - with accusative, 'in', 'after', 'later', '     ith  
79T
  - with accusative, 62-64
- time of day with genitive, 125
- transfer with dative, 86

**V**

- victims and beneficiaries with dative, 1
- vocative

- calling and getting attention with nominative, 9
- historical vocatives, 10
- naming and calling with nominative, 9-10
- special vocative form with -а/-я names, 10

**W**

- well-being, changes in with dative, 99
- well-wishing with genitive, 123
- word order, 10-11, 14, 65

# Russian Index

## A

аккомпанирование 'accompaniment' +DAT, 102T  
 аккомпанировать 'accompany (music)' +DAT, 102T  
 applaudировать 'applaud' +DAT, 3, 88T

## B

бегóm 'at a run', 28  
 без 'without' +GEN, 133T  
 бесе́да с 'conversation' +INST, 41T  
 беседовать с 'converse' +INST, 41T  
 благодарить/поблагодарить 'thank' +ACC, 88  
 благодарный 'thankful to' +DAT, 91T  
 благодаря 'thanks to' +DAT, 87T, 88  
 благоприятствовать 'favor' +DAT, 91T  
 близ 'near' +GEN, 133T  
 Б́же 'O God!', 10  
 бок ó бок 'side by side', 61  
 бо́лен 'sick' +INST, 32T  
 боле́ть/заболе́ть 'be/get sick w/  
 бо́льше 'more' +GEN, 129  
 бороться с 'struggle, fight' +INST, 41T  
 борьба́ с 'struggle, fight' +INST, 41T  
 боя́ться 'fear' +GEN, 118T  
 броса́ться ка́мнями 'throw stones',  
 быть 'be', 11-15, 36-40, 37-38T  
 adjectives with быть 'be', 13  
 fixed X=Y expressions, 14  
 nominative, short adjectives with быть 'be', 13  
 nominative, subject of быть 'be' meaning 'have',  
 nominative, subject of быть 'be', 11  
 nominative, the Y in an X=Y sentence, 12  
 Russian 'have' construction, 12

## B

в 'in, into, to; during; like; for; on, at; at the end of; by the  
 end of' +ACC, 54-57, 54T, 63, 67, 71, 74, 78-79,  
 79T, 104, 112-113, 115  
 'for' in expressions of purpose, 67  
 'in' in domain of space, 78  
 'in, at; at the end of', 54T  
 'in, by the end of' in time runni  
 sions, 79, 79T  
 'in, during' with duration, 71  
 'in, during; like', 54T  
 'in, into; on, at; for', 54T, 54-57  
 'in, to, into' with destinations, 104  
 'on, at' in time expressions, 63  
 'to', 112-113, 115  
 comparisons, 74  
 'in; at a distance of' +LOC, 139-1  
 'at a distance of', 140  
 'in' in time, 141  
 'in' with containers, 139-40

"a-words" and "na-words", 144-145, 145T  
 в а́дрес 'directed toward' +GEN, 128T  
 в ви́де 'in the form of' +GEN, 128T  
 в го́сти/в го́стях 'go on a visit/be visiting', 57, 141-142  
 в гра́ницах 'within the bounds of' +GEN, 128T  
 в де́ле 'in the case of' +GEN, 128T  
 в зна́к 'as a mark/token of' +GEN, 128T  
 в ка́честве 'in the capacity of' +GEN, 128T  
 в на́правле́нии 'in the direction of' +GEN, 128T  
 в о́бласти 'in the area of' +GEN, 128T  
 в о́твет на 'in answer to' +ACC, 68  
 в о́тноше́нии 'in the relation of, with respect to' +GEN,  
 128T

в пе́рвый раз 'the first time', 63  
 в по́льзу 'in favor of, on behalf of' +GEN, 128T  
 в по́следний раз 'the last time', 63  
 в пре́делах 'within the limits/bounds of' +GEN, 128T  
 в про́долже́нии 'in the course of' +GEN, 128T  
 в ра́мках 'within the limits/framework of' +GEN, 128T  
 в ре́зультате 'as a result of' +GEN, 128T  
 в ро́ли 'in the role of' +GEN, 128T  
 в слу́чае 'in case of' +GEN, 128T  
 в смы́сле 'in the sense of, as regards' +GEN, 128T  
 в сфе́ре 'in the realm of' +GEN, 128T  
 в те́чение 'in the course of' +GEN, 128T  
 в у́словиях 'in the conditions of' +GEN, 128T  
 в че́сть 'in honor of' +GEN, 128T  
 в числе́ 'in the number of, among' +GEN, 128T  
 в бли́зях 'nearby' +GEN, 133T  
 вверх но́гами 'upside down', 21  
 ви́дью 'in view of' +GEN, 132, 133T  
 вдоль 'along' +GEN, 133T  
 ве́зти/пове́зти 'be lucky' +DAT, 91T  
 ве́леть/пове́леть 'order' +DAT, 87T  
 ве́ра в +ACC 'believe/belief in', 75  
 ве́рять/пове́рять 'believe' +DAT, 83, 103T  
 ве́рять в +ACC 'believe/belief in', 75  
 ве́рность 'faithfulness, loyalty' +DAT, 103T  
 ве́рный 'loyal' +DAT, 103T  
 ве́рхово́дить 'lead' +INST, 30T  
 ве́рхом 'riding a horse', 28  
 ве́сной 'in the spring', 22  
 ве́сти за́ руку 'lead by the hand', 60  
 ве́сти се́бя 'behave oneself as' +INST, 37T  
 ве́чером 'in the evening', 22  
 вза́мен 'in place of' +GEN, 133T  
 взя́ться за́ руку 'join hands', 60  
 ви́деться с 'see (each other)' +INST, 41T  
 вля́дение 'possession' +INST, 31T  
 вля́деть 'possess' +INST, 31T  
 вме́сто 'in the place of' +GEN, 133T  
 вне 'outside of' +GEN, 133T  
 вне пре́делов 'beyond the limits of' +GEN, 128T  
 вне ра́мок 'beyond the bounds/framework/context of'  
 +GEN, 128T  
 вну́три 'inside' +GEN, 128  
 во вре́мя 'in the time of, during' +GEN, 1  
 во и́мя 'in the name of' +GEN, 128T  
 во́евать с 'wage war' +INST, 41T  
 возвра́щать/возврати́ть/верну́ть 'return' +

возиться/повозиться с 'romp, play' +INST, 41T  
 возле 'near' +GEN, 133T  
 возмущаться/возмутиться 'be indignant at' +INST, 33T  
 возмущён 'indignant at' +INST, 33T  
 возмущение 'indignation at' +INST, 33T  
 возня с 'romp(ing), play(ing)' +INST, 41T  
 возражать/возразить 'oppose' +DAT, 93T  
 возражение 'objection' +DAT, 93T  
 война с 'war' +INST, 41T  
 вокруг 'around' +GEN, 133T  
 воображать/вообразить 'imagine (as)' +INST, 40T  
 вопреки 'in spite of, against, contrary to' +DAT, 93T, 95  
 вorchание 'controlling' +INST, 31T  
 вorchать 'have control of' +INST, 31T  
 восторгаться 'be delighted with' +INST, 33T  
 восхизяться/восхизиться 'be carried away by, adm' +INST, 33T  
 восхищение 'alight, admiration' +INST, 33T  
 вперёд 'in front of' +GEN, 133T  
 враждебный 'hostile' +DAT, 93T  
 вред 'harm' +DAT, 93T  
 вредить/повредить 'injure, harm' +  
 вредный 'harmful' +DAT, 93T  
 время/времена 'time, times' in time expressi  
 вроде 'like' +GEN, 133T  
 вручать/вручить 'deliver, entrust' +  
 вручение 'delivery' +DAT, 85T  
 всё равно 'all equal', 99  
 Всего доброго/лучшего! 'All the best!',  
 встреча с 'meeting' +INST, 41T  
 встречаться/встретиться с 'meet' +INST, 41T  
 выбирать/выбрать 'select (as)' +INST, 40T  
 выглядеть 'look like' +INST, 37T  
 выдавать/выдать 'give out, issue' +DAT, 85T  
 выдача 'issue' +DAT, 85T  
 выдвигаться в руководители 'be promoted to  
 manager' +ACC, 57  
 выканье 'saying вы to' +DAT, 87T  
 выкать 'say вы to' +DAT, 87T  
 вырасти 'grow up to be' +INST, 37T  
 выходить/выйти замуж за 'marry (for women)' +ACC,  
 59

## Г

гнушаться/погнушаться 'abhor, disdain'  
 +INST+GEN, 33T, 118T  
 говорить/сказать 'speak, tell' +DAT, 87T  
 говорить/сказать на (русском/английском языке)  
 'speak (Russian/English, etc.)' +LOC, 147T  
 говорящий на (русском/английском языке) 'speaker  
 of (Russian/English, etc.)' +LOC, 147T  
 годяться 'be good for' +DAT, 91T  
 годный 'be good for' +DAT, 91T  
 годы 'years in time expressions, 71  
 горд 'proud of' +INST, 33T  
 гордиться 'be proud of' +INST, 33T  
 Господи 'O Lord!', 10  
 готовиться/подготовиться к 'prepare for' +DAT, 106

грэниться/пригрэниться 'appear to in a dream' +DAT,  
 89T  
 грозить/пригрозить 'threaten' +DAT, 87T, 93T  
 грубить/нагрубить 'be rude to' +DAT, 93T

## Д

давать/дать 'give' +DAT, 84, 85T  
 даваться/даться 'come to; allow oneself to be caught by'  
 +DAT, 89T  
 дарение 'giving' +DAT, 85T  
 дарить/подарить 'give (as a gift)' +DAT, 84, 85T  
 дать +DAT 'give', 83  
 двйгать/двйнуть рукой/ногой 'move e's hand/foot',  
 26T  
 делаты/сделаты 'make' +INST, 40T  
 делиться/поделиться с 'share' +INST, 31, 41T  
 держаться 'hold to' +GEN, 122T  
 дерзять/вадерзять 'be impertinent to' +DAT, 93T  
 дефицит 'deficit' +GEN, 136T  
 дивяться 'marvel at' +DAT, 103T  
 дирижирование 'conducting' +INST, 30T  
 дирижировать 'conduct (a musical group)' +INST, 30T  
 дичиться 'shy away from' +GEN, 118T  
 длаться 'last', 70  
 для 'for' +GEN, 121  
 до 'to, up to; until, before' +GEN, 118-120  
 до свидания 'goodbye', 119  
 до сих пор, 119  
 до тех пор 'until that time', 119  
 до того 'before that' +ACC, 79T  
 днём 'in the afternoon', 22  
 добиваться/добиться 'get, obtain' +GEN, 122T  
 доверие 'trust' +DAT, 103T  
 доверять(ся)/ довериты(ся) 'trust' +DAT, 103T  
 доволен 'satisfied with' +INST, 33T  
 довольство 'satisfaction with' +INST, 33T  
 довольствоваться/удовольствоваться 'be satisfied with'  
 +INST, 33T  
 договариваться/договориться с 'come to an agreement,  
 make an arrangement' +INST, 41T  
 договор с 'agreement, arrangement' +INST, 41  
 должен 'owe, be obligated to' +DAT, 103T  
 дорожить 'value' +INST, 33T  
 досаждять/досадить 'annoy' +DAT, 93T  
 доставаться/достаться 'go to, fall to one's lot,  
 inherited by' +DAT, 89T  
 достаток 'sufficient quantity' +INST, 131T  
 достаточно 'sufficient(ly), enough' +DAT+GEN, 95T,  
 131T  
 достаточный 'sufficient' +DAT, 95T  
 достигать/достичуть/достичь 'attain, reach' +GEN,  
 122T  
 достойный 'worthy' +GEN, 122T  
 дрка с 'fight' +INST, 41T  
 драться/подражаться с 'fight' +INST, 41T

## Е

эздить/эхать на (поезде/автобусе) 'ride in (a train/a bus,  
 etc.)' +LOC, 147T

## Ж

- жалы/жáлко +GEN or +ACC 'regret, pity',  
 ждать 'wait for' +GEN or +ACC, 124Т  
 желать/пожелать 'desire, wish' +GEN, 122Т, 123  
 женитьба on 'marriage to (when man takes a wife)' +LOC,  
 147Т  
 жениться на 'get married to (for men)' +LOC, 59, 147Т  
 жертвование/пожертвование 'sacrificing/sacrifice'  
 +INST, 32Т  
 жертвовать/пожертвовать 'sacrifice, give up',  
 +INST/+DAT, 32Т, 89Т  
 жить 'live' +DAT, 101

## З

- за 'beyond, behind, to the far/back side of; for; during, in  
 the course of; in, by the end of; away; grabbing,  
 holding; in support of; more than' +ACC, 54Т,  
 59-60, 68-69, 71-72, 78-79, 79Т  
 'away' +ACC in domain of space, 78  
 'away; by the end of' +ACC, 54Т  
 'behind; for' +ACC, 54Т  
 'beyond, behind' +ACC, 59-60  
 'during' +ACC, 54Т  
 'during, in the course of' +ACC with duration, 71-72  
 'for' +ACC in expressions of purpose, 68-69  
 'for' +ACC with exchange, 69  
 'grabbing, holding' +ACC, 60  
 'in support of' +ACC, 68  
 'in, by the end of' +ACC in time running forward  
 expressions, 79, 79Т  
 'more than' +ACC, 60  
 за 'beyond, behind; following after, fetch' +INST, 43, 45-47  
 'fetch' +INST, 47  
 'following after' +INST, 46  
 за 'what kind of' +NOM, 14  
 за +ACC...до того/перед тем 'before that',  
 за границу 'abroad', 60  
 за обедом 'during lunch, at lunch', 46  
 за рулём 'behind the (steering) wheel', 46  
 за столом 'at the table', 46  
 за счёт 'at the expense of' +GEN, 128Т  
 заведение 'managing, management' +INST, 30Т  
 завладеть 'manage' +INST, 30Т  
 заведующий 'manager' +INST, 30Т  
 заверение в 'assurance of' +LOC, 142Т  
 заверять/заверить в 'assure of' +LOC, 142Т  
 завещать 'bequeath' +DAT, 85Т  
 завидовать 'envy' +DAT, 93Т  
 зависеть от 'depend on' +GEN, 117  
 зависимость от 'dependence on' +GEN, 117  
 зависимый от 'depending on' +GEN, 117  
 заключаться/заклю́чаться в 'consist, lie in' +LOC, 142Т  
 заниматься 'be occupied with, study' +INST, 32Т  
 занятие 'occupation, studies' +INST, 32Т  
 запомниться 'become fixed in one's memory' +DAT, 90Т  
 запрещать/запретить 'forbid' +DAT, 93Т  
 запутываться/запутаться в 'get tangled up in, get  
 involved in' +LOC, 142Т

- заслуживать/заслужить 'deserve, merit' +GEN, 12  
 заставить/застыть 'find (as)' +INST, 40Т  
 звонить/позвонить 'call' +DAT, 87Т  
 звонок 'call' +DAT, 87Т  
 зимой 'in the winter', 22  
 злоупотребление 'abuse', +INST, 30Т  
 злоупотреблять/злоупотребить 'abuse' +INST, 30Т  
 знаком с 'acquainted' +INST, 41Т  
 знакомиться/познакомиться с 'become acquainted'  
 +INST, 41Т  
 знакомство с 'acquaintance' +INST, 41Т  
 значиться 'appear, be mentioned as' +INST, 3  
 знобить 'have the chills' +ACC, 66

## И

- игрá на (ро́ле/фле́йте/гитáре) 'playing (the piano/  
 flute/guitar, etc.)' +LOC, 147Т  
 играть на (ро́ле/фле́йте/гитáре) 'play (the piano/  
 flute/guitar, etc.)' +LOC, 147Т  
 играть в +ACC 'play' with various activities, 75  
 играть в кошки-мышки 'play cat-and-mouse', 57  
 идентичность 'identicalness' +DAT, 102Т  
 идентичный 'identical' +DAT, 102Т  
 идти 'suit, become' +DAT, 91Т, 93  
 из 'from' +GEN, 112-113, 113-115  
 из-за 'from beyond, because of' +GEN, 11  
 из-под 'from beneath' +GEN, 115  
 избегать/избежать 'avoid' +GEN, 118Т  
 избирать/избрать 'elect (as)' +INST, 40Т  
 известно 'known to' +DAT, 95Т  
 известный 'known to' +DAT, 90Т, 95Т  
 измена 'betrayal' +DAT, 93Т  
 изменить/изменить 'cheat on, betray' +DAT, 93Т, 94  
 изображать/изобразить 'depict, portray, represent (as)'  
 +INST, 40Т  
 изоморфность 'isomorphism' +DAT, 102Т  
 изоморфный 'isomorphic' +DAT, 102Т  
 изощрение в 'refinement in' +LOC, 142Т  
 изощряться/изощриться в 'excel in' +LOC, 142Т  
 иметь 'have' +ACC, 31  
 импонировать 'impress' +DAT, 90Т  
 интересоваться 'be interested' +INST, 33Т  
 искать 'seek' +GEN or +ACC, 124Т  
 исполненный 'full' +GEN, 131Т  
 исполняться/исполниться 'be filled with' +INST/  
 +GEN, 32Т, 131Т  
 исходить из 'proceed from',

## К

- к 'to, toward' +DAT, 104-107, 112-113, 137  
 к сожалению 'unfortunately', 106-107  
 каждый 'every', 70  
 как 'like', 9-10  
 казаться/показаться 'seem, appear' +INST/+  
 90Т  
 касаться/коснуться 'touch; concern' +GEN, 122Т, 123  
 катание на (коньках/лodge) 'going (ice-skating/  
 boating, etc.)' +LOC, 147Т

катяться на (коньках/лодке) 'go (ice-skating/boat etc.)' +LOC, 147T  
кивать/кивнуть 'nod' +DAT, 88T  
клянутся/поклониться 'bow' +DAT, 88T  
командование 'commanding' +INST, 30T  
командовать 'command' +INST, 30, 30T  
компенсация 'compensation' +DAT, 89T  
компенсировать 'compensate' +DAT, 89T  
конец 'end to' +DAT, 9T  
контроль над 'control over' +INST, 48  
кроме 'besides, except, aside from' +GEN, 133T  
кругом 'around', 28  
крутить/закрутить рулём 'turn a steering wheel', 26T  
крыльцо о три ступеньки 'a porch with three steps', 73

## Л

легко 'easy for' +DAT, 99  
летать/лететь на (самолёте) ' +LOC, 147T  
лётom 'in the summer', 22  
лишать/лишить 'deprive' +GEN, 136T  
лишаться/лишиться 'be deprived' +GEN, 136T  
лицепный 'deprived' +GEN, 136T  
ловкий в 'clever at' +LOC, 142T  
ловкость в 'cleverness in' +LOC, 142T  
лстать/польстать 'flatter' +DAT, 87T

## М

мáло 'few/little' +GEN, 129  
махать/замахать рукой 'wave one's hand',  
махать/помахать 'wave' +DAT, 88T  
меж двух жерновов 'between a rock and a hard place',  
134  
между 'between, among' +INST, 43, 50-51  
мéжду тем 'meanwhile', 51  
мéньше 'fewer/less' +GEN, 129  
меняться 'exchange' +INST, 32T  
мерещиться/померещиться 'appear to, haunt' +  
90T  
мestь 'revenge' +DAT, 93T  
мешать/помешать 'hinder, annoy' +DAT, 93T  
мáю 'by, past' +GEN, 133T  
мнóго 'many/much' +GEN, 129  
мóжно 'possible' +DAT, 95T  
молéбен 'prayer service' +DAT, 87T  
молáтва 'prayer' +DAT, 87T  
молáться/помолáться 'pray' +DAT, 87T  
молáщийся 'person who is praying' +DAT, 87T  
моргáть/моргáнуть 'blink, wink' +DAT, 88T  
мстáть/отомстáть 'take revenge' +DAT, 93T  
мы с +INST 'X and I', 42

## Н

"на-words" and "в-wo s", 144-145, 145T  
на 'to, on, onto; on, at; for, lasting' +ACC, 54T, 58-59,  
61, 71, 115  
'amount by' +ACC vi

'at, on, onto' +ACC expressing locations or opinions  
with various activities, 75  
'for' +ACC in expressions of purpose, 68  
'for, lasting; to' +ACC with duration, 54T, 71  
'on' +ACC in time expressions, 63  
'to' +ACC with destinations, 104, 112-113  
на 'on, at' +LOC, 139, 144-149, 148T  
'on, at' +LOC in domain of time, 146, 146T  
на 'here' (not the preposition) +ACC, 67  
на мой (твой, её, его...) взгляд 'in my (your, her, his...) opinion', 75  
на одну неделю 'for one week', 71  
на основании 'on the basis of' +GEN, 128T  
на пути 'on the path of' +GEN, 128T  
на этот раз 'this/that time', 63  
набираться/набрáться 'collect, pick up' +GEN, 131T  
навстрéчу 'toward, to meet' +DAT, 90T  
над 'above, over' +INST, 43, 47-48, 49  
нáдо 'need to' +DAT, 96T, 96  
надóлгать/надóлгать 'get on nerves of' +DAT, 93T  
наедáться/наебáться 'eat/have one's fill' +GEN, 131T  
пáздáт 'ago' +ACC, 79T, 80  
назначáть/назначáть 'appoint, nominate ( )' +INST, 40T  
назывáть/назвáть 'name' +INST, 40T  
назывáться/назвáться 'be named' +INST, 37T  
наканúне 'on the eve of' +GEN, 133T  
наподобие 'in the likeness of' +GEN, 132, 133T  
наполня́ться/наполнáваться 'get filled up with' +INST,  
32T  
напоминáние 'reminder' +DAT, 87T  
напоминáть/напоминáть 'remind' +DAT, 87T  
напрóтив 'opposite' +GEN, 133T  
насчúть 'bore' +DAT, 93T  
наслаждáться 'enjoy' +INST, 33T  
наслаждéние 'enjoyment' +INST, 33T  
настáивание на 'insistence on' +LOC, 147T  
настáивать/настáить на 'insist on' +LOC, 147T  
насчёт 'on the matter of' +GEN, 132, 133T  
не- + interrogative pronouns (нéчего, нéкогда, нé с кем,  
etc.) +DAT, 97-98  
не до 'isn't interested/doesn't want' +GEN/+DAT, 99, 120  
не при чём 'irrelevant', 150  
невозмóжно 'impossible' +DAT, 96T  
недостава́ть/недоста́ть 'be lacking' +GEN, 136T  
недоста́ток 'lack' +GEN, 136T  
немнóго 'not many/much' +GEN, 129  
не́сколько 'some', 129  
нестá 'reek, stink' +INST, 36  
нехватка 'shortage' +GEN, 136T  
но́чью 'at night', 22  
прáвиться/попрáвиться 'like, be pleasing' +DAT, 91T,  
92-93, 96  
нужá в 'need of' +LOC, 142T  
нужáться в 'need' +LOC, 142T  
нужен 'needed' +DAT, 96T, 96  
нужно 'need to' +DAT, 96T, 96  
нужный 'needed' +DAT, 96T, 96

## O

- о 'against, with' +ACC, 61, 73  
 'against' +ACC, 54T, 61  
 'with' +ACC with size and capacity, 54T, 73
- о 'about' +LOC, 150-151
- обвинение в 'accusation of' +LOC, 142T  
 обвинять/обвинять в 'accuse of, charge with' +LOC, 142T
- обещать 'promise' +DAT, 87T
- обидный 'offensive' +DAT, 94T
- обладание 'possession' +INST, 31T
- обладать 'possess' +INST, 31T
- обманываться/обмануться в 'be deceived, disappointed in' +LOC, 142T
- оборачиваться/обернуться 'turn into' +INST, 37T
- общаться с 'associate, be friendly' +INST, 41T
- общение с 'associating, association' +INST, 41T
- объявлять/объявить 'declare, announce' +INST, 40T
- объяснить/объяснить 'explain' +DAT, 87T
- обязательно 'required' +DAT, 96T
- обязательный 'required' +DAT, 96T
- овладение 'taking possession of' +INST, 31T
- овладевать/овладеть 'take possession of' +INST, 31T
- один из 'one of' +GEN, 114
- ожидать 'expect' +GEN or +ACC, 124T
- оказывать/оказать 'render' +DAT, 85T
- оказываться/оказаться 'turn out to be; find oneself in' +INST/+LOC, 37T, 142T
- около 'around; approximately' +GEN, 133T
- опостылять 'grow hateful to' +DAT, 93T
- опозиция 'opposition' +DAT, 94T
- опыт в 'experience in' +LOC, 142T
- опытный в 'experienced in' +LOC, 142T
- ортогональный 'orthogonal' +DAT, 102T
- осенью 'in the fall', 22
- основываться/основаться на 'be based on' +LOC, 147T
- оставаться/остаться 'stay, remain, continue to be, be necessary' +INST/+DAT, 37T, 100T
- оставлять/оставить 'leave (for)' +DAT, 85T
- остерегаться/остеречься 'beware' +GEN, 118T
- осточереть 'bore, repel' +DAT, 93T
- от 'from' +GEN, 112-113, 115-117, 137  
 'from' +GEN expressing cause, 117  
 'from' +GEN in time expressions, 117  
 'from' +GEN with human beings, 115-116
- ответ 'answer' +DAT, 87T
- отвечать 'answer; correspond, be responsive' +DAT, 87T, 102T
- отвечать/отвечать на 'answer' +ACC, 68
- отдавать 'reek, stink' +INST, 36
- отказ в 'refusal of' +LOC, 142T
- отказывать/отказать в 'refuse, deny' +LOC, 142T
- отправлять/отправить 'send, dispatch' +DAT, 85T
- отражаться/отразиться на 'affect, have impact on' +LOC, 147T
- отражение на 'affect, impact on' +LOC, 147T
- отчёт в 'account of, report on' +LOC, 142T
- отчитываться/отчитаться в 'give an account of, report on' +LOC, 142T

## П

- пахнуть 'smell' +INST, 35
- перед 'in front of, before' +INST, 43-45
- перед тем 'before that' +ACC, 79T
- перед тем, как 'before', 44
- передавать/передать 'pass, convey' +DAT, 85T
- передача 'passing; broadcast' +DAT, 85T
- переписка с 'correspondence (exchange of letters)' +INST, 41T
- переписываться с 'correspond (exchange letters)' +INST, 41T
- перечить 'contradict' +DAT, 93T
- пешком 'on foot', 28
- писать/написать 'write' +DAT, 88T
- письмо 'letter' +DAT, 88T
- плавать/плыть на (пароходе/челне) 'sail on (a steamboat/a canoe, etc.)' +LOC, 147T
- плата, зарплата 'pay, wages' +DAT, 89T
- платить/заплатить 'pay' +DAT, 89T
- пленяться 'be fascinated by' +INST, 33T
- по 'up to; after, to get; through; for what amount' + 61-63, 72-73  
 'after, to get' +ACC, 62  
 'each' +ACC, 54T, 61  
 'for what amount' +ACC with size and capacity, 73  
 'through' +ACC with duration, 54T, 72  
 'up to; after, to get' +ACC, 54T, 61-63  
 по 'along, according to; due to' +DAT, 107-109  
 'according to' +DAT in reasoning, 108  
 'along' +DAT expressing distribution, 108  
 'along' +DAT expressing frequency, 107-108  
 'due to' +DAT in causation, 108-109
- по 'after, upon' +LOC, 151, 151T
- по всей видимости 'to all appearances', 109
- по истечении срока 'after the deadline is passed', 151T
- по мере 'according to the measure of, as far as' +GEN, 128T
- по окончании работы 'after (the end of) work', 151T
- по поводу 'on the occasion of, concerning' +GEN, 128T
- по причине 'by reason of' +GEN, 128T
- по прибытии 'after/upon arrival', 151T
- по рассмотрению 'upon examination', 151T
- по случаю 'by reason of' +GEN, 128T
- повноваться 'obey' +DAT, 103T
- повнование 'obedience' +DAT, 103T
- погибнуть 'die (as)' +INST, 38T
- погодя 'later' +ACC in time running forward expressions, 79T
- под 'under; toward; for use as; like' +ACC, 54T, 62, 64, 69, 74-76  
 'for use as' +ACC in expressions of purpose', 69  
 'like' +ACC in comparisons, 74  
 'to the tune of' +ACC, 54T, 75-76  
 'toward' +ACC in time expressions, 64
- под 'under' +INST, 49-50
- под видом 'under the guise of' +GEN, 128T
- под гарантию 'be means of a guarantee', 62
- под залою 'on the security of', 62
- под именем 'in the name of' +GEN, 128T



- под названием 'under the title of' +GEN, 129Т  
 подмигивание 'winking' +DAT, 88Т  
 подмигивать/подмигнуть 'wink' +DAT, 88Т  
 подозрять/заподозрить в 'suspect of' +LOC, 142Т  
 подозрение в 'suspicion of' +LOC, 142Т  
 подпевание 'singing along' +DAT, 102Т  
 подпевать 'sing along' +DAT, 102Т  
 под предлогом 'on the pretext of' +GEN, 129Т  
 подарок 'gift' +DAT, 85Т  
 подвергаться/подвергнуться 'undergo, be subject to' +DAT, 103Т  
 подтверждение 'liability to' +DAT, 103Т  
 подверженный 'subject to' +DAT, 103Т  
 поддаться/поддаться 'give in to' +DAT, 103Т  
 поддакивание 'saying yes to' +DAT, 87Т  
 поддакивать/поддакнуть 'say yes to' +DAT, 87Т  
 подле 'beside' +GEN, 133Т  
 подлежать 'be subject to' +DAT, 103Т  
 подлежащий 'subject to' +DAT, 103Т  
 подобный 'similar' +DAT, 102-103Т  
 подражание 'imitation' +DAT, 103Т  
 подражать 'imitate' +DAT, 103Т  
 подчинение 'subordination, subjection' +DAT, 103Т  
 подчиненный 'subordinate to' +DAT, 103Т  
 подчиняться/подчиниться 'submit to, obey' +DAT, 103Т  
 поездка на (поезде/автобусе) 'trip by (train/bus, etc.)' +LOC, 147Т  
 пожертвование 'donation' +DAT, 89Т  
 пожимать/пожать плечами 'shrug one's shoul-  
 26Т  
 позади 'behind' +GEN, 133Т  
 позволенный 'permitted' +DAT, 91Т  
 позволить/позволять 'allow, permit' +DAT, 91Т  
 показание 'testimony, evidence' +DAT, 85Т  
 показывать/показать 'show' +DAT, 85Т  
 показывать/показать пальцем 'point one's finger',  
 26Т  
 поклон 'bow' +DAT, 88Т  
 поклонение 'worship' +DAT, 103Т  
 поклоняться 'worship' +DAT, 103Т  
 покорный 'obedient to' +DAT, 103Т  
 покоряться/покориться 'submit to, obey' +  
 покровительство 'patronage' +DAT, 91Т  
 покровительствовать 'patronize, support' +DAT, 91Т  
 покровительствующий 'patron' +DAT, 91Т  
 покрывать/покрыть стол скатертью 'cover a table',  
 26Т  
 покупать/купить 'buy' +DAT, 85Т  
 полезный 'useful' +DAT, 92Т  
 полёт на (самолёте) 'flight in (a plane, etc.)' +LOC,  
 147Т  
 ползком 'at a crawl', 28  
 полный 'full' +GEN, 131Т  
 полно 'full of' +INST, 32Т  
 польза 'use' +DAT, 92Т  
 пользование 'use' +INST, 30Т  
 пользоваться/воспользоваться 'use' +INST, 30Т  
 полюбить 'become attractive to' +DAT, 91Т  
 помеха 'hinder, annoy' +DAT, 93Т  
 помимо 'aside from' +GEN, 133Т  
 помогать/помочь 'help' +DAT, 91Т  
 помощь 'help' +DAT, 91Т  
 поперёк 'across' +GEN, 133Т  
 поручать/поручить 'entrust' +DAT, 85Т  
 по-своему 'in one's own way', 109  
 посвящать/посвящать 'dedicate' +DAT, 85Т  
 посвящение, 'dedication' +DAT, 85Т  
 послание 'message, epistle' +DAT, 88Т  
 после 'after' +GEN, 133Т  
 после того 'after that' +ACC, 79Т  
 посреди 'in the middle of' +GEN, 128  
 поставка 'supply, delivery' +DAT, 85Т  
 поставлять/поставить 'supply' +DAT, 85Т  
 поступаться/поступиться 'waive, forgo' +INST, 3  
 послать/послать 'send' +DAT, 85Т  
 посылка 'sending; parcel' +DAT, 85Т  
 потребность в 'need of' +LOC, 142Т  
 похож на 'looks like, resembles, 74  
 править 'govern' +INST, 30Т  
 правление 'governing, government' +INST, 3  
 предводительствование 'leading' +INST, 30Т  
 предводительствовать 'lead' +INST, 30Т  
 предлагать/предложить 'offer' +DAT, 85Т  
 предложение 'offer' +DAT, 85Т  
 предоставление 'grant(ing)' +DAT, 85Т  
 предоставлять/предоставить 'grant' +DAT, 85Т  
 предпочитать/предпочесть 'prefer (something el )  
 over' +DAT, 93Т, 94  
 представление 'introduction' +DAT, 90Т  
 представлять/представиться 'introduce oneself to'  
 +DAT, 90Т  
 предстоить 'lie ahead, be destin to, have to' +DAT, 100Т  
 представляться/предстаться 'pretend to be' +INST,  
 38Т  
 предшествовать 'go in front of, precede' +DAT, 90Т,  
 102Т  
 предшествие 'precession' +DAT, 102Т  
 прежде 'before' +GEN, 133Т  
 пренебречь 'despise' +INST, 33Т  
 препятствовать 'hinder, interfere' +DAT, 93Т  
 при 'by, at, while, when; with, having' +LOC, 149-151  
 при помощи 'with the help of' +GEN, 129Т  
 при посредстве 'by means of' +GEN, 129Т  
 при себе 'on oneself, with oneself', 149  
 при условии 'on the condition of' +GEN, 129Т  
 при чём 'why', 150  
 прибавлять(ся)/прибавить(ся) 'increase, add' +GEN,  
 131Т  
 признавать/признать 'recognize (as)' +INST, 40Т  
 признаваться/признаться в 'confess to' +LOC, 142Т  
 признание в 'confession of' +LOC, 142Т  
 приказание 'order' +DAT, 87Т  
 приказывать/приказать 'order' +DAT, 87Т  
 принадлежать 'belong to' +DAT, 93Т  
 приносить/принести 'bring' +DAT, 85Т  
 приношение 'bringing' +DAT, 85Т  
 присущий 'inherent, characteristic' +DAT, 96Т  
 притворяться/притвориться 'pretend to be' +INST, 38Т  
 происходит/прийти 'have to, happen to' +DAT, 100Т

Приятного аппетита! 'Bon appetit!',  
 приятный 'pleasant' +DAT, 92T  
 про 'about, for' +ACC, 54T, 69, 75-76  
 провести время 'spend time', 70  
 продавать/продать 'sell' +DAT, 85T  
 продажа 'sale' +DAT, 85T  
 просить/попросить 'request' +GEN or +ACC, 124T  
 протест 'protest' +DAT, 87T  
 протестовать 'protest' +DAT, 87T  
 против 'against, opposite' +GEN, 68, 121-122  
 противиться/воспротивиться 'oppose' +DAT, 93T  
 противопление 'opposition' +DAT, 93T  
 противный 'opposite, contrary' +DAT, 93T  
 противоборствовать 'oppose, fight against' +DAT, 93T  
 противодействовать 'oppose, counteract' +DAT, 94T  
 противопоставление 'opposing, contrasting' +DAT, 94T  
 противопоставлять/противопоставить 'oppose, contrast' +DAT, 94T  
 противоречить 'contradict' +DAT, 94T  
 противоречие 'contradiction' +DAT, 94T  
 противостать 'withstand; be opposite (of stars)' +  
 102T  
 прощать/простить 'forgive, pardon' +DAT, 91T  
 прощаться/проститься с 'say farewell' +INST, 41T  
 прощения с 'saying farewell' +INST, 41T  
 пугаться/испугаться 'be frightened' +GEN, 118T  
 путаница в 'confusion' +LOC, 142T

## P

работать 'work (as)' +INST, 38T  
 работать над 'work on' +INST, 48  
 равносильный ('equally) matched' +DAT, 102T  
 равный 'equal' +DAT, 102T  
 равняться 'equal' +DAT, 102T  
 ради 'for the sake of' +GEN, 121  
 радировать 'radio' +DAT, 88T  
 радоваться/обрадоваться 'rejoice at' +DAT, 103T  
 раз 'time, occurrence' in time expressions, 63, 70  
 раз в неделю 'once a week', 71  
 разговаривать с 'converse' +INST, 41T  
 разговор с 'conversation' +INST, 41T  
 раздавать/раздать 'hand out, distribute' +  
 раздача 'distribution' +DAT, 85T  
 разобраться/разбираться в 'understand' +LOC, 142T  
 разом 'at once', 28  
 разочарование in 'disappointment in' +LOC, 142T  
 разочаровываться/разочароваться in 'be disappoint  
 +LOC, 142T  
 располагать 'have at one's disposal' +INST, 31T  
 располагаться/распорядиться 'manage' +INST, 30T  
 распоряжение 'managing, management' +INST, 30T  
 рассчитывать/расчитаться с 'settle accounts' +INST,  
 41T  
 рвать 'vomit' +ACC, 66  
 родиться 'be born ( )' +INST, 38T  
 руководить 'lead, direct' +INST, 30, 30T  
 руководство 'leadership, guidance' +INST, 30T  
 рукоплескание 'applause' +DAT, 88T  
 рукоплескать 'applaud, clap' +DAT, 88T

## C

с 'approximately' +ACC in comparisons,  
 с 'with' +INST, 40-43  
 'with' +INST with interpersonal  
 42, 41T  
 с 'from' +GEN, 112-113, 115-116, 119  
 'from' +GEN with human beings as source, 116  
 С днём рождения! 'Happy Birthday!', 42  
 С новым годом! 'Happy New Year!', 42  
 С праздником! 'Happy Holiday!', 42  
 с помощью 'with the help of' +GEN, 129T  
 С Рождеством! 'Merry Christmas!', 42  
 с тех пор 'from that time on', 116  
 с точки зрения 'from the point of view of' +GEN,  
 129T  
 с целью 'with the goal of' +GEN, 129T  
 самá по себе 'in itself/on its own', 109  
 сверх 'over, above' +GEN, 133T  
 свойственно 'characteristic of' +DAT, 96T  
 свойственный 'characteristic of' +DAT, 96T  
 связываться/связаться с 'communicate, get in contact,  
 be associated' +INST, 41T  
 связь с 'association, contact' +INST, 41T  
 сдавать/сдать 'hand over, surrender' +DAT, 85T  
 сдаваться/сдаться 'surrender, yield to' +DAT, 103T  
 сдача 'handing over, surrender; change (money back)'  
 +DAT, 85T, 89T  
 сесть за руль 'take the wheel', 59  
 сесть за стол 'sit down at the table', .  
 сигнал 'signal' +DAT, 88T  
 сигнализировать(ся) 'signal' +DAT, 88T  
 сигнализировать 'signal' +DAT, 88T  
 симпатизировать 'sympathize' +  
 симпатизирующий 'supporter' +  
 симпатичен 'nice' +DAT, 91T  
 симпатия 'sympathy' +DAT, 91T  
 сказать 'proclaim, report oneself (as)' +INST, 38T  
 сквозь 'through' +ACC, 54T, 75  
 сколько 'how many' +GEN, 129  
 Сколько с меня? 'How much do I owe you?',  
 скучать по 'miss' +DAT or +LOC, 151  
 следование 'movement, proceeding' +DAT, 103T  
 следовать/последовать 'follow' +DAT, 103T  
 служба/служение 'service' +DAT, 92T  
 служить 'serve (as)' +INST, 38T  
 служить/послужить 'serve' +DAT, 92T  
 слушаться/послушаться 'listen to; obey' +GEN, 122T  
 (случиться) на днях ('happen) the other day', 148T  
 слыть/прослыть 'be known (as), pass for' +INST, 38T  
 смех сквозь слёзы 'laughter through tears', 77  
 смеяться над 'laugh at' +INST, 48  
 смеяться/посмеяться 'laugh' +DAT, 88T  
 снабжать/снабдить 'supply, provide' +INST, 32T  
 снабжение 'supply, supplying' +INST, 32T  
 сняться/присниться 'appear to in a dream' +DAT, 90T  
 со стороны 'from the side of' +GEN, 129T  
 соболезнование 'sympathy, condolence' +DAT, 92T  
 соболезновать 'sympathize, console' +DAT, 92T  
 совет 'advice' +DAT, 88T

советовать/посоветовать 'advise' +DAT, 88T  
 согласие с 'agreement' +INST, 41T  
 согласно 'agreeing with' +DAT, 102T  
 соглашаться/согласиться с 'agree' +INST, 41T  
 содействие 'assistance' +DAT, 92T  
 содействовать 'assist, help' +DAT, 92T  
 созвучный 'in harmony with' +DAT, 102T  
 сознаваться/сознаться в 'confess to' +LOC, 142T  
 сомневаться в 'doubt' +LOC, 142T  
 сомнение в 'doubt of' +LOC, 142T  
 сообщать/сообщить 'report, inform' +DAT, 88T  
 сообщение 'report, communication' +DAT, 88T  
 соответствие 'correspondence' +DAT, 102T  
 соответствовать 'correspond' +DAT, 102T  
 соответствующий 'corresponding, appropriate' +  
 102T  
 сопротивление 'resistance, opposition' +DAT,  
 сопротивляться 'resist, oppose' +DAT, 94T  
 сопутствие 'accompaniment' +DAT, 102T  
 сопутствовать 'accompany' +DAT, 102T  
 соревнование с 'competition' +INST, 41T  
 соревноваться с 'compete' +INST, 41T  
 сосредоточиваться/сосредоточиться на 'concentrate  
 on' +LOC, 147T  
 состоять 'be' +INST, 38T  
 состоять в 'consist in, lie in, be' +LOC, 142T  
 сочувственный 'sympathetic' +DAT, 92T  
 сочувствие 'sympathy' +DAT, 92T  
 сочувствовать 'sympathize' +DAT, 92T  
 Спокойной ночи! 'Good night!', 123  
 способствовать 'assistance' +DAT, 92T  
 способствовать 'assist, facilitate' +DAT, 92T  
 спустя 'later' +ACC, 79T, 80  
 среди 'among' +GEN, 128  
 сродни 'akin to' +DAT, 102T  
 сбора с 'argument' +INST, 41T  
 собраться/пособраться с 'argue' +INST, 41T  
 сталкиваться/столкнуться с 'collide with, run i  
 encounter' +INST, 41T  
 становиться/стать 'become' +DAT, 99  
 стесняться/постесняться 'be shy' +GEN, 118T  
 стоить 'cost, be worth, deserve' +ACC, 73; +GEN, 1  
 столкновение с 'collision' +INST, 41T  
 столько 'so many' +GEN, 129  
 сторониться/посторониться 'shun, avoid' +GEN,  
 118T  
 страдать 'suffer from' +INST, 32T  
 стыдиться/постыдиться 'be ashamed' +GEN, 118T  
 Счастливого пути! 'Have a good trip!', 123  
 счастливый в 'lucky with' +LOC, 142T  
 счастье в 'luck with' +LOC, 142T  
 считать 'consider' +INST, 40T  
 считаться 'be considered' +INST, 38T  
 -ся/-сь

in ex rience constructions with dative, 101  
 passive verbs with -ся/-сь, 33-35

## Т

тайком 'secretly', 28  
 телеграфировать 'telegraph' +DAT, 88T  
 тому назад 'ago' +ACC, 80  
 торговать 'trade' +INST, 32T  
 торговец 'merchant, trader' +INST, 32T  
 торговля 'trade, commerce' +INST, 32T  
 тоска по 'longing for' +DAT or +LOC, 151  
 тошнить 'feel nauseated' +ACC, 66  
 требовать/потребовать 'demand, require' +GEN or  
 +ACC, 124T  
 требоваться/потребоваться 'be necessary to' +  
 грудно 'hard for' +DAT, 99  
 трудный 'difficult' +DAT, 94T  
 тыканье 'saying ты to' +DAT, 88T  
 тыкать 'say ты to' +DAT, 88T  
 трясťи 'shake, have the shivers' +ACC, 66

## У

у 'at, by, near' +GEN, 117, 133T, 134-135, 137  
 у 'at (someone's place)' +GEN, 134  
 у +GEN + (есть) +NOM 'have', 12, 31, 134  
 убавлять(ся)/убавлять(ся) 'decrease, subtract' +GEN,  
 131T  
 убедить(ся)/убедить(ся) 'convince (oneself) of'  
 +LOC, 142T  
 убеждение в 'conviction' +LOC, 142T  
 уверен в 'certain of' +LOC, 142T  
 уверенность в 'certainty about' +LOC, 142T  
 увлечься/увлечься 'be mad about, get carried away  
 with' +INST, 33T  
 увлечение 'passion for, enthusiasm for' +INST, 33T  
 угодить/угодить 'please' +DAT, 92T  
 угрожать 'threaten' +DAT, 94T  
 угроза 'threat' +DAT, 87T, 94T  
 удаваться/удаться 'succeed' +DAT, 100T  
 удача в 'success with' +LOC, 142T  
 удачливый в 'successful with' +LOC, 142T  
 удивляться/удивиться 'be surprised at' +DAT, 103T  
 удобный 'convenient' +DAT, 92T  
 удостоивать/удостоить 'receive, be awarded' +GEN,  
 122T  
 удостоверение в 'attestation of' +LOC, 142T  
 удостоверяться/удостовериться 'assure oneself of'  
 +LOC, 142T  
 украдкой 'stealthily', 28  
 улыбаться/улыбнуться 'smile' +DAT, 88T  
 одобрение 'likening, comparison' +DAT, 103T  
 уподобляться/уподобиться 'be similar, assimilate' +  
 103T  
 управление 'governing, government' +INST, 30T  
 управлять 'govern, administer, manage' +INST, 30T  
 упрек в 'reproach for' +LOC, 142T  
 упрекать/упрекнуть в 'reproach because of' +LOC, 14  
 усмехаться/усмехнуться 'giggle' +DAT, 88T  
 успешные в 'progress in' +LOC, 142T  
 успевать/успеть 'succeed, make progress in' +LOC,  
 142T

успех(и) 'success in' +LOC, 142T  
устраиваться/устроиться 'get a job (as)' +INST, 38T  
уступать/уступить 'yield to' +DAT, 103T  
уступка 'concession, compromise' +DAT, 103T  
утром 'in the morning', 22  
участвовать в 'participate in' +LOC, 142T  
участующий в 'participant in' +LOC, 142T  
участие в 'participation in' +LOC, 142T  
учащийся 'student' +DAT, 103T  
учиться/научиться 'study' +DAT, 103T  
ущерб 'detriment' +DAT, 94T

## Х

хвалиться/похвалиться 'boast of' +INST, 33T  
хватать 'suffice, be enough' +DAT/+GEN, 95T, 131  
хлопать/хлопнуть дверью 'slam a door', 26T  
ходить на (лыжах/парусах) 'go (skiing/sailing, etc.)'  
+LOC, 147T  
ходить на (лыжах/парусах) 'going (skiing/sailing)  
+LOC, 147T  
хотеть/захотеть 'want' +GEN or +ACC, 124T  
хотеться/захотеться 'feel like, want to' +DAT, 100T;  
+GEN, 124T

## Ч

чем X, тем Y 'the more X...the more Y', 29  
через 'across, after; in, at the end of; through, every other'  
+ACC, 54T, 75, 77, 78-80, 79T  
'across, after; in, at the end of' +ACC in  
space, 54T, 78  
'after, in' +ACC in time running forward expressions,  
79-80, 79T  
'every other' +ACC in domain of space, 78  
'through' +ACC with various activities, 54T, 75, 77  
через посредство 'by means of' +GEN, 129T  
через строчку 'skip lines, double-spaced', 78  
числиться в 'be listed (as)' +INST, 38T  
числиться в 'be counted among' +LOC, 142T  
читать/прочитать (вслух) 'read (out loud) to' +DAT, 88T  
что за Y-NOM 'what kind of Y is that?', 14  
что такое Y-NOM 'what is Y', 14  
чувствовать/почувствовать себя 'feel (like)' +I  
чуждаться 'shun, stand aloof' +GEN, 118T  
чуждый 'alien' +DAT, 94T

## Ш

шагом 'at a wal

## Э

экономить/экономить на 'economize on, save on'  
+LOC, 147T  
экономия на 'economizing on' +LOC, 147T

## Я

являться 'be' +INST, 38T